



Proverbs

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	22
Introduction to Proverbs	22
Proverbs 1 General Notes	38
Proverbs 1:1-3	39
Proverbs 1:4-6	41
Proverbs 1:7-9	43
Proverbs 1:10-11	45
Proverbs 1:12-14	46
Proverbs 1:15-17	48
Proverbs 1:18-19	50
Proverbs 1:20-22	52
Proverbs 1:23-25	54
Proverbs 1:26-27	56
Proverbs 1:28-30	58
Proverbs 1:31-33	60
Proverbs 2 General Notes	62
Proverbs 2:1-2	63
Proverbs 2:3-5	65
Proverbs 2:6-8	67
Proverbs 2:9-10	69
Proverbs 2:11-13	71
Proverbs 2:14-15	73
Proverbs 2:16-17	75
Proverbs 2:18-19	77
Proverbs 2:20-22	79
Proverbs 3 General Notes	81
Proverbs 3:1-2	82
Proverbs 3:3-4	84
Proverbs 3:5-6	86
Proverbs 3:7-8	88
Proverbs 3:9-10	90
Proverbs 3:11-12	91
Proverbs 3:13-14	92
Proverbs 3:15-16	93
Proverbs 3:17-18	94
Proverbs 3:19-20	95
Proverbs 3:21-22	97
Proverbs 3:23-24	99
Proverbs 3:25-26	101
Proverbs 3:27-28	103

Table of Contents

Proverbs 3:29-30	104
Proverbs 3:31-32	105
Proverbs 3:33-34	106
Proverbs 3:35	108
Proverbs 4 General Notes	109
Proverbs 4:1-2	110
Proverbs 4:3-4	111
Proverbs 4:5-6	113
Proverbs 4:7-9	115
Proverbs 4:10-12	117
Proverbs 4:13-15	119
Proverbs 4:16-17	121
Proverbs 4:18-19	123
Proverbs 4:20-21	125
Proverbs 4:22-23	127
Proverbs 4:24-25	129
Proverbs 4:26-27	130
Proverbs 5 General Notes	132
Proverbs 5:1-2	133
Proverbs 5:3-4	135
Proverbs 5:5-6	137
Proverbs 5:7-8	139
Proverbs 5:9-10	141
Proverbs 5:11-12	143
Proverbs 5:13-14	145
Proverbs 5:15-17	146
Proverbs 5:18-19	148
Proverbs 5:20-21	150
Proverbs 5:22-23	152
Proverbs 6 General Notes	154
Proverbs 6:1-2	156
Proverbs 6:3	158
Proverbs 6:4-5	159
Proverbs 6:6-8	161
Proverbs 6:9-11	163
Proverbs 6:12-13	165
Proverbs 6:14-15	166
Proverbs 6:16	168
Proverbs 6:17-19	169
Proverbs 6:20-21	171
Proverbs 6:22-23	173
Proverbs 6:24-25	175
Proverbs 6:26-27	176

Proverbs 6:28-29	177
Proverbs 6:30-31	178
Proverbs 6:32-33	179
Proverbs 6:34-35	180
Proverbs 7 General Notes	182
Proverbs 7:1-3	183
Proverbs 7:4-5	185
Proverbs 7:6-7	187
Proverbs 7:8-9	188
Proverbs 7:10-12	189
Proverbs 7:13-15	191
Proverbs 7:16-18	193
Proverbs 7:19-21	194
Proverbs 7:22-23	196
Proverbs 7:24-25	198
Proverbs 7:26-27	199
Proverbs 8 General Notes	200
Proverbs 8:1-3	201
Proverbs 8:4-5	203
Proverbs 8:6-7	205
Proverbs 8:8-9	207
Proverbs 8:10-11	209
Proverbs 8:12-13	210
Proverbs 8:14-16	212
Proverbs 8:17-18	214
Proverbs 8:19-21	215
Proverbs 8:22-23	217
Proverbs 8:24-25	218
Proverbs 8:26-27	219
Proverbs 8:28-29	220
Proverbs 8:30-31	222
Proverbs 8:32-34	223
Proverbs 8:35-36	225
Proverbs 9 General Notes	226
Proverbs 9:1-2	227
Proverbs 9:3-4	229
Proverbs 9:5-6	230
Proverbs 9:7-9	232
Proverbs 9:10-12	234
Proverbs 9:13-15	236
Proverbs 9:16-18	238
Proverbs 10 General Notes	240
Proverbs 10:1-3	241

Table of Contents

Proverbs 10:4-5	243
Proverbs 10:6-7	244
Proverbs 10:8-9	245
Proverbs 10:10-11	246
Proverbs 10:12-13	248
Proverbs 10:14-15	249
Proverbs 10:16-17	250
Proverbs 10:18-19	251
Proverbs 10:20-21	252
Proverbs 10:22-23	254
Proverbs 10:24-25	255
Proverbs 10:26-27	256
Proverbs 10:28-30	257
Proverbs 10:31-32	259
Proverbs 11 General Notes	260
Proverbs 11:1-2	261
Proverbs 11:3-4	262
Proverbs 11:5-6	263
Proverbs 11:7-8	264
Proverbs 11:9-11	265
Proverbs 11:12-13	267
Proverbs 11:14	268
Proverbs 11:15-16	269
Proverbs 11:17-18	270
Proverbs 11:19-20	271
Proverbs 11:21-22	272
Proverbs 11:23-24	273
Proverbs 11:25-26	274
Proverbs 11:27-28	275
Proverbs 11:29	276
Proverbs 11:30-31	277
Proverbs 12 General Notes	278
Proverbs 12:1-2	279
Proverbs 12:3-4	280
Proverbs 12:5-6	282
Proverbs 12:7-8	284
Proverbs 12:9-10	286
Proverbs 12:11-12	287
Proverbs 12:13-14	288
Proverbs 12:15-16	289
Proverbs 12:17-18	290
Proverbs 12:19-20	291
Proverbs 12:21-22	293

Proverbs 12:23-24	294
Proverbs 12:25-26	295
Proverbs 12:27-28	296
Proverbs 13 General Notes	297
Proverbs 13:1-2	298
Proverbs 13:3-4	300
Proverbs 13:5-6	302
Proverbs 13:7-8	304
Proverbs 13:9-10	305
Proverbs 13:11-12	307
Proverbs 13:13-14	309
Proverbs 13:15-16	311
Proverbs 13:17-18	312
Proverbs 13:19-20	314
Proverbs 13:21-22	315
Proverbs 13:23-24	317
Proverbs 13:25	318
Proverbs 14 General Notes	319
Proverbs 14:1-2	320
Proverbs 14:3-4	322
Proverbs 14:5-6	324
Proverbs 14:7-8	326
Proverbs 14:9-10	327
Proverbs 14:11-12	329
Proverbs 14:13-14	331
Proverbs 14:15-16	332
Proverbs 14:17-18	334
Proverbs 14:19-20	336
Proverbs 14:21-22	338
Proverbs 14:23-24	340
Proverbs 14:25	341
Proverbs 14:26-27	342
Proverbs 14:28-29	344
Proverbs 14:30-31	345
Proverbs 14:32-33	347
Proverbs 14:34-35	349
Proverbs 15 General Notes	350
Proverbs 15:1-2	351
Proverbs 15:3-4	353
Proverbs 15:5-6	355
Proverbs 15:7-8	356
Proverbs 15:9-10	358
Proverbs 15:11-12	360

Table of Contents

Proverbs 15:13-14	362
Proverbs 15:15-16	364
Proverbs 15:17-18	366
Proverbs 15:19-20	368
Proverbs 15:21-22	370
Proverbs 15:23-24	371
Proverbs 15:25-26	373
Proverbs 15:27-28	374
Proverbs 15:29-30	376
Proverbs 15:31-32	378
Proverbs 15:33	379
Proverbs 16 General Notes	380
Proverbs 16:1-2	381
Proverbs 16:3-4	383
Proverbs 16:5-6	384
Proverbs 16:7-8	386
Proverbs 16:9-10	387
Proverbs 16:11-12	389
Proverbs 16:13-14	391
Proverbs 16:15-16	393
Proverbs 16:17-18	395
Proverbs 16:19-20	397
Proverbs 16:21-22	398
Proverbs 16:23-24	400
Proverbs 16:25-26	402
Proverbs 16:27-28	404
Proverbs 16:29-30	406
Proverbs 16:31-32	408
Proverbs 16:33	410
Proverbs 17 General Notes	411
Proverbs 17:1-2	412
Proverbs 17:3-4	414
Proverbs 17:5-6	416
Proverbs 17:7-8	418
Proverbs 17:9-10	420
Proverbs 17:11-12	422
Proverbs 17:13-14	424
Proverbs 17:15-16	425
Proverbs 17:17-18	427
Proverbs 17:19-20	429
Proverbs 17:21-22	431
Proverbs 17:23-24	433
Proverbs 17:25-26	435

Proverbs 17:27-28	437
Proverbs 18 General Notes	438
Proverbs 18:1-2	439
Proverbs 18:3-4	441
Proverbs 18:5-6	443
Proverbs 18:7-8	445
Proverbs 18:9-10	447
Proverbs 18:11-12	449
Proverbs 18:13-14	451
Proverbs 18:15-16	452
Proverbs 18:17-18	454
Proverbs 18:19-20	455
Proverbs 18:21-22	457
Proverbs 18:23-24	459
Proverbs 19 General Notes	460
Proverbs 19:1-2	461
Proverbs 19:3-4	463
Proverbs 19:5-6	465
Proverbs 19:7-8	467
Proverbs 19:9-10	469
Proverbs 19:11-12	471
Proverbs 19:13-14	473
Proverbs 19:15-16	475
Proverbs 19:17-18	477
Proverbs 19:19-20	479
Proverbs 19:21-22	481
Proverbs 19:23-24	482
Proverbs 19:25	484
Proverbs 19:26-27	485
Proverbs 19:28-29	487
Proverbs 20 General Notes	489
Proverbs 20:1-2	490
Proverbs 20:3-4	492
Proverbs 20:5-6	493
Proverbs 20:7-8	495
Proverbs 20:9-10	497
Proverbs 20:11-12	499
Proverbs 20:13-14	500
Proverbs 20:15-16	502
Proverbs 20:17-18	504
Proverbs 20:19-20	506
Proverbs 20:21-22	508
Proverbs 20:23-24	509

Table of Contents

Proverbs 20:25-26	511
Proverbs 20:27-28	513
Proverbs 20:29-30	515
Proverbs 21 General Notes	516
Proverbs 21:1-2	517
Proverbs 21:3-4	519
Proverbs 21:5-6	521
Proverbs 21:7-8	523
Proverbs 21:9-10	525
Proverbs 21:11-12	527
Proverbs 21:13-14	529
Proverbs 21:15-16	530
Proverbs 21:17-18	532
Proverbs 21:19-20	533
Proverbs 21:21-22	534
Proverbs 21:23-24	536
Proverbs 21:25-26	538
Proverbs 21:27-28	539
Proverbs 21:29	541
Proverbs 21:30-31	542
Proverbs 22 General Notes	544
Proverbs 22:1-2	545
Proverbs 22:3-4	547
Proverbs 22:5-6	548
Proverbs 22:7-8	550
Proverbs 22:9-10	552
Proverbs 22:11-12	554
Proverbs 22:13-14	556
Proverbs 22:15-16	558
Proverbs 22:17-19	560
Proverbs 22:20-21	562
Proverbs 22:22-23	563
Proverbs 22:24-25	565
Proverbs 22:26-27	566
Proverbs 22:28-29	567
Proverbs 23 General Notes	568
Proverbs 23:1-3	569
Proverbs 23:4-5	571
Proverbs 23:6-8	573
Proverbs 23:9-11	575
Proverbs 23:12	577
Proverbs 23:13-14	578
Proverbs 23:15-16	580

Proverbs 23:17-18	581
Proverbs 23:19-21	583
Proverbs 23:22-23	585
Proverbs 23:24-25	587
Proverbs 23:26-28	588
Proverbs 23:29-30	590
Proverbs 23:31-33	592
Proverbs 23:34-35	594
Proverbs 24 General Notes	596
Proverbs 24:1-2	597
Proverbs 24:3-4	598
Proverbs 24:5-6	600
Proverbs 24:7	601
Proverbs 24:8-9	602
Proverbs 24:10	603
Proverbs 24:11-12	604
Proverbs 24:13-14	606
Proverbs 24:15-16	607
Proverbs 24:17-18	609
Proverbs 24:19-20	611
Proverbs 24:21-22	612
Proverbs 24:23	613
Proverbs 24:24-25	614
Proverbs 24:26-27	616
Proverbs 24:28-29	617
Proverbs 24:30-31	618
Proverbs 24:32-34	619
Proverbs 25 General Notes	620
Proverbs 25:1-3	621
Proverbs 25:4-5	623
Proverbs 25:6	624
Proverbs 25:7-8	625
Proverbs 25:9-10	627
Proverbs 25:11-12	628
Proverbs 25:13-14	630
Proverbs 25:15	632
Proverbs 25:16-17	633
Proverbs 25:18-19	634
Proverbs 25:20	636
Proverbs 25:21-22	637
Proverbs 25:23-24	638
Proverbs 25:25-26	639
Proverbs 25:27-28	641

Table of Contents

Proverbs 26 General Notes	643
Proverbs 26:1-2	644
Proverbs 26:3-4	646
Proverbs 26:5-6	647
Proverbs 26:7-8	649
Proverbs 26:9-10	651
Proverbs 26:11-12	653
Proverbs 26:13-14	654
Proverbs 26:15-16	655
Proverbs 26:17	656
Proverbs 26:18-19	657
Proverbs 26:20-21	658
Proverbs 26:22-23	659
Proverbs 26:24-26	661
Proverbs 26:27-28	663
Proverbs 27 General Notes	665
Proverbs 27:1-2	666
Proverbs 27:3-4	668
Proverbs 27:5-6	670
Proverbs 27:7-8	672
Proverbs 27:9-10	673
Proverbs 27:11-12	675
Proverbs 27:13-14	677
Proverbs 27:15-16	679
Proverbs 27:17-18	681
Proverbs 27:19-20	682
Proverbs 27:21-22	683
Proverbs 27:23-25	685
Proverbs 27:26-27	687
Proverbs 28 General Notes	689
Proverbs 28:1-2	690
Proverbs 28:3-4	692
Proverbs 28:5-6	694
Proverbs 28:7-8	696
Proverbs 28:9-10	698
Proverbs 28:11-12	700
Proverbs 28:13-14	702
Proverbs 28:15-16	704
Proverbs 28:17-18	706
Proverbs 28:19-20	708
Proverbs 28:21-22	710
Proverbs 28:23-24	711
Proverbs 28:25-26	713

Proverbs 28:27-28	715
Proverbs 29 General Notes	717
Proverbs 29:1-2	718
Proverbs 29:3-4	719
Proverbs 29:5-6	720
Proverbs 29:7-8	721
Proverbs 29:9-10	722
Proverbs 29:11-12	724
Proverbs 29:13-14	725
Proverbs 29:15-16	726
Proverbs 29:17-18	728
Proverbs 29:19-20	729
Proverbs 29:21-22	730
Proverbs 29:23-24	732
Proverbs 29:25-26	734
Proverbs 29:27	736
Proverbs 30 General Notes	737
Proverbs 30:1-3	738
Proverbs 30:4	740
Proverbs 30:5-6	742
Proverbs 30:7-9	744
Proverbs 30:10	746
Proverbs 30:11-12	747
Proverbs 30:13-14	749
Proverbs 30:15-17	751
Proverbs 30:18-19	753
Proverbs 30:20	754
Proverbs 30:21-23	755
Proverbs 30:24-26	757
Proverbs 30:27-28	758
Proverbs 30:29-31	759
Proverbs 30:32-33	760
Proverbs 31 General Notes	761
Proverbs 31:1-3	762
Proverbs 31:4-5	764
Proverbs 31:6-7	765
Proverbs 31:8-9	766
Proverbs 31:10-12	767
Proverbs 31:13-15	769
Proverbs 31:16-17	771
Proverbs 31:18-19	772
Proverbs 31:20-21	773
Proverbs 31:22-23	774

Table of Contents

Proverbs 31:24-25	775
Proverbs 31:26-27	776
Proverbs 31:28-29	778
Proverbs 31:30-31	779
translationQuestions	781
Proverbs 1	781
Proverbs 2	783
Proverbs 3	785
Proverbs 4	788
Proverbs 5	790
Proverbs 6	792
Proverbs 7	794
Proverbs 8	796
Proverbs 9	798
Proverbs 10	800
Proverbs 11	802
Proverbs 12	804
Proverbs 13	806
Proverbs 14	808
Proverbs 15	810
Proverbs 16	812
Proverbs 17	814
Proverbs 18	816
Proverbs 19	818
Proverbs 20	820
Proverbs 21	822
Proverbs 22	824
Proverbs 23	826
Proverbs 24	828
Proverbs 25	830
Proverbs 26	832
Proverbs 27	834
Proverbs 28	836
Proverbs 29	838
Proverbs 30	840
Proverbs 31	842
translationWords	844
abomination, abominable	844
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress	845
adversary, enemy	846
afflict, affliction	847
age	848
amen, truly	849

angry, anger	850
archer	851
arrogant	852
assembly, assemble	853
astray, go astray, led astray, stray	854
atonement, atone	855
barren	856
beg, beggar	857
believe, believe in, belief	858
biblical time: day	859
blameless	860
bless, blessed, blessing	861
blood	863
boast, boastful	864
body	865
bold, boldly, boldness	866
bow, bow down	867
bow and arrow	868
bread	869
breathe, breath	870
bribe	872
brother	873
call, calling, called, call out	874
cast out, drive out, throw out	876
children, child	877
clean, cleanse	878
clothe, clothed	879
command, to command, commandment	880
commander, command	881
companion	882
compassion, compassionate	883
condemn, condemnation	884
confess, confession	885
confidence, confident	886
contempt, contemptible	887
corrupt, corruption	888
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor	889
covenant	890
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	892
cow, calf, bull, cattle	893
create, creation, Creator	894
creature	895
Translation Suggestions	896

Table of Contents

crown, to crown	897
cry, cry out	898
curse, cursed	899
cut off	900
darkness	901
David	902
death, die, dead	903
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	905
declare, declaration	906
deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn	907
delight	908
descendant, descended from	909
desert, wilderness	910
detestable, detest	911
devastate, devastation	912
devour	913
discern, discernment	914
discipline, self-discipline	915
donkey, mule	916
drunk, drunkard	917
eagle	918
earth, earthly	919
Egypt, Egyptian	920
elder	921
endure, endurance	922
envy, covet	923
evil, wicked, wickedness	924
exalt, exaltation	926
face	927
faithful, faithfulness	929
faithless, faithlessness	930
false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report	931
family	932
ancestor, father, forefather	933
favor, favorable, favoritism	934
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	935
feast	936
fig	937
fire	938
firstfruits	939
flesh	940
flock, herd	941
fool, foolish, folly	942

forever	943
sexual immorality	944
forsake, forsaken, forsook	945
foundation, founded	946
fountain, spring	947
free, freedom, liberty	948
fruit, fruitful	949
fulfill	951
furnace	952
gate, gate bar	953
generation	954
gift	955
glory, glorious	956
goat, kid	957
God	958
godly, godliness	960
gold	961
good, goodness	962
gossip	964
governor, govern, proconsul, government	965
grace, gracious	966
grain	967
guilt, guilty	968
guilt offering	969
hades, sheol	970
hand, right hand, to hand over	971
harvest	973
haughty	974
head	975
heal, cure	977
heart	978
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	979
Hezekiah	980
holy, holiness	981
Holy One	982
honey, honeycomb	983
honor, to honor	984
hope	985
horse	986
house	987
household	988
humble, humility	989
humiliate, humiliation	990

Table of Contents

incense	991
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	992
iniquity	994
innocent	995
instruct, instruction	997
integrity	998
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	999
jealous, jealousy	1000
joy, joyful	1001
Judah	1002
judge, judgment	1003
judge	1005
just, justice, justly	1006
king	1007
kiss	1008
know, knowledge, make known	1009
labor, laborer	1010
lamb, Lamb of God	1011
lamp	1013
law, principle	1014
life, live, living, alive	1015
light	1017
like, likeness	1018
lion	1019
locust	1020
lord, master, sir	1021
lots, casting lots	1022
love	1023
lust	1025
mercy, merciful	1026
messenger	1028
mighty, might	1029
mock, ridicule, scoff at	1030
myrrh	1031
name	1032
nation	1033
neighbor	1034
noble, nobleman	1035
obey, obedient, obedience	1036
oil	1037
oppress, oppression, oppressor	1038
ox, oxen	1039
palace	1040

partial, partiality	1041
patient, patience	1042
peace, peaceful	1043
peace offering	1044
people group, peoples, the people, a people	1045
perish, perishing, perishable	1047
perverse, perversely, pervert	1048
pig, swine, pork	1049
pillar, column	1050
pit	1051
plead, pleading, plea	1052
pledge	1053
possess, possession	1054
power, powers	1055
praise	1056
pray, prayer	1057
precious	1058
prince, princess	1059
proclaim, proclamation	1060
profane	1061
profit, profitable	1062
promise	1063
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1064
prostitute, harlot, whore	1066
proud, pride, prideful	1067
proverb	1068
prudent	1069
punish, punishment	1070
pure, purify, purification	1072
purple	1073
rage	1074
raise, rise, risen, arise, arose	1075
ransom	1077
reap, reaper	1078
rebuke	1079
receive	1080
reconcile, reconciliation	1081
redeem, redemption, redeemer	1082
refuge, shelter	1083
reign	1084
reject	1085
rejoice	1086
reproach	1087

Table of Contents

rest	1088
reveal, revelation	1089
reverence	1090
reward	1091
righteous, righteousness	1092
rod	1093
ruin, ruins	1094
ruler, rulers, rule	1095
run, running	1096
sacrifice, offering	1097
save, safe	1099
seek, sought	1101
seize	1102
self-control	1103
send, send out, sent	1104
serpent, snake, viper	1105
servant, slave, slavery	1106
serve, service	1108
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking	1109
shame, shameful, ashamed	1110
shield	1111
silver	1112
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1113
slander, slanderer	1115
slaughter	1116
snare, trap	1117
snow	1118
Solomon	1119
son, son of	1120
soul	1122
sow, sower, plant	1123
spirit, spiritual	1124
splendor	1126
stone, stoning	1127
strength, strengthen	1128
strife	1130
strong drink	1131
stronghold, fortress, fortified	1132
stumble	1133
subject, be subject to, in subjection to	1134
suffer, suffering	1135
sword	1136
teach, teaching, teacher, taught	1137

teacher, Teacher	1138
tent	1139
terror, terrify	1140
test	1141
thief, thieves, robber	1142
thorn, thistle	1143
thresh, threshing	1144
threshold	1145
throne	1146
time	1147
tomb, grave, burial place	1148
tongue	1149
transgress, transgression	1150
trial	1151
trouble, troubles, troubled	1152
true, truth, come true	1153
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1155
turn, turn away, turn back	1156
understand, understanding	1157
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	1158
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1159
unjust, unjustly, injustice	1160
upright, uprightness	1161
vain, vanity	1162
vineyard	1163
vision	1164
voice	1165
vow	1166
walk	1167
watch, watchman	1168
watchtower, tower	1169
water, waters	1170
well, cistern	1171
wine, wineskin, new wine	1172
winnow, sift	1173
wise, wisdom	1174
witness, eyewitness	1175
woe	1177
womb	1178
word	1179
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	1180
works, deeds, work, acts	1182
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1183

wrath, fury	1184
wrong, mistreat, hurt	1185
Yahweh	1186
translationAcademy	1188
First, Second or Third Person	1188
Abstract Nouns	1190
Active or Passive	1193
Double Negatives	1196
Doublet	1199
Ellipsis	1201
Euphemism	1203
Exclamations	1205
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1208
When Masculine Words Include Women	1210
Go and Come	1212
Hendiadys	1214
Hyperbole	1216
Hypothetical Situations	1219
Idiom	1222
Imperatives - Other Uses	1224
Inclusive “We”	1226
Irony	1228
Litotes	1231
Merism	1233
Metaphor	1235
Metonymy	1240
Nominal Adjectives	1242
Parallelism	1244
Personification	1246
Possession	1248
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1252
Reflexive Pronouns	1254
Rhetorical Question	1257
Simile	1260
Synecdoche	1263
Forms of You	1265
How to Translate Names	1266
Ordinal Numbers	1270
Textual Variants	1273
Translate Unknowns	1276
Connecting Words	1279
Poetry	1282
Proverbs	1286

translationNotes

Introduction to Proverbs

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Proverbs

1. Introduction and Solomon's place (1:1–7)
2. Collection of sayings (1:8–9:18)
3. First collection of Solomon (10:1–22:16)
4. First "Sayings of the Wise Men" (22:17–23:14)
5. Other sayings (23:15–24:22)
6. Second "Sayings of the Wise Men" (24:23–34)
7. Second collection of Solomon (25:1–29:27)
8. The Words of Agur (30:1–33)
9. The Words of Lemuel (31:1–9)
10. The Virtuous Woman (31:10–31)

What is the Book of Proverbs about?

Most societies have their own proverbs, which are usually short sentences well-known for their meanings and understood by everyone who speaks that language. The Book of Proverbs is a collection of this kind of statements, but it also includes general teaching about how to live wisely. It is classed as Old Testament wisdom literature, along with Ecclesiastes and certain Psalms. (See [Proverbs](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

The title of this book is often badly translated as "Proverbs." A more general translation would be "Words for Wise People," "Words that Give Wisdom," or something similar.

Who wrote the Book of Proverbs?

Proverbs begins with the words, "The proverbs of Solomon, son of David and King of Israel." But we understand that not all the proverbs were written by Solomon. Unnamed "wise men" seem to have written some of them, as did also "Agur the son of Jakeh." King Lemuel may be the writer of some portion of Proverbs (31:10-31). Solomon, clearly, did not write the whole of the book of Proverbs.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is meant by "wisdom" and "foolishness" in the Book of Proverbs?

Here “wisdom” means the humility necessary to live in a way that honors Yahweh. Anyone living in this way will also learn to live well with other people and to make good practical decisions in life. The Book of Proverbs also acknowledges that it is important to maintain one’s honor or reputation in the opinion of other people. Those who fail to live in this way are called “foolish.” For this reason, it is possible for a person to be very intelligent and still be foolish. (See: [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What form do the individual proverbs have?

In general, the proverbs have two parts or two lines, “parallel” to each other. The second part may strengthen the first, may elaborate on the first, or may even contradict the first. But it is also true that these sayings are grouped together in larger units, so the translator should take this fact into account as well. (See: [Parallelism](#))

How should personification be represented in translation?

In Proverbs, certain qualities such as wisdom and understanding are often represented as if they were wise women, as in [03:15-18](#), [04:6-9](#), and elsewhere. In languages where it is possible for a woman figure to represent these qualities, the translator should translate in this way. However, in many languages this kind of direct translation is not possible. In such a case, the translator may be able to use similes instead, presenting the idea that wisdom or understanding is like a wise woman whom people should obey.

List of translationAcademy Topics in Proverbs

- * [First, Second or Third Person](#) is found in: [06:24](#)
- * [Abstract Nouns](#) is found in: [01:01](#), [01:04](#), [01:07](#), [01:26](#), [01:28](#), [01:31](#), [02:01](#), [03:01](#), [08:04](#), [08:06](#), [08:12](#), [08:22](#), [13:17](#), [15:05](#), [15:09](#), [15:11](#), [15:17](#), [15:31](#), [15:33](#), [17:05](#), [17:09](#), [17:11](#), [17:25](#), [18:11](#), [18:13](#), [19:01](#), [19:25](#), [19:28](#), [20:17](#), [21:03](#), [21:07](#), [21:15](#), [21:30](#), [22:09](#), [22:17](#), [23:09](#), [23:13](#), [23:22](#), [24:03](#), [24:05](#), [24:11](#), [24:15](#), [27:03](#), [27:05](#), [28:01](#), [28:05](#), [28:07](#), [28:11](#), [28:13](#), [28:15](#), [29:03](#), [29:15](#), [29:25](#), [30:01](#), [30:15](#), [31:06](#), [31:30](#)
- * [Active or Passive](#) is found in: [03:09](#), [03:25](#), [05:18](#), [05:20](#), [05:22](#), [06:30](#), [06:34](#), [08:22](#), [08:24](#), [08:28](#), [09:10](#), [10:16](#), [11:07](#), [12:07](#), [13:03](#), [13:11](#), [13:13](#), [13:21](#), [13:23](#), [14:09](#), [14:19](#), [14:32](#), [15:17](#), [16:05](#), [16:11](#), [16:15](#), [16:19](#), [16:21](#), [16:31](#), [16:33](#), [17:11](#), [17:27](#), [18:21](#), [18:23](#), [19:13](#), [19:23](#), [20:01](#), [20:11](#), [20:17](#), [20:19](#), [20:23](#), [20:27](#), [21:11](#), [21:30](#), [22:01](#), [22:09](#), [23:17](#), [24:11](#), [24:13](#), [25:04](#), [25:07](#), [25:09](#), [25:15](#), [26:01](#), [26:24](#), [27:13](#), [27:17](#), [27:21](#), [28:09](#), [28:13](#), [28:17](#), [28:27](#), [29:01](#), [29:17](#), [29:19](#), [29:23](#), [29:25](#), [30:05](#), [30:10](#), [30:15](#), [30:21](#), [31:04](#), [31:22](#), [31:30](#)
- * [Double Negatives](#) is found in: [16:09](#), [19:05](#), [19:09](#)
- * [Doublet](#) is found in: [03:01](#), [05:11](#), [06:06](#), [06:12](#), [15:11](#), [18:03](#), [20:11](#), [21:23](#), [22:17](#), [31:08](#)
- * [Ellipsis](#) is found in: [04:22](#), [05:09](#), [16:03](#), [17:01](#), [19:09](#), [19:28](#), [23:12](#), [25:01](#), [25:09](#), [27:01](#), [31:08](#)

- * Euphemism is found in: 02:18, 05:15, 20:01, 23:29, 24:11, 30:20
- * Exclamations is found in: 05:11, 15:23, 16:15
- * Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information is found in: 03:07, 03:11, 03:19, 03:23, 03:31, 04:03, 06:01, 06:09, 07:22, 08:35, 09:01, 09:05, 09:07, 15:11, 16:11, 16:29, 17:03, 17:05, 17:09, 17:17, 17:19, 17:27, 18:01, 18:17, 19:01, 19:03, 19:07, 19:17, 19:19, 19:23, 19:26, 20:03, 20:07, 20:13, 20:15, 20:21, 20:25, 21:07, 21:09, 22:07, 25:20, 25:23, 26:07, 26:17, 26:20, 26:27, 27:01, 27:05, 27:11, 27:13, 27:15, 27:21, 27:26, 28:01, 28:05, 28:19, 29:23, 31:06
- * Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information]] is found in: 26:27
- * Hendiadys is found in: 04:03
- * Hyperbole is found in: 04:16, 19:05, 23:01, 23:06, 26:15, 28:11, 28:21, 31:18, 31:24
- * Hypothetical Situations is found in: 01:10, 30:07
- * Idiom is found in: 01:07, 01:12, 01:20, 01:23, 02:01, 02:03, 03:15, 03:25, 04:18, 06:01, 06:03, 06:17, 07:01, 07:13, 07:22, 08:30, 09:13, 10:06, 11:27, 12:15, 13:11, 14:01, 14:05, 14:25, 17:03, 17:07, 17:11, 17:19, 17:27, 18:13, 18:15, 19:01, 19:05, 19:09, 19:15, 19:17, 19:19, 19:21, 20:07, 20:13, 20:15, 20:21, 20:23, 21:05, 21:07, 21:13, 21:15, 21:21, 21:29, 21:30, 22:05, 22:11, 22:13, 22:15, 22:17, 23:06, 23:12, 23:34, 24:07, 24:15, 24:17, 24:24, 24:26, 24:28, 25:21, 25:25, 27:13, 28:11, 28:13, 28:15, 28:17, 28:19, 28:21, 29:01, 29:05, 29:07, 29:09, 29:13, 29:21, 30:11, 31:08, 31:16, 31:26
- * Irony is found in: 28:19, 30:04
- * Litotes is found in: 06:20, 06:32, 06:34, 08:32, 10:18, 10:28, 11:21, 12:21, 16:05, 17:25, 18:01, 18:05, 19:05, 20:01, 21:25, 23:22, 25:27, 28:19, 30:15, 31:10
- * Merism is found in: 04:26, 23:26
- * Metaphor is found in: 01:07, 01:12, 01:15, 01:18, 01:23, 01:31, 02:01, 02:03, 02:06, 02:09, 02:11, 02:14, 02:18, 02:20, 03:03, 03:05, 03:07, 03:13, 03:17, 03:19, 03:21, 03:23, 03:25, 03:33, 03:35, 04:07, 04:10, 04:13, 04:16, 04:18, 04:20, 04:22, 04:24, 04:26, 05:03, 05:05, 05:07, 05:09, 05:15, 05:18, 05:20, 05:22, 06:17, 06:20, 06:22, 06:28, 07:01, 07:10, 07:16, 07:19, 07:24, 07:26, 08:19, 08:32, 09:05, 09:10, 09:16, 10:10, 10:14, 10:16, 10:20, 10:22, 10:24, 10:26, 10:28, 11:01, 11:12, 11:17, 11:23, 11:25, 11:29, 12:03, 12:25, 12:27, 13:03, 13:11, 13:13, 13:15, 14:01, 14:03, 14:11, 14:13, 14:15, 14:17, 14:23, 14:26, 14:30, 14:32, 15:01, 15:07, 15:09, 15:13, 15:17, 15:19, 15:21, 15:23, 15:27, 15:29, 16:01, 16:05, 16:09, 16:13, 16:15, 16:17, 16:21, 16:23, 16:27, 16:29, 16:31, 17:03, 17:05, 17:09, 17:21, 17:23, 18:03, 18:05, 18:07, 18:09, 18:11, 18:19, 18:21, 19:01, 19:13, 19:17, 19:28, 20:03, 20:05, 20:07, 20:09, 20:15, 20:17, 20:19, 20:25, 20:27, 20:29, 21:01, 21:03, 21:05, 21:07, 21:11, 21:17, 22:05, 22:07, 22:13, 22:15, 22:22, 22:24, 23:04, 23:06, 23:09, 23:26, 23:31, 24:19, 25:11, 25:13, 25:15, 25:16, 25:25, 26:05, 26:07, 26:15, 26:20, 26:22, 26:24, 27:01, 27:03, 27:05, 27:09, 27:21, 28:03, 28:05, 28:07, 28:09, 28:13, 28:17, 29:01, 29:11, 29:21, 29:25, 30:04, 30:05, 30:07, 30:11, 30:15, 30:18, 31:16, 31:24, 31:26, 31:30
- * Metonymy is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 01:15, 01:23, 02:01, 02:06, 02:09, 02:18, 03:03, 03:05, 03:33, 04:03, 04:13, 04:22, 05:03, 05:07, 05:09, 06:04, 06:06, 06:09, 06:12, 06:24, 06:26, 06:32, 07:13, 07:19, 07:26, 08:04, 08:06, 08:08, 08:35, 09:01, 10:04, 10:06, 10:10, 10:12, 10:14, 10:18, 10:20, 10:31, 11:03, 11:09, 11:19, 12:05, 12:07, 12:13, 12:17, 12:19, 12:21, 12:23, 13:01, 13:03, 13:05, 13:09, 13:11, 13:25, 14:03, 14:07, 14:11, 14:17, 14:19, 15:03, 15:11, 15:13, 15:17, 15:27, 16:01, 16:09, 16:11, 16:17, 16:21,

16:23, 16:25, 17:01, 17:03, 17:19, 17:21, 18:01, 18:05, 18:07, 18:09, 18:15, 18:19, 18:21, 19:07, 19:21, 19:26, 20:01, 20:09, 20:13, 20:15, 20:17, 20:27, 21:01, 21:05, 21:13, 21:23, 22:07, 22:09, 22:11, 22:13, 22:15, 22:17, 22:22, 22:24, 22:28, 23:01, 23:13, 23:26, 24:03, 24:07, 24:11, 24:17, 24:28, 25:23, 26:05, 26:09, 27:05, 27:09, 27:11, 27:19, 27:23, 28:01, 28:11, 28:17, 28:23, 28:27, 29:01, 29:07, 29:13, 29:15, 29:25, 31:20, 31:26, 31:28, 31:30

* **Nominal Adjectives** is found in: 15:03, 17:05, 18:09, 18:11, 18:15, 19:17, 19:28, 20:25, 21:05, 21:19, 22:05, 22:11, 22:22, 23:26, 28:09, 28:11

* **Parallelism** is found in: 02:01, 02:03, 02:14, 03:01, 05:07, 05:11, 05:13, 05:20, 06:04, 06:06, 06:09, 06:16, 06:20, 06:22, 07:24, 07:26, 08:01, 08:32, 09:07, 09:10, 09:13, 10:01, 11:01, 18:03, 18:19, 19:19, 20:01, 20:11, 20:23, 20:29, 27:23

* **Personification** is found in: 01:12, 01:20, 01:23, 01:28, 02:11, 02:16, 03:03, 03:15, 03:17, 04:05, 04:07, 05:22, 06:14, 07:04, 08:01, 08:12, 08:14, 08:24, 08:26, 08:28, 08:30, 08:32, 08:35, 09:01, 09:03, 09:10, 09:13, 10:12, 13:05, 13:21, 14:32, 16:25, 17:13, 18:01, 18:03, 19:15, 20:27, 21:07, 21:09, 21:25, 23:19, 24:15, 29:15, 30:15

* **Possession** is found in: 18:07

* **Direct and Indirect Quotations** is found in: 31:28

* **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 01:20, 05:15, 05:20, 06:26, 06:28, 08:01, 14:21, 15:11, 17:15, 18:13, 20:05, 20:09, 20:23, 22:20, 22:28, 23:29, 24:11, 24:21, 25:07, 26:11, 26:18, 27:03, 27:23, 29:19, 30:04, 31:10

* **Simile** is found in: 01:26, 04:18, 06:09, 07:22, 10:24, 10:26, 11:21, 11:27, 11:30, 12:03, 15:19, 16:15, 16:27, 17:07, 17:13, 18:07, 18:11, 18:19, 19:11, 20:01, 20:05, 24:32, 25:01, 25:11, 25:13, 25:18, 25:25, 25:27, 26:01, 26:07, 26:09, 26:13, 26:17, 26:22, 27:07, 27:15, 27:17, 28:03, 28:15

* **Synecdoche** is found in: 01:15, 02:09, 03:21, 03:23, 04:05, 04:20, 04:26, 05:01, 05:05, 05:07, 05:11, 05:13, 05:18, 05:20, 06:04, 06:17, 06:24, 07:10, 07:24, 10:01, 14:19, 15:01, 15:03, 15:07, 15:13, 15:15, 15:29, 16:05, 16:09, 16:13, 17:03, 17:07, 17:23, 18:03, 18:05, 18:11, 18:13, 18:15, 19:03, 19:28, 20:19, 20:23, 21:03, 21:09, 21:25, 22:11, 23:15, 23:17, 23:19, 23:26, 23:31, 24:01, 25:11, 25:20, 26:09, 26:27, 27:01, 27:19, 28:09, 30:13

* **Forms of You** is found in: 01:01

* **How to Translate Names** is found in: 27:19, 30:01, 31:01

* **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 18:17, 19:19

* **Textual Variants** is found in: 22:20

* **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 27:21, 28:15

* **Connecting Words** is found in: 01:26

* **Poetry** is found in: 01:01, 30:15

List of translationWords in Proverbs

* **abomination, abominable** is found in: 17:15, 26:24, 29:27

- * adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress is found in: 05:03, 05:20, 06:24, 06:32, 20:15, 22:13, 27:13, 30:20
- * adversary, enemy is found in: 16:07, 24:17, 25:21, 27:05
- * afflict, affliction is found in: 19:23, 31:04
- * age is found in: 08:22
- * amen, truly is found in: 13:07
- * angry, anger is found in: 12:15, 14:17, 14:34, 15:01, 15:17, 16:13, 16:31, 20:01, 21:13, 22:13, 22:24, 26:17, 27:03, 29:21, 30:32
- * archer is found in: 26:09
- * arrogant is found in: 08:12, 16:05, 21:23
- * assembly, assemble is found in: 05:13, 21:15, 26:24
- * astray, go astray, led astray, stray is found in: 05:22, 07:24, 10:16, 14:21, 20:01
- * atonement, atone is found in: 16:05
- * barren is found in: 30:15
- * beg, beggar is found in: 06:03
- * believe, believe in, belief is found in: 14:15, 26:24
- * biblical time: day is found in: 11:03
- * blameless is found in: 11:05, 11:19, 28:09, 29:09
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 03:33, 05:18, 22:09, 27:13, 28:19, 30:11
- * blood is found in: 01:15, 06:17
- * boast, boastful is found in: 20:13, 25:13, 27:01
- * body is found in: 14:30, 15:29, 26:22
- * bold, boldly, boldness is found in: 28:01
- * bow, bow down is found in: 02:18, 14:19
- * bow and arrow is found in: 07:22, 25:18, 26:18
- * bread is found in: 04:16, 17:01, 20:17, 22:09, 28:21
- * breathe, breath is found in: 19:05, 19:09
- * bribe is found in: 15:27, 17:07, 17:23, 29:03
- * brother is found in: 17:01, 18:19, 19:07, 27:09
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 01:23, 01:28
- * cast out, drive out, throw out is found in: 22:09
- * children, child is found in: 04:03, 14:26, 22:05, 22:15, 23:24

- * clean, cleanse is found in: 14:03, 20:09, 20:29
- * clothe, clothed is found in: 31:20
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 02:01, 03:01, 04:03, 06:20, 06:22, 07:01, 08:28, 10:08, 13:13, 19:15
- * commander, command is found in: 06:06
- * companion is found in: 02:16, 13:19, 14:19, 28:07, 28:23
- * compassion, compassionate is found in: 12:09
- * condemn, condemnation is found in: 12:01, 17:15, 19:28
- * confess, confession is found in: 28:13
- * confidence, confident is found in: 03:31, 14:26
- * contempt, contemptible is found in: 11:12, 14:21, 15:05, 18:03
- * corrupt, corruption is found in: 04:24
- * counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 11:14, 12:05, 12:15, 19:19, 20:17, 21:30
- * covenant is found in: 02:16
- * covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 03:03, 14:21, 16:05, 20:27
- * cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 15:17
- * create, creation, Creator is found in: 08:22
- * creature is found in: 30:24
- * crown, to crown is found in: 04:07, 11:25, 12:03, 14:23, 16:31, 17:05, 27:23
- * cry, cry out is found in: 02:03
- * curse, cursed is found in: 03:33, 11:25, 14:30, 20:19, 24:24, 26:01, 27:13, 28:27, 29:23, 30:10, 30:11
- * cut off is found in: 02:20, 23:17, 24:13
- * darkness is found in: 02:11, 04:18, 20:19
- * David is found in: 01:01
- * death, die, dead is found in: 02:18, 05:05, 05:22, 07:26, 08:35, 09:16, 10:01, 10:20, 11:03, 11:07, 11:19, 12:27, 13:13, 14:11, 14:26, 14:32, 15:09, 16:13, 16:25, 18:21, 19:15, 19:17, 21:15, 23:13, 24:11, 28:17, 30:07
- * deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive is found in: 02:14, 06:14, 12:05, 12:19, 14:07, 15:03, 16:09, 24:28, 26:18, 26:24, 31:30
- * declare, declaration is found in: 30:01
- * deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn is found in: 05:18
- * delight is found in: 08:30

- * descendant, descended from is found in: 11:21
- * desert, wilderness is found in: 21:19
- * detestable, detest is found in: 21:27
- * devastate, devastation is found in: 03:25
- * devour is found in: 30:13
- * discern, discernment is found in: 01:04, 03:21, 10:12, 14:32, 15:13, 16:21, 19:25, 26:15
- * discipline, self-discipline is found in: 01:07, 03:11, 04:13, 05:11, 05:22, 06:22, 12:01, 13:17, 13:23, 15:05, 15:09, 15:31, 19:17, 22:15, 23:13, 23:22, 29:17
- * donkey, mule is found in: 26:03
- * drunk, drunkard is found in: 23:19, 26:09
- * eagle is found in: 23:04, 30:18
- * earth, earthly is found in: 03:19, 08:22, 08:26, 08:28, 17:23, 25:01, 30:04, 30:13, 30:21, 30:24
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 07:16
- * elder is found in: 31:22
- * endure, endurance is found in: 27:23, 30:21
- * envy, covet is found in: 03:31, 14:30, 23:17, 24:01, 24:19
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 01:15, 02:11, 02:14, 02:20, 03:07, 03:25, 03:33, 04:13, 04:16, 04:18, 04:26, 05:22, 06:12, 06:14, 06:17, 08:06, 08:12, 09:07, 10:01, 10:06, 10:10, 10:16, 10:20, 10:22, 10:24, 10:26, 10:28, 10:31, 11:05, 11:07, 11:09, 11:17, 11:19, 11:21, 11:27, 11:30, 12:01, 12:03, 12:05, 12:07, 12:09, 12:11, 12:13, 12:19, 12:21, 12:25, 13:05, 13:09, 13:17, 13:19, 13:25, 14:11, 14:15, 14:17, 14:19, 14:21, 14:32, 15:03, 15:05, 15:07, 15:09, 15:25, 15:27, 15:29, 16:03, 16:05, 16:11, 16:17, 16:29, 17:03, 17:11, 17:13, 17:15, 17:23, 18:03, 18:05, 19:28, 20:07, 20:25, 20:29, 21:03, 21:07, 21:09, 21:11, 21:15, 21:17, 21:27, 21:29, 22:07, 23:06, 24:01, 24:08, 24:15, 24:19, 24:24, 25:04, 25:09, 25:25, 26:22, 26:24, 28:01, 28:03, 28:05, 28:09, 28:11, 28:15, 28:27, 29:01, 29:05, 29:07, 29:11, 29:15, 29:27, 30:32, 31:10
- * exalt, exaltation is found in: 04:07, 14:28, 14:34, 30:32
- * face is found in: 27:19, 29:25
- * faithful, faithfulness is found in: 02:06, 11:12, 12:21, 13:17, 14:05, 14:13, 20:05, 25:13, 27:05, 28:19
- * faithless, faithlessness is found in: 02:20
- * false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report is found in: 12:17, 14:05, 14:25, 19:05, 19:09, 19:28, 21:27, 25:18
- * family is found in: 15:27
- * ancestor, father, forefather is found in: 01:07, 04:01, 04:03, 13:01, 22:28
- * favor, favorable, favoritism is found in: 03:03, 03:21, 03:33, 08:35, 11:27, 12:01, 13:15, 14:09, 14:21, 14:30, 14:34, 16:15, 18:21, 19:05, 19:11, 22:01, 28:23

- * fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh is found in: 01:07, 01:28, 02:03, 03:07, 03:23, 03:25, 08:12, 09:10, 10:24, 10:26, 14:01, 14:15, 14:26, 15:15, 15:33, 16:05, 20:01, 22:03, 23:17, 24:21, 29:25, 31:30
- * feast is found in: 05:09, 15:15
- * fig is found in: 27:17
- * fire is found in: 16:27, 25:21, 26:20
- * firstfruits is found in: 03:09
- * flesh is found in: 03:07
- * flock, herd is found in: 27:23
- * fool, foolish, folly is found in: 01:07, 01:20, 01:31, 03:35, 05:22, 09:13, 10:01, 10:08, 10:10, 10:14, 10:18, 10:20, 10:22, 11:29, 12:15, 12:23, 13:15, 13:19, 14:01, 14:03, 14:07, 14:09, 14:15, 14:17, 14:23, 14:32, 15:01, 15:05, 15:07, 15:13, 15:19, 15:21, 16:21, 17:07, 17:09, 17:11, 17:15, 17:21, 17:23, 17:25, 17:27, 18:01, 18:05, 18:07, 18:13, 19:01, 19:03, 19:09, 19:13, 19:28, 20:03, 21:19, 22:15, 23:09, 24:07, 24:08, 26:01, 26:03, 26:09, 26:11, 27:03, 27:21, 28:25, 29:09, 29:11, 29:19, 30:21, 30:32
- * forever is found in: 10:24, 12:19, 29:13
- * sexual immorality is found in: 02:16
- * forsake, forsaken, forsook is found in: 02:16, 04:01, 06:20, 15:09, 27:09, 28:03, 28:13
- * foundation, founded is found in: 03:19, 08:28, 10:24
- * fountain, spring is found in: 04:22, 05:15, 05:18, 08:24, 08:28, 10:10, 13:13, 14:26, 16:21, 18:03, 25:25
- * free, freedom, liberty is found in: 20:09
- * fruit, fruitful is found in: 01:31, 08:19, 10:31, 12:11, 12:13, 13:01, 18:19, 18:21, 27:17, 31:16, 31:30
- * fulfill is found in: 13:11
- * furnace is found in: 17:03, 27:21
- * gate, gate bar is found in: 01:20, 08:01, 08:32, 14:19, 22:22, 24:07, 31:22, 31:30
- * generation is found in: 27:23, 30:11, 30:13
- * gift is found in: 06:34, 10:06, 10:22, 11:25, 18:15, 19:05, 21:13
- * glory, glorious is found in: 16:31, 19:11, 20:29, 25:01, 28:11
- * goat, kid is found in: 27:26, 30:29
- * God is found in: 02:03, 02:16, 03:03, 10:06, 11:05, 11:09, 24:11, 25:01, 30:07
- * gold is found in: 03:13, 08:10, 08:19, 11:21, 16:15, 17:03, 20:15, 22:01, 25:11, 27:21
- * good, goodness is found in: 02:20, 03:27, 04:01, 10:22, 11:23, 11:27, 13:21, 14:13, 15:23, 16:19, 17:13, 17:19, 20:21, 20:23, 28:21
- * gossip is found in: 16:27, 18:07, 20:19, 26:20
- * governor, govern, proconsul, government is found in: 08:14

- * **grace, gracious** is found in: 11:15, 22:11, 26:24
- * **grain** is found in: 11:25
- * **guilt, guilty** is found in: 21:07, 24:24, 28:17, 30:10
- * **guilt offering** is found in: 14:09
- * **hades, sheol** is found in: 01:12, 05:05, 07:26, 09:16, 15:11, 15:23, 23:13, 27:19, 30:15
- * **hand, right hand, to hand over** is found in: 10:04, 12:23, 21:01, 21:25
- * **harvest** is found in: 06:06, 10:04, 18:19, 20:03, 25:13, 26:01
- * **haughty** is found in: 16:17, 21:03, 21:23, 30:13
- * **head** is found in: 10:06
- * **heal, cure** is found in: 16:23, 29:01
- * **heart** is found in: 02:01, 02:09, 03:01, 03:03, 03:05, 04:03, 04:20, 04:22, 05:11, 06:14, 06:17, 06:20, 06:24, 07:01, 07:24, 10:20, 11:19, 11:29, 12:19, 12:23, 12:25, 13:11, 14:09, 14:13, 14:30, 14:32, 15:07, 15:11, 15:13, 15:15, 15:27, 15:29, 16:01, 16:05, 16:09, 16:21, 16:23, 17:03, 17:19, 17:21, 18:01, 18:11, 18:15, 19:03, 19:21, 20:05, 20:09, 21:01, 21:03, 22:11, 22:15, 22:17, 23:06, 23:12, 23:15, 23:17, 23:19, 23:26, 23:31, 24:01, 24:11, 24:17, 25:01, 25:20, 26:22, 26:24, 27:09, 27:11, 27:19, 28:13, 28:25, 31:10
- * **heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly** is found in: 03:19, 08:26, 23:04, 25:01, 30:04, 30:18
- * **Hezekiah** is found in: 25:01
- * **holy, holiness** is found in: 20:25
- * **Holy One** is found in: 09:10, 30:01
- * **honey, honeycomb** is found in: 05:03, 16:23, 24:13, 25:16, 25:27, 27:07
- * **honor, to honor** is found in: 03:09, 03:15, 03:35, 04:07, 05:09, 08:17, 11:15, 13:13, 13:17, 14:30, 15:33, 17:05, 18:11, 19:23, 20:03, 21:21, 22:03, 25:06, 25:27, 26:01, 26:07, 27:17, 29:23, 31:24
- * **hope** is found in: 10:28, 11:07, 11:23, 13:11, 19:17, 23:17, 24:13, 26:11, 29:19
- * **horse** is found in: 21:30, 26:03
- * **house** is found in: 01:12, 03:33, 05:09, 14:01, 14:11, 15:05, 17:13, 19:13, 21:11, 24:03, 24:15, 24:26
- * **household** is found in: 11:29, 27:26, 31:13, 31:20, 31:26
- * **humble, humility** is found in: 03:33, 06:03, 11:01, 15:33, 16:19, 18:11, 22:03, 29:23
- * **humiliate, humiliation** is found in: 25:07
- * **incense** is found in: 27:09
- * **inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir** is found in: 03:35, 08:19, 11:29, 13:21, 14:17, 17:01, 19:13, 20:21, 28:09
- * **iniquity** is found in: 05:22, 16:05, 19:28
- * **innocent** is found in: 01:10, 06:17

- * **instruct, instruction** is found in: 01:01, 01:23, 01:28, 08:10, 22:20
- * **integrity** is found in: 02:06, 02:20, 10:08, 10:28, 11:03, 17:25, 19:01, 20:07, 28:05, 28:17
- * **Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel** is found in: 01:01
- * **jealous, jealousy** is found in: 06:34, 27:03
- * **joy, joyful** is found in: 10:28, 11:09, 12:19, 14:09, 14:13, 15:13, 15:19, 15:23, 15:29, 21:15
- * **Judah** is found in: 25:01
- * **judge, judgment** is found in: 03:21, 16:09, 24:23, 29:13, 31:08
- * **judge** is found in: 20:07
- * **just, justice, justly** is found in: 01:01, 02:06, 02:09, 08:08, 08:14, 08:19, 12:05, 17:23, 18:05, 19:28, 21:03, 21:07, 21:15, 28:05, 29:03, 29:25
- * **king** is found in: 01:01, 08:14, 14:28, 14:34, 16:09, 16:13, 16:15, 19:11, 20:01, 20:07, 20:25, 20:27, 21:01, 22:11, 22:28, 24:21, 25:01, 25:04, 25:06, 29:03, 29:13, 30:21, 30:27, 30:29, 31:01, 31:04
- * **kiss** is found in: 07:13, 24:26, 27:05
- * **know, knowledge, make known** is found in: 01:04, 01:07, 01:20, 01:23, 01:28, 02:09, 03:19, 05:01, 08:04, 08:08, 08:10, 08:12, 09:10, 10:14, 11:09, 12:01, 12:23, 13:15, 14:05, 14:07, 14:09, 14:17, 14:32, 15:01, 15:07, 15:13, 17:27, 18:15, 19:01, 19:25, 19:26, 20:15, 21:11, 22:11, 22:17, 22:20, 23:12, 24:03, 24:05, 28:01, 29:07, 30:01
- * **labor, laborer** is found in: 12:23, 16:25
- * **lamb, Lamb of God** is found in: 27:26
- * **lamp** is found in: 06:22, 13:09, 20:19, 20:27, 21:03, 24:19, 31:18
- * **law, principle** is found in: 24:23, 28:03, 28:07, 28:09, 29:17, 31:26
- * **life, live, living, alive** is found in: 01:01, 01:12, 01:18, 01:31, 02:18, 03:01, 03:17, 03:21, 04:03, 04:10, 04:13, 04:22, 05:05, 05:09, 05:11, 06:22, 06:26, 07:01, 07:22, 08:35, 09:05, 09:10, 10:10, 10:16, 10:26, 11:19, 11:30, 12:27, 13:03, 13:07, 13:11, 13:13, 14:25, 14:26, 14:30, 15:03, 15:23, 15:27, 15:31, 16:15, 16:17, 16:21, 16:31, 18:21, 19:03, 19:15, 19:19, 19:23, 20:01, 21:21, 22:03, 22:22, 24:11, 25:23, 27:07, 28:13, 29:09, 31:10
- * **light** is found in: 06:22, 13:09, 29:13
- * **like, likeness** is found in: 01:12
- * **lion** is found in: 19:11, 20:01, 22:13, 26:13, 28:01, 28:15, 30:29
- * **locust** is found in: 30:27
- * **lord, master, sir** is found in: 24:08, 25:13, 27:17, 29:21, 30:10
- * **lots, casting lots** is found in: 16:33, 18:17
- * **love** is found in: 01:20, 03:11, 04:05, 05:18, 08:17, 08:19, 08:35, 09:07, 10:12, 12:01, 13:23, 15:09, 15:17, 16:13, 17:09, 17:19, 19:07, 20:13, 20:27, 21:17, 27:05, 29:03

- * **lust** is found in: 06:24
- * **mercy, merciful** is found in: 06:03, 06:34, 18:23, 28:13
- * **messenger** is found in: 16:13, 17:11, 25:13
- * **mighty, might** is found in: 21:21, 30:24
- * **mock, ridicule, scoff at** is found in: 01:20, 01:26, 03:33, 09:10, 13:01, 14:05, 14:09, 15:11, 17:05, 19:25, 19:28, 20:01, 21:11, 21:23, 22:09, 24:08, 29:07, 30:15
- * **myrrh** is found in: 07:16
- * **name** is found in: 10:06, 18:09, 21:23, 22:01, 30:04, 30:07
- * **nation** is found in: 11:14, 14:34, 24:24
- * **neighbor** is found in: 03:27, 03:29, 06:01, 06:03, 06:28, 11:09, 14:21, 16:29, 17:17, 21:09, 24:28, 25:07, 25:09, 25:16, 25:18, 26:18, 27:09, 27:13, 29:05
- * **noble, nobleman** is found in: 08:06, 17:25, 25:07
- * **obey, obedient, obedience** is found in: 05:13, 06:20, 19:15, 30:15
- * **oil** is found in: 05:03, 21:17, 21:19, 27:15
- * **oppress, oppression, oppressor** is found in: 14:30, 15:15, 22:15, 28:03
- * **ox, oxen** is found in: 07:22, 14:03
- * **palace** is found in: 30:27
- * **partial, partiality** is found in: 18:05, 24:23, 28:21
- * **patient, patience** is found in: 14:28, 25:15
- * **peace, peaceful** is found in: 03:01, 03:17, 12:19, 16:07
- * **peace offering** is found in: 07:13
- * **people group, peoples, the people, a people** is found in: 14:34
- * **perish, perishing, perishable** is found in: 11:07, 11:09, 19:09, 21:27, 28:27, 31:06, 31:08
- * **perverse, perversely, pervert** is found in: 11:19, 16:27, 19:01, 22:05
- * **pig, swine, pork** is found in: 11:21
- * **pillar, column** is found in: 09:01
- * **pit** is found in: 01:12, 22:13, 23:26, 26:27, 28:09
- * **plead, pleading, plea** is found in: 18:17, 18:23, 22:22, 29:07, 31:08
- * **pledge** is found in: 11:15, 22:26
- * **possess, possession** is found in: 08:12, 13:07
- * **power, powers** is found in: 03:27, 18:21
- * **praise** is found in: 12:07, 27:01, 27:21, 28:03, 31:28, 31:30

- * pray, prayer is found in: 15:07, 15:29, 28:09
- * precious is found in: 20:15, 21:19
- * prince, princess is found in: 08:14, 14:28, 19:09
- * proclaim, proclamation is found in: 20:05
- * profane is found in: 30:07
- * profit, profitable is found in: 03:13, 10:16, 14:23, 31:18
- * promise is found in: 06:01, 11:15, 17:17
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 29:17
- * prostitute, harlot, whore is found in: 06:26, 07:10, 23:26, 29:03
- * proud, pride, prideful is found in: 06:17, 08:12, 11:01, 13:09, 14:03, 15:25, 16:17, 16:19, 18:11, 21:03, 21:23, 29:23
- * proverb is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 10:01, 25:01, 26:07, 26:09
- * prudent is found in: 12:23, 27:11
- * punish, punishment is found in: 06:28, 11:21, 16:21, 17:25, 19:05, 21:11, 28:19
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 08:10, 08:19, 10:20, 16:01, 20:11, 21:07, 22:11, 30:11
- * purple is found in: 31:22
- * rage is found in: 19:03, 27:03, 29:21
- * raise, rise, risen, arise, arose is found in: 28:27
- * ransom is found in: 13:07, 21:17
- * reap, reaper is found in: 11:17, 22:07
- * rebuke is found in: 01:23, 03:11, 13:01, 17:09, 24:24, 25:11, 27:05, 28:23, 29:01, 30:05
- * receive is found in: 01:01, 02:01, 11:30, 28:27
- * reconcile, reconciliation is found in: 13:17
- * redeem, redemption, redeemer is found in: 23:09
- * reign is found in: 08:14
- * reject is found in: 04:05
- * rejoice is found in: 02:14, 05:18, 08:30, 10:01, 11:09, 13:09, 17:05, 17:21, 23:15, 23:24, 27:09, 27:11, 29:01, 29:03, 29:05
- * reproach is found in: 18:03, 19:26
- * rest is found in: 21:15, 29:09, 29:17
- * reveal, revelation is found in: 11:12, 18:01, 20:19
- * reverence is found in: 28:13

- * reward is found in: 12:13, 13:13, 13:21
- * righteous, righteousness is found in: 02:09, 03:33, 08:17, 09:07, 10:24, 13:05, 13:25, 21:21
- * rod is found in: 10:12, 22:15, 26:03, 29:15
- * ruin, ruins is found in: 10:08, 10:10, 13:03, 18:07, 18:23, 19:03, 19:13, 21:11, 26:27
- * ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 06:06, 08:14, 19:09, 22:07, 23:01, 25:15, 28:01, 28:15, 29:01, 29:11, 29:25, 31:04
- * run, running is found in: 01:15, 04:10
- * sacrifice, offering is found in: 15:07, 21:03, 21:27
- * save, safe is found in: 14:25, 18:09, 23:13
- * seek, sought is found in: 02:03
- * seize is found in: 05:22
- * self-control is found in: 25:27
- * send, send out, sent is found in: 10:26
- * serpent, snake, viper is found in: 23:31
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 11:29, 12:09, 14:34, 17:01, 19:09, 22:07, 27:26, 29:19, 29:21, 30:10, 30:21, 31:13
- * serve, service is found in: 15:17
- * sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking is found in: 07:16
- * shame, shameful, ashamed is found in: 03:35, 06:32, 12:03, 13:05, 13:17, 14:34, 17:01, 18:03, 18:13, 19:26, 25:07, 25:09, 28:07, 29:15
- * shield is found in: 02:06, 30:05
- * silver is found in: 02:03, 03:13, 08:10, 08:19, 10:20, 16:15, 17:03, 22:01, 25:04, 25:11, 27:21
- * sin, sinful, sinner, sinning is found in: 01:10, 05:22, 10:16, 11:30, 13:05, 13:21, 14:21, 14:34, 17:19, 20:09, 21:03, 23:17, 24:08, 28:13, 28:23, 29:05, 29:21
- * slander, slanderer is found in: 10:18, 11:12, 30:10
- * slaughter is found in: 07:22
- * snare, trap is found in: 01:18
- * snow is found in: 25:13, 31:20
- * Solomon is found in: 01:01, 10:01, 25:01
- * son, son of is found in: 01:01, 04:01, 08:04, 10:04, 15:19, 19:17, 23:15, 23:19, 23:26, 30:01
- * soul is found in: 02:09, 03:21, 16:23, 23:13, 24:13
- * sow, sower, plant is found in: 06:17, 11:17, 11:23, 22:07
- * spirit, spiritual is found in: 15:03, 15:13, 16:01, 16:17, 16:31, 17:21, 20:27, 29:23

- * **splendor** is found in: 20:29
- * **stone, stoning** is found in: 26:07, 26:27
- * **strength, strengthen** is found in: 11:07
- * **strife** is found in: 17:01, 21:19, 22:09, 26:20, 29:21
- * **strong drink** is found in: 20:01, 31:04, 31:06
- * **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 21:21
- * **stumble** is found in: 03:23, 04:10, 04:16, 04:18, 24:17
- * **subject, be subject to, in subjection to** is found in: 12:23, 13:13
- * **suffer, suffering** is found in: 11:15, 22:03
- * **sword** is found in: 05:03, 12:17, 25:18, 30:13
- * **teach, teaching, teacher, taught** is found in: 22:05
- * **teacher, Teacher** is found in: 05:13
- * **tent** is found in: 14:11
- * **terror, terrify** is found in: 01:26, 03:25, 21:15
- * **test** is found in: 27:21, 30:05
- * **thief, thieves, robber** is found in: 06:30, 29:23
- * **thorn, thistle** is found in: 22:05
- * **thresh, threshing** is found in: 20:25
- * **threshold** is found in: 17:19
- * **throne** is found in: 16:11, 20:07, 20:27, 25:04, 29:13
- * **time** is found in: 25:13
- * **tomb, grave, burial place** is found in: 02:18
- * **tongue** is found in: 12:17, 12:19, 15:01, 15:03, 16:01, 17:19, 18:21, 21:05, 21:23, 25:15, 26:27, 28:23
- * **transgress, transgression** is found in: 10:18, 28:01, 29:15
- * **trial** is found in: 25:07
- * **trouble, troubles, troubled** is found in: 11:29, 12:13, 13:17, 15:05, 15:27, 16:03, 17:17, 21:23, 22:03, 22:07, 24:01, 24:10, 25:18, 28:13, 29:21, 31:06
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 11:17, 12:17, 12:19, 14:25, 22:20, 23:22, 29:13
- * **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 03:03, 03:05, 03:29, 08:06, 11:27, 14:21, 16:05, 16:19, 20:27, 22:17, 22:20, 25:18, 28:25, 29:25, 31:10
- * **turn, turn away, turn back** is found in: 03:07, 04:13, 04:26, 05:07, 13:05, 13:13, 13:19, 14:15, 14:26, 15:01, 15:23, 22:05, 26:13, 29:07

- * understand, understanding is found in: 02:03, 03:05, 17:09, 28:07, 30:01
- * unfaithful, unfaithfulness is found in: 25:18
- * ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness is found in: 11:09
- * unjust, unjustly, injustice is found in: 01:18, 13:23, 29:27
- * upright, uprightness is found in: 03:31, 08:08, 11:03, 14:09, 14:11, 15:19, 28:09, 29:09
- * vain, vanity is found in: 13:11, 31:30
- * vineyard is found in: 24:30, 31:16
- * vision is found in: 29:17
- * voice is found in: 01:20, 02:03
- * vow is found in: 07:13, 20:25, 31:01
- * walk is found in: 01:15, 02:06, 02:11, 02:20, 03:23, 04:10, 10:08, 12:27, 13:19, 14:01, 15:21, 19:01, 20:07, 28:05, 28:17, 28:25
- * watch, watchman is found in: 02:11, 04:05, 15:03
- * watchtower, tower is found in: 18:09
- * water, waters is found in: 08:24, 08:28, 18:03, 20:05, 25:25, 30:04
- * well, cistern is found in: 05:15
- * wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 03:09, 04:16, 09:01, 09:05, 20:01, 21:17, 23:29, 23:31, 31:04, 31:06
- * winnow, sift is found in: 20:07, 20:25
- * wise, wisdom is found in: 01:01, 01:04, 01:07, 01:20, 02:01, 02:06, 02:09, 03:07, 03:13, 03:15, 03:19, 03:35, 04:05, 04:07, 04:10, 05:01, 06:06, 07:04, 08:10, 08:12, 08:14, 08:32, 09:01, 09:07, 09:10, 10:01, 10:04, 10:12, 10:14, 10:18, 10:22, 10:31, 11:01, 11:14, 11:29, 12:07, 12:15, 12:17, 13:01, 13:09, 13:13, 13:19, 14:01, 14:03, 14:05, 14:07, 14:15, 14:23, 14:32, 15:01, 15:07, 15:11, 15:19, 15:31, 15:33, 16:13, 16:15, 16:21, 16:23, 17:01, 17:15, 17:23, 17:27, 18:03, 18:15, 19:07, 19:19, 20:01, 20:17, 20:25, 21:11, 21:19, 21:21, 21:30, 22:17, 23:04, 23:09, 23:15, 23:19, 23:22, 23:24, 24:03, 24:05, 24:07, 24:13, 24:23, 25:11, 26:05, 26:15, 27:11, 28:11, 28:25, 29:03, 29:07, 29:09, 29:11, 29:15, 30:01, 30:24, 31:26
- * witness, eyewitness is found in: 06:17, 14:05, 14:25, 24:28, 25:07
- * woe is found in: 23:29
- * womb is found in: 30:15, 31:01
- * word is found in: 01:01, 01:23, 02:01, 04:03, 04:05, 04:10, 04:20, 04:22, 05:07, 06:01, 07:01, 07:04, 08:08, 10:18, 12:05, 12:13, 12:17, 12:25, 15:01, 15:23, 15:25, 16:23, 17:27, 18:03, 18:07, 19:26, 22:11, 22:20, 23:09, 23:12, 25:11, 26:22
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 30:05
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 12:13, 14:23, 16:03, 16:11, 16:25, 22:28, 28:19, 31:30

* worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless is found in: 12:03, 12:11, 28:19

* wrath, fury is found in: 11:03, 11:23, 15:01, 16:13, 19:11, 21:13, 22:07, 24:17, 29:07

* wrong, mistreat, hurt is found in: 20:21

* Yahweh is found in: 01:07, 01:28, 02:03, 02:06, 03:05, 03:07, 03:09, 03:11, 03:19, 03:25, 03:31, 03:33, 05:20, 06:16, 08:12, 08:22, 08:26, 08:35, 09:10, 10:01, 10:22, 10:26, 10:28, 11:01, 11:19, 12:01, 12:21, 14:01, 15:03, 15:07, 15:09, 15:11, 15:15, 15:25, 15:29, 16:01, 16:03, 16:05, 16:07, 16:09, 16:11, 16:19, 16:33, 17:03, 17:15, 18:09, 18:21, 19:03, 19:13, 19:17, 19:21, 19:23, 20:09, 20:11, 20:21, 20:23, 20:27, 21:01, 21:03, 21:30, 22:01, 22:11, 22:13, 22:17, 22:22, 23:17, 24:17, 24:21, 25:21, 28:05, 28:25, 29:13, 29:25, 30:07, 31:30

Proverbs 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The first chapter of Proverbs begins with a type of introduction in verses 1-7. It mentions Solomon, son of David. Verse 7 contains a foundational verse for the whole book. It defines wisdom.

Special concepts in this chapter

Parallelism

Proverbs are often written without any surrounding context and in two lines of text. Each line will have a certain relationship to the other line. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

Proverbs 1:1-3**UDB:**

¹ These are the sayings that compare one example with another, to teach moral lessons and to make people wise, from Solomon the king of Israel, who was son of David.

² The purpose of these sayings is to teach the meaning of wisdom and give examples of moral instruction, so wise teaching can guide you.

³ These sayings offer correction so you may live by wisdom, by the measures of what is right, what is just, and what is fair.

ULB:

¹ ¹ The proverbs of Solomon son of David, the king of Israel.

² These proverbs are to teach wisdom and instruction, to teach words of insight,

³ that you may receive instruction in order to live by doing what is right, just, and fair.

translationWords:

- proverb
- Solomon
- son, son of
- David
- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- wise, wisdom
- instruct, instruction
- word
- receive
- life, live, living, alive
- just, justice, justly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 2-33 are poetry. (See: [Poetry](#))

- **to teach wisdom and instruction** - This can be reworded so that the abstract nouns “wisdom” and “instruction” can be stated as adjectives or verbs. AT: “to teach you how to be wise and to instruct you about how to live moral lives” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **to teach words of insight** - Here “words” represents a message or teaching. AT: “to help you understand wise teachings” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **that you may receive** - Here “you” refers to the readers. If it is more natural in your language you can state it as an inclusive “we.” AT: “that we may receive” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Inclusive “We”](#))
- **may receive instruction in order to live** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “instruction” is stated as a verb. AT: “may be instructed how to live” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ They give wise teaching to those who have no experience and to instruct those who do not know how to live a moral life,

and to give the young the knowledge they need and to teach them the understanding they do not have—

⁵ so the wise may listen to these sayings and increase in their learning,

and those who already have insight will gain more ways to live according to the lessons of wisdom.

⁶ They seek to understand the lessons of the proverbs and the meaning of the parables.

These are the words of the wise and their difficult riddles.

ULB:

⁴ These proverbs are also to give wisdom to the naive, and to give knowledge and discretion to young people.

⁵ Let wise people listen and increase their learning, and let discerning people get guidance,

⁶ to understand proverbs, sayings, and words of wise people and their riddles.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- discern, discernment
- proverb

translationNotes:

- **are also to give wisdom to the naive** - This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “wisdom” can be stated as the adjective “wise.” This can also be stated in active form. AT: “also teach to those who are naive how to be wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”

- **to give knowledge and discretion to young people** - The abstract nouns “knowledge” and “discretion” can be stated as verbs. AT: “and to teach to young people what they need to know and how to discern the right thing to do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **discretion** - knowing what should be done in a particular situation
- **Let wise people listen and increase their learning** - “Let those who are wise pay attention and learn even more”
- **let discerning people get guidance** - “let people who have understanding learn from these proverbs how to make good decisions”
- **riddles** - sayings that one can understand only after thinking about them

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:7-9**UDB:**

- ⁷ You must begin your search for knowledge by honoring Yahweh and respecting him,
 a fool who dishonors himself hates wisdom and fights against the
 one who corrects him.
- ⁸ My son, listen when your father teaches you
 and do not disobey the rules your mother set down.
- ⁹ Their teaching is a wreath upon your head,
 and beautiful necklaces around your neck,
 they are priceless gifts from your parents.

ULB:

- ⁷ The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge—
 fools despise wisdom and instruction.
- ⁸ My son, hear the instruction of your father
 and do not lay aside the rules of your mother;
⁹ they will be a graceful wreath for your head
 and pendants hanging from your neck.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, make known
- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- discipline, self-discipline
- ancestor, father, forefather

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A father teaches his child.
- **The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge** - The abstract nouns “fear,” “beginning,” and “knowledge” can be stated as verbs. AT: “You must first fear Yahweh in order to begin to know what is wise” or “You must first honor and respect Yahweh in order to learn what is wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **fools despise wisdom and instruction** - “those who do not value what is wise and instructive are fools”
- **do not lay aside** - This is an idiom that means “do not ignore” or “do not reject” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **they will be a graceful wreath for your head and pendants hanging from your neck** - The rules and instructions that parents teach their children are so valuable and important that they are spoken of as if they were a beautiful wreath or pendant that a person wears. AT: “they will make you wise just as wearing a wreath on your head or a pendant around your neck makes you beautiful” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **wreath** - an woven circle made of leaves or flowers
- **pendants** - jewelry that is worn around the neck

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ My son, as sinners try to draw you into their sin with smooth talk and flattery,
do not listen to what they say and do not follow them.

¹¹ They may say, "Come with us! Join us!

We will hide in wait and we will take the life of one who passes by.

We will hide ourselves and we will rise up and attack a person who has done us no wrong—that will be our sport.

ULB:

¹⁰ My son, if sinners try to entice you into their sin,
refuse to follow them.

¹¹ If they say, "Come with us,

let us lie in wait to commit murder,

let us hide and attack innocent people for no reason.

translationWords:

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [innocent](#)

translationNotes:

- **try to entice you into their sin** - "try to persuade you to sin as they do"
- **refuse to follow them** - "refuse them" or "do not listen to them"
- **If they say** - Here the speaker gives an example of what sinners may try to entice someone to do. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **lie in wait** - "hide and wait for the right time"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Like the grave has power to take even a healthy person and drag them to the place of the dead, we will take their life from them.

We will make them like those who fall into the place where there is no hope of escape.

¹³ We will find many valuable and expensive items,

and we will fill our houses with what we stole from them!

¹⁴ So, come, be part of our team!

We will split into equal shares, and give to each member of our team, from all the things we stole.”

ULB:

¹² Let us swallow them up alive, like Sheol takes away those who are healthy, and make them like those who fall into the pit.

¹³ We shall find all kinds of valuable things;

we will fill our houses with what we steal from others.

¹⁴ Throw in your lot with us;

we will all have one purse together.”

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- like, likeness
- hades, sheol
- pit
- house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verses 12-14 end the imagined statement of the sinners who are trying to entice others to sin.
- **Let us swallow them up alive, like Sheol takes away those who are healthy** - The sinners speak of murdering innocent people as if they were Sheol and they would take a living and healthy person down to the place where dead people go. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Let us swallow ... like Sheol takes away** - This speaks of the grave as if it were a person that swallows humans and takes them down to the place of the dead. (See: [Personification](#))
- **like Sheol takes away those who are healthy** - The wicked expect to destroy their victims in the same way Sheol, the place of the dead, takes away even healthy people.
- **make them like those who fall into the pit** - Possible meanings are 1) this refers to travelers who fall into a deep hole where no one will ever find them or 2) here “pit” is another word that means Sheol or the place where dead people go.
- **Throw in your lot with us** - This is an idiom. AT: “Join us” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **we will all have one purse together** - Here “purse” represents everything that they steal. AT: “we will equally share everything that we steal” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **purse** - a bag for carrying money

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ My son, do not walk that road with them!

Do not put your foot down on the same path on which they walk!

¹⁶ They run to the places where they do terrible things,

They hurry so they can commit murder.

¹⁷ It is useless to put out a net to trap a bird
while the bird is watching you.

ULB:

¹⁵ My son, do not walk down that road with them;
do not let your foot touch where they walk;

¹⁶ their feet run to evil
and they hurry to shed blood.

¹⁷ For it is useless to spread the net to trap a bird
while the bird is watching.

translationWords:

- walk
- run, running
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- blood

translationNotes:

- **do not walk down that road with them; do not let your foot touch where they walk** - To avoid behaving the same way as the sinners do is spoken of as if the son were to avoid walking on or even touching the roads that sinners walk on. AT: “do not go with the sinners or do what they do” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **their feet run to evil** - The sinners having an eager interest in doing evil things is spoken of as if they were running to evil. AT: “they are eager to do wicked things” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **their feet run** - Here “feet” represents the whole person. AT: “they run” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **to shed blood** - Here “blood” represents a person’s life. To “shed blood” means to murder someone. (See: **Metonymy**)

- **For it is useless to spread ... is watching** - This begins a comparison that ends in 1:18. It compares the wisdom of birds who avoid traps that they see to the foolishness of sinners who get caught in traps they make for themselves.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ These men make plans that turn around and kill them.

They set a trap and the trap catches them.

¹⁹ These are the ways of all who gain their riches through theft and deceit;
the things they stole destroy the lives of the thieves who cling to them.

ULB:

¹⁸ These men lie in wait to kill themselves—

they set a trap for themselves.

¹⁹ So are the ways of everyone who gains riches by injustice;

unjust gain takes away the lives of those who hold on to it.

translationWords:

- snare, trap
- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **These men lie in wait to kill themselves—they set a trap for themselves** - This finishes the comparison started in [1:17](#). The men destroying themselves by doing sinful things is spoken of as if they set a trap and kill themselves. AT: “But these men are more foolish than the birds. They kill themselves with their own traps” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **So are the ways of everyone** - A person’s fate or destiny is spoken of as if it were a road a person walks on. AT: “This is what happens to everyone” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **unjust gain takes away the lives of those who hold on to it** - A person destroying themselves by trying to gain wealth through violence, theft, and deceit is spoken of as if the unjust gains will kill those who take it. AT: “it is like the unjust gains will destroy those who hold on to it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 01 General Notes
- **Proverbs 01 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 1:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Wisdom is like a woman who cries out in the streets.

Wisdom calls out to people in the plazas.

²¹ At the intersection of busy streets she cries out
and at the entrance of city gates.

²² She cries, "How long will you who have not been taught, will you love
being enticed to do what will harm you?

How long will you who think you know more than the wise, have
so much joy in the little you know?

How long will you fools refuse to learn?

ULB:

²⁰ Wisdom cries aloud in the street,
she raises her voice in the open places;

²¹ at the head of the noisy streets she cries out,
at the entrance of the city gates she speaks,

²² "How long, you naive people, will you love being naive?

How long, you mockers, will you delight in mockery,
and how long, you fools, will you hate knowledge?

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- voice
- gate, gate bar
- love
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- fool, foolish, folly
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In 1:20-1:33 Wisdom is spoken of as if it were a woman speaking to the people. (See: [Personification](#))

- **Wisdom cries aloud** - If your language does not allow you to treat wisdom as a woman shouting to the people in the city, you might try something like “Grandmother Wisdom cries aloud” or “Honored Miss Wisdom cries aloud” or “Wisdom is like a woman who cries aloud” (See: [Personification](#))
- **raises her voice** - This is an idiom. AT: “speaks with a loud voice” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **in the open places** - This means places where there would be a lot of people. AT: “in the markets” or “in the town squares” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **at the head of the noisy streets** - Possible meanings are 1) “head” refers to the place where busy streets intersect or 2) “head” refers to the top of a wall where people on noisy streets could see and hear wisdom speaking.
- **How long, you naive people, will you love being naive?** - Wisdom uses this question to rebuke those who are not wise. AT: “You who are naive must stop loving being naive.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”
- **How long, you mockers, will you delight in mockery, and how long, you fools, will you hate knowledge?** - Wisdom uses this question to rebuke the mockers and the fools. AT: “You who mock must stop delighting in mockery, and you fools must stop hating knowledge.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:23-25**UDB:**

²³ If you pay attention to me when I correct you,

I will tell you all I am thinking.

I will help you understand what I am saying to you.

²⁴ But when I called to you, you refused to listen.

I beckoned you and stretched out my hands to you,
but no one paid any attention.

²⁵ You refused to listen to my advice
and you did not listen when I corrected you.

ULB:

²³ Pay attention to my correction;

I will pour out my thoughts to you;

I will make my words known to you.

²⁴ I have called, and you have refused to listen;

I reached out with my hand, but there was no one who paid attention.

²⁵ But you have ignored all my instruction
and paid no attention to my correction.

translationWords:

- rebuke
- word
- know, knowledge, make known
- call, calling, called, call out
- instruct, instruction

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Wisdom continues to speak. (See: **Personification**)
- **Pay attention** - “Listen carefully”
- **I will pour out my thoughts to you** - Wisdom telling the people everything she thinks about them is spoken of as if her thoughts were a liquid that she would pour out. (See: **Metaphor**)

- **I will make my words known to you** - Here “words” represents thoughts. AT: “I will tell you what I think” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I reached out with my hand** - This phrase is an idiom that means to beckon someone or to invite a person to come. AT: “I invited you to come to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:26-27**UDB:**

- ²⁶ I will laugh at you, when you are experiencing troubles,
 when you are terribly afraid,
 I will have contempt for you and not compassion.
- ²⁷ When troubles strike you like a powerful storm,
 and disasters hit you like a violent wind,
 when you experience distress and you go through difficulties,
 I will have contempt for you.

ULB:

- ²⁶ I will laugh at your calamity,
 I will mock you when the terror comes—
- ²⁷ when your fearful dread comes like a storm
 and disaster sweeps over you like a whirlwind,
 when distress and anguish come upon you.

translationWords:

- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- terror, terrify

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Wisdom continues to speak, describing what happens to those who ignore her.
- **I will laugh** - This can be stated with the word “therefore” to show that the woman wisdom laughs at them because they ignored her. AT: “Therefore I will laugh” (See: [Connecting Words](#))
- **at your calamity** - “when bad things happen to you”
- **when the terror comes** - The abstract noun “terror” can be stated as an adjective. AT: “when you are terrified” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **when your fearful dread comes like a storm ... like a whirlwind ... come upon you** - Terrible things happening to the people is compared to a storm hitting them and causing fear and suffering. (See: [Simile](#))
- **whirlwind** - a very strong wind storm that causes damage

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ When people call to me to help them,

but I will not answer them.

They will be desperate for my help, and search everywhere for me,

but they will not find me.

²⁹ They reject what I say and they hate what I know,

and they made a choice not to show respect to Yahweh.

³⁰ They would not obey what I told them to do,

and they did not pay attention when I tried to correct them.

ULB:

²⁸ Then they will call upon me, and I will not answer;

they will desperately call for me, but they will not find me.

²⁹ Because they hate knowledge

and did not choose the fear of Yahweh,

³⁰ they would not follow my instruction,

and they despised all my correction.

translationWords:

- call, calling, called, call out
- know, knowledge, make known
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- instruct, instruction

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Wisdom continues speaking. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Then they will call upon me** - “Then those who ignored me will cry out to me for help”
- **Because they hate knowledge** - The abstract noun “knowledge” can be stated as the verb “learn.” AT: “Because they refused to learn to be wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **did not choose the fear of Yahweh** - The abstract noun “fear” can be stated as a verb. AT: “did not fear Yahweh” or “did not honor and respect Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **would not follow my instruction** - “would not accept my instruction” or “rejected my advice”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 1:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ So they will experience the consequences of their actions

when they carry out their evil plans.

³² Those who have not been taught wisdom are foolish.

Fools choose to make no decision about anything, but be sure of this: their failure to make a decision will destroy their lives.

³³ But those who pay attention to me will live in peace and safety,

and they will rest and not be afraid of any disaster that may come.”

ULB:

³¹ They will eat the fruit of their ways,

and with the fruit of their schemes they will be filled.

³² For the naive are killed when they turn away,

and the indifference of fools will destroy them.

³³ But whoever listens to me will live in safety

and will rest secure with no fear of disaster.”

translationWords:

- fruit, fruitful
- fool, foolish, folly
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verse 33 ends wisdom’s statement that began in [1:22](#).
- **eat the fruit of their ways** - Here a person’s behavior is spoken of as if it were a way or road. Also, a person receiving the results of their behavior is spoken as if the person were eating the fruit of their behavior. AT: “experience the consequences of their actions” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **with the fruit of their schemes they will be filled** - “they will eat the fruit of their schemes until they are full.” A person receiving the results of their own evil plans is spoken of as eating the fruit of their schemes. AT: “they will suffer the consequences of their own evil plans” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”
- **are killed when they turn away** - A person rejecting wisdom is spoken of as if the person physically turns away from wisdom. This can be stated in active form. AT: “die because they refuse to learn” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the indifference of fools will destroy them** - The abstract noun “indifference” can be stated as a verb. AT: “fools will die because they do not care about what should be done” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **indifference** - a lack of interest about something

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 01 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 01 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 2 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

My Son

Occasionally, the author addresses a proverb to “my son.” This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males. Instead, it is simply a form used to pass on advice as a father does to his son.

Links:

- [Proverbs 02:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 2:1-2**UDB:**

¹ My son, listen to what I say,

and consider my commands to be as valuable as a treasure.

² Pay attention to wisdom

and try hard to understand what is wise.

ULB:

² ¹ My son, if you receive my words

and treasure up my commandments with you,

² make your ears pay attention to wisdom

and incline your heart to understanding.

translationWords:

- receive
- word
- command, to command, commandment
- wise, wisdom
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - A father teaches his child using poetry. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **if you receive my words** - Here “words” represents a teaching. AT: “if you listen to what I am teaching you” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **if you receive** - This begins a series of conditional statements that concludes in 2:5. If it is more natural for your language, you can translate these conditional statements as commands as in the UDB.
- **treasure up my commandments with you** - Valuing what is commanded is spoken of as if the commandments were a treasure and the person were a safe place to store the treasure. AT: “consider my commands to be as valuable as a treasure” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **make your ears pay attention to wisdom and incline your heart to understanding** - If you translated 2:1 as a command, you can translate 2:2 as a command, as in the UDB. Or, if you translated 2:1 as a conditional statement, you could translate 2:2 as a conditional statement also. AT: “if you make your ears pay attention to wisdom and incline your heart to understanding” (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

- **make your ears pay attention** - This is an idiom. AT: “force yourself to listen carefully” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **wisdom** - This abstract noun can be stated as an adjective. AT: “listen to the wise things I am teaching you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **incline your heart to understanding** - Here “heart” represents a person’s mind. The phrase “incline your heart” is an idiom that means to commit or fully dedicate one’s mind to a task. AT: “try hard to understand what is wise” (UDB) or “fully dedicate yourself to understanding wise teachings” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:3-5**UDB:**

³ Call out to Yahweh to get insight,

plead with him to help you understand more of what he wants you to know.

⁴ Search eagerly for wisdom, like you would search for silver—

like you would search for a treasure that someone has hidden.

⁵ If you do that, you will understand how to give Yahweh the respect he deserves,

and you will succeed in knowing God.

ULB:

³ If you cry out for understanding

and raise your voice for it,

⁴ if you seek it like you would seek silver

and search for understanding as you would seek hidden treasures,

⁵ then you will understand the fear of Yahweh

and you will find the knowledge of God.

translationWords:

- cry, cry out
- understand, understanding
- voice
- seek, sought
- silver
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- God

translationNotes:

- **If you cry out for understanding and raise your voice for it** - Both of these statements have the same meaning. It is implied that the person is strongly asking Yahweh for understanding. AT: "If you urgently ask God and plead for understanding" (See: **Parallelism** and **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

- **If you cry ... if you seek** - This continues the series of conditional statements started in [2:1](#). If you translated the statements in 1:1-2 as commands, you should translate these as commands also as in the UDB.
- **raise your voice** - This is an idiom that means to speak loudly or to shout. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **if you seek it like you would seek silver and search for understanding as you would seek hidden treasures** - Both statements have the same meaning. These similes emphasize the great effort a person should make to understand what is wise. AT: “if you seek understanding with as much effort as you search for a valuable object” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Simile](#))
- **you seek it ... search for understanding** - Trying very hard to understand what is wise is spoken of as if understanding were an object for which a person must search. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **you will find the knowledge of God** - To succeed in knowing God is spoken of as if the knowledge of God were an object that a person finds after searching. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh is the one who gives us wisdom.

He is the one who tells us things that we need to know and understand.

⁷ He stores up good advice so he can give it to them who honor him by the way they live their lives.

He protects those who do with their lives what they say with their lips.

⁸ He guards justice and works to see it is done,
and he keeps safe those who are faithful to him.

ULB:

⁶ For Yahweh gives wisdom,
from his mouth comes knowledge and understanding.

⁷ He stores up sound wisdom for those who please him,
he is a shield for those who walk in integrity,

⁸ he guards the paths of justice
and he will preserve the way of those who are faithful to him.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- wise, wisdom
- shield
- walk
- integrity
- just, justice, justly
- faithful, faithfulness

translationNotes:

- **from his mouth comes knowledge and understanding** - Here “mouth” represents Yahweh himself or what he says. AT: “from Yahweh comes knowledge and understanding” or “Yahweh tells us what we need to know and understand” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **He stores up sound wisdom for those who please him** - Yahweh teaching wisdom to people is spoken of as if wisdom were an item that Yahweh stores and gives to people. AT: “He teaches what is truly wise to those who please him” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **sound** - “dependable”
- **he is a shield for those** - Yahweh being able to protect his people is spoken of as if he were a shield. AT: “God protects those” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who walk in integrity** - A person behaving with integrity is spoken of as if they were walking in integrity. AT: “who behave with integrity” or “who live their lives as they should” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he guards the paths of justice** - Possible meanings are 1) justice itself is spoken of as if it were a path. AT: “God makes sure that people act justly” or 2) a person’s life is spoken of as if it were a path. AT: “God protects those who act justly” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **preserve the way of those** - A person’s life is spoken of as if it were a way or road. AT: “protect those” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ You will understand what Yahweh sees is right and what Yahweh determines is just to do,
and he will show you the best way to live.

¹⁰ Wisdom will fill your life;
knowing what Yahweh wants you to know will cause you to be joyful.

ULB:

⁹ Then you will understand righteousness, justice, and equity,
and every good path.

¹⁰ For wisdom will come into your heart,
and knowledge will be pleasant to your soul.

translationWords:

- righteous, righteousness
- just, justice, justly
- wise, wisdom
- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- soul

translationNotes:

- **equity** - “fairness”
- **every good path** - A behavior that is wise and pleases Yahweh is spoken of as if it were a good path. AT: “ways to live that are pleasing to God” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **wisdom will come into your heart** - Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. A person becoming wise is spoken of as if wisdom would enter into a person’s heart. AT: “you will gain much wisdom” or “you will learn how to be truly wise” (See: **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)
- **pleasant to your soul** - Here “soul” represents the whole person. AT: “pleasing to you” or “enjoyable to you” (See: **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ You will learn to tell the difference between right and wrong
and that will keep you safe.

¹² You will not do what Yahweh forbids you to do,
and you will stay away from those who imagine horrible things and
talk about them.

¹³ They go the wrong way,
and they walk where there is no light.

ULB:

¹¹ Discretion will watch over you,
understanding will guard you.

¹² They will rescue you from the way of evil,
from those who speak perverse things,

¹³ who abandon the right paths
and walk in the ways of darkness.

translationWords:

- watch, watchman
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- walk
- darkness

translationNotes:

- **Discretion will watch over you, understanding will guard you** - This speaks of “discretion” and “understanding” as if they were persons who could watch over someone else. Both statements mean basically the same thing. AT: “Because you think carefully and understand what is right and wrong you will be safe” (See: **Personification** and **Parallelism**)
- **Discretion** - the quality of being careful in actions and speech
- **watch over** - to guard, protect or take care of someone or something
- **They will rescue you from the way of evil** - “They” refers to discretion and understanding, which are spoken of as if they were persons who could rescue someone else. AT: “You will know to stay away from what is evil” (See: **Personification**)

- **from the way of evil** - Evil behaviors are spoken of as if evil were a way or path on which a person walks. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who abandon the right paths and walk in the ways of darkness** - A person no longer doing what is right but deciding to do what is evil is spoken of as if the person stops walking on the correct path and chooses to walk down a dark path. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **who abandon** - The word “who” refers to the people who speak perverse things.
- **abandon** - to leave and never return to someone or something

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ They are glad when they do what is wrong,

they twist good things into bad and enjoy doing what they know is wrong.

¹⁵ They bend the truth and live by deception

and their lies hide what they have done.

ULB:

¹⁴ They rejoice when they do evil

and delight in the perversities of evil.

¹⁵ They follow crooked paths,

and using deception they hide their tracks.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

translationNotes:

- **They rejoice** - “They” refers to the same people as in [2:12](#).
- **delight in the perversities of evil** - This means basically the same thing as the first part of the sentence. AT: “delight in doing what they know is evil” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **They follow crooked paths** - People who lie to others are spoken of as if they walk on crooked or twisted paths. AT: “They deceive other people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **and using deception they hide their tracks** - People lying so that others will not find out what they did is spoken of as if they covered the tracks on a path so that no one could follow them. AT: “and they lie so that no one will know what they have done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Wisdom will keep you safe from the adulterous woman,

and you will not pay attention when a strange woman invites you to be with her.

¹⁷ Those women left the husbands they married when they were young,

they forgot the promise they made to God to love only the one they married.

ULB:

¹⁶ Wisdom and discretion will save you from an adulterous woman, from an immoral woman and her flattering words.

¹⁷ She forsakes the companion of her youth and forgets the covenant of her God.

translationWords:

- sexual immorality
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- companion
- covenant
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The father continues to teach his child how wisdom will protect him.
- **Wisdom and discretion will save you** - The writer speaks of wisdom and discretion as if they were people who save the one who possesses them. AT: "If you have wisdom and discretion, you will save yourself" (See: **Personification**)
- **the companion of her youth** - This refers to her husband, whom she married when she was young.
- **the covenant of her God** - This likely refers to the marriage covenant that she made with her husband in the presence of God.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Those who enter her house are taken to their death,

because the way to her house takes them where dead people are buried.

¹⁹ All who go to her to sleep with her have no way to get out of her house, they will be so lost they will never find the way back to life.

ULB:

¹⁸ For her house leads down to death
and her tracks will lead you to those in the grave.

¹⁹ All who go in to her will not return again
and they will not find the paths of life.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- tomb, grave, burial place
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **her house leads down to death** - Possible meanings are 1) “going to her house leads to death” or 2) “the road to her house is the road to death.”
- **her tracks will lead you** - Possible meanings are 1) “the paths to her house will lead you.” This refers to the tracks or path that lead to her house, or 2) this is a metaphor that speaks of her way of life as if it were a path on which she walks. AT: “her way of life will lead you” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to those in the grave** - This refers to the spirits of dead people and is a metonym for the place of the dead. AT: “to the grave” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **go in to her** - This means to go into her house to sleep with her, as one would with a prostitute. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **they will not find the paths of life** - Possible meanings are 1) “they will not return to the land of the living” or 2) “they will never live a happy life again.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 2:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ You must live your life in the same way that good men are living.

You should do the same things as those who do what is right.

²¹ Those who do what is right will receive the land as a gift from Yahweh,

and only those who do what they have promised will stay in the land for a long time.

²² Those who do bad things will have no claim to this land,

and people who take advantage of others and do not keep their word, they will never have even a small part of the land.

ULB:

²⁰ So you will walk in the way of good people

and follow the paths of righteous people.

²¹ For those doing right will make a home in the land,

and those with integrity will remain in it.

²² But the wicked will be cut off from the land,

and the faithless will be cut off from it.

translationWords:

- walk
- good, goodness
- integrity
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- cut off
- faithless, faithlessness

translationNotes:

- **So** - The writer tells the result of getting understanding and discretion.
- **you will walk in the way ... follow the paths** - A person's conduct is spoken of as if it were walking on a path. AT: "you will live in the way ... follow the example" (See: **Metaphor**)

- **the wicked will be cut off from the land** - The writer speaks of Yahweh removing people from the land as if he were cutting the people off, like a person might cut a branch from a tree. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will remove the wicked from the land” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the wicked ... the faithless** - These are nominal adjectives that can be stated as adjectives. AT: “those who are wicked ... those who are faithless” or “wicked people ... faithless people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **the faithless will be cut off from it** - The writer speaks of Yahweh removing people from the land as if he were cutting the people off, like a person might cut a branch from a tree. This can be stated in active form. AT: “he will remove the faithless from it” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 02 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 02 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 3 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

My Son

Occasionally, the author addresses a proverb to “my son.” This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males. Instead, it is simply a form used to pass on advice as a father does to his son.

Wisdom is feminine

You may notice that wisdom is referenced using a feminine pronoun. This is a feature that is carried in from the Hebrew language. This may apply well in your language but if it does not, follow the conventions of your language. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 03:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 3:1-2**UDB:**

¹ My son, do not forget the lessons I have taught you.

Keep my commands inside of you, as important guidance for how you will live,

² because they will help you live a long life, measured in either days or years, and they will bring you peace in addition to all the lessons they teach you.

ULB:

³ ¹ My son, do not forget my commands
and keep my teachings in your heart,

² for length of days and years of life
and peace they will add to you.

translationWords:

- command, to command, commandment
- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer speaks as a father teaching his child using poetry. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **do not forget my commands** - The word “commands” can be translated as a verb. AT: “do not forget what I command you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **keep my teachings in your heart** - This phrase says in positive terms what the previous phrase says in negative terms. Here the word “heart” represents the mind. The word “teachings” can be translated as a verb. AT: “always remember what I teach you” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **length of days and years of life** - These two phrases share similar meanings and refer to living a long life. AT: “a long life” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:3-4**UDB:**

³ Treat others with tenderness and always speak the truth to them.

Let tenderness and truth guide you in every relationship,
as if they both were on a necklace you wear, a necklace that guides
you in everything you say.

⁴ Then you will experience God's delight in you,
and people will also approve of you.

ULB:

³ Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness ever leave you,
tie them together about your neck,
write them on the tablet of your heart.

⁴ Then you will find favor and a good reputation
in the sight of God and man.

translationWords:

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- heart
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- God

translationNotes:

- **Do not let covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness ever leave you** - The writer speaks of "covenant faithfulness" and "trustworthiness" as if they were people who could leave someone. The negative command can be stated positively. AT: "Make sure always to practice covenant faithfulness and to be trustworthy" (See: [Personification](#))
- **tie them together about your neck** - The writer speaks of faithfulness and trustworthiness as if they were objects that a person could tie around the neck like a necklace. The image suggests that these are valuable things that the person displays outwardly. AT: "display them proudly like one would wear a necklace" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **write them on the tablet of your heart** - Here the heart represents a person's mind. The mind is spoken of as if it were a tablet upon which someone can write messages and commands. AT: "always remember them, as if you had written them permanently on a tablet" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **in the sight of God and man** - Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. AT: "in the judgment of God and man" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Put all your trust in Yahweh,

and do not take action because you made up your mind what you should do;

⁶ but in every choice and decision, look to Yahweh,

and he will show you how you must live.

ULB:

⁵ Trust in Yahweh with all your heart

and do not lean on your own understanding;

⁶ in all your ways acknowledge him

and he will make your paths straight.

translationWords:

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- Yahweh
- heart
- understand, understanding

translationNotes:

- **all your heart** - Here the word “heart” represents the inner person. AT: “your whole being” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **do not lean on your own understanding** - The writer speaks of relying on one’s own understanding as if “understanding” were an object on which a person can lean. AT: “do not rely on your own understanding” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in all your ways** - The writer speaks of a person’s actions as if they were paths on which the person walks. AT: “in everything you do” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **he will make your paths straight** - The writer speaks of Yahweh making a person’s actions prosperous as if that person’s actions were paths on which he walks and which Yahweh makes free of obstacles. AT: “he will give you success” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:7-8**UDB:**

- ⁷ Do not think you are wise enough to direct your life,
 give Yahweh the reverence he deserves,
 and when evil invites you in, turn aside from it.
- ⁸ Giving Yahweh reverence will make your body healthy
 and it will give your bones the food it needs.

ULB:

- ⁷ Do not be wise in your own eyes;
 fear Yahweh and turn away from evil.
- ⁸ It will be healing to your flesh
 and refreshment for your body.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- flesh

translationNotes:

- **Do not be wise in your own eyes** - The writer speaks of a person's opinion as if that person were seeing something with his eyes. AT: "Do not be wise in your own opinion" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **turn away from evil** - The writer speaks of not committing evil actions as if it were turning away from evil. AT: "do not commit evil" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **It will be healing to your flesh** - The word "it" refers to the instructions that the writer gives in the previous verse. The full meaning of this can be made clear. The word "flesh" represents the whole body. AT: "If you do this, it will be healing for your body" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** and **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ When you gain money, honor Yahweh by giving him the tithe;

give him the first portion of what you received, to remember it all came from him.

¹⁰ If you honor Yahweh, your storerooms will be so full that they will overflow,

and your barrels will be bursting with all the wine you have made.

ULB:

⁹ Honor Yahweh with your wealth

and with the firstfruits of all your produce,

¹⁰ and your storehouses will be filled up

and your vats will be bursting, full of new wine.

translationWords:

- [honor, to honor](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

translationNotes:

- **produce** - “harvest”
- **your storehouses will be filled up** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “your storehouses will be full” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **storehouses** - buildings or rooms where food is stored
- **your vats will be bursting** - your storage containers will be extremely full, as if ready to break open.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ My son, do not hate it when Yahweh corrects you,
and when he rebukes you, do not resent it,
¹² for Yahweh only corrects those he loves,
just like parents correct their children whom they love.

ULB:

¹¹ My son, do not despise Yahweh's instruction
and do not hate his rebuke,
¹² for Yahweh disciplines those he loves,
as a father deals with a son who pleases him.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [rebuke](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [love](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer writes as a father teaching his son.
- **a son who pleases him** - "a son in whom he delights." This refers to the father's affection for the son, and not to the father's approval of the son's behavior. AT: "a son whom he loves" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Those who get wisdom are fortunate;

with her they also get understanding.

¹⁴ Wisdom gives you a better profit than owning silver,

and she will give you something that is much more valuable than gold.

ULB:

¹³ The one who finds wisdom is blessed;

he also gets understanding.

¹⁴ What you gain from wisdom is better than what silver will give in return and its profit is better than gold.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [silver](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **The one who finds wisdom** - The writer speaks of “wisdom” as if it were an object that one finds. AT: “The one who attains wisdom” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what silver will give in return** - This refers to the profit that one can make from trading or investing silver.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Being wise is more precious than jewels

and there is nothing you desire that is worth as much as wisdom.

¹⁶ Wisdom can make you able to live a long life, if you do what she teaches;

she is also ready to make you wealthy and to persuade other people to honor you.

ULB:

¹⁵ Wisdom is more precious than jewels

and nothing you desire can compare to her.

¹⁶ She has length of days in her right hand;

in her left hand are riches and honor.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author speaks of wisdom as if it were a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **precious** - “valuable” or “costly”
- **She has length of days in her right hand; in her left hand are riches and honor** - The writer speak of the benefits that one gains from having wisdom as if wisdom were a woman who held these qualities in her hands and offered them to people. AT: “Wisdom gives a person length of days and riches and honor” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **length of days** - This idiom refers to a long life. AT: “long life” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Wisdom is known by how kind she is,

and she always directs you to the place where you will find peace.

¹⁸ Wisdom is like a tree whose fruit gives life to those who hold on to it,
and Yahweh gives happiness to those who hold on to it.

ULB:

¹⁷ Her ways are ways of kindness

and all her paths are peace.

¹⁸ She is a tree of life to those who take hold of it,
those who hold on to it are happy.

translationWords:

- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **Her ways are ways of kindness and all her paths are peace** - The writer speaks of wisdom as if it were a woman and of the benefits that wisdom gives a person as if wisdom were leading that person along a path. AT: “Wisdom will always treat you kindly and give you peace” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **She is a tree of life to those who take hold of it** - The writer speaks of wisdom as if it were a tree that bears life-giving fruit and of a person who benefits from wisdom as if that person ate of the fruit. AT: “Wisdom is like a tree that sustains the life of those who eat of its fruit” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a tree of life** - “a tree that gives life” or “a tree whose fruit sustains life”
- **those who hold on to it** - “those who hold on to its fruit”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ By his wisdom Yahweh laid out the earth from the very beginning,

and by his understanding he put everything in the heavens exactly where they should be.

²⁰ The deepest part of the oceans broke open according to Yahweh's design,

and in the same way, he made the dew so it would fall from the clouds above.

ULB:

¹⁹ By wisdom Yahweh founded the earth,

by understanding he established the heavens.

²⁰ By his knowledge the depths broke open

and the clouds dropped their dew.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- foundation, founded
- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh founded the earth ... established the heavens** - The writer speaks of Yahweh creating the earth and the heavens as if he were laying the foundation of a building. AT: "Yahweh created the earth ... made the heavens" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the depths broke open** - In ancient thought, water existed under the earth. This phrase refers to Yahweh causing that water to come out of the earth and make the oceans and rivers exist. AT: "he caused the rivers to flow" or "he caused the oceans to exist" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **dew** - water that forms on the ground at night

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ My son, hold on to good sense in the decisions you make,
and do not take your eye off of them.

²² They will bring life to you,
and a sign of Yahweh's blessings on your life
that people can see by your good judgment.

ULB:

²¹ My son, keep sound judgment and discernment,
and do not lose sight of them.

²² They will be life to your soul
and an adornment of favor to wear around your neck.

translationWords:

- judge, judgment
- discern, discernment
- life, live, living, alive
- soul
- favor, favorable, favoritism

translationNotes:

- **do not lose sight of them** - The writer speaks of not forgetting something as if it were always being able to see it. AT: "do not forget them" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **They will be life to your soul** - Here the word "soul" represents the person. AT: "They will be life for you" (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **an adornment of favor to wear around your neck** - The writer speaks of "sound judgment" and "discernment" as if they were objects that a person could tie around the neck like a necklace. The image suggests that these are valuable things that the person displays outwardly. AT: "a display of favor like one would adorn themselves with a necklace" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **adornment of favor** - Possible meanings are 1) "a favorable adornment" or 2) "an adornment that displays Yahweh's favor."

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:23-24**UDB:**

- ²³ Your good decisions will take you where you are going in safety,
and they will keep you from taking a wrong step on the way.
- ²⁴ When you lie down to sleep, you will not have any fear,
and your sleep will be refreshing.

ULB:

- ²³ Then you will walk on your way in safety
and your foot will not stumble;
- ²⁴ when you lie down, you will not be afraid;
when you lie down, your sleep will be sweet.

translationWords:

- walk
- stumble
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **you will walk on your way in safety** - The writer speaks of living one's life as if the person were walking along a path. AT: "you will live your life in safety" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your foot will not stumble** - The word "foot" represents the whole person. The writer speaks of doing wrong as if a person stumbled over an object in his path. AT: "you will not do things that are wrong" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **when you lie down** - It is implied that a person lies down in order to sleep. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: "when you lie down to sleep" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **your sleep will be sweet** - The writer speaks of sleep that is peaceful and refreshing as if it tasted sweet to the person sleeping. The word "sleep" can be translated as a verb. AT: "your sleep will be pleasant" or "you will sleep peacefully" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 03 General Notes
- **Proverbs 03 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 3:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Do not let a disaster fill you with terror,

and do not let the wicked fill you with fear when they come for you.

²⁶ Yahweh takes your side to defend you,

he will not allow any trap to catch and hold you.

ULB:

²⁵ Do not be afraid of sudden terror

or devastation caused by the wicked, when it comes,

²⁶ for Yahweh will be on your side

and will keep your foot from being caught in a trap.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- terror, terrify
- devastate, devastation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **devastation caused by the wicked, when it comes** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “when the wicked cause devastation” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Yahweh will be on your side** - “Yahweh will be by your side.” A person standing by another person’s side is an idiom that means that the one person will help and support the other. AT: “Yahweh will support and defend you” (See: **Idiom**)
- **will keep your foot from being caught in a trap** - The writer speaks of a person experiencing harm from “terror” and “devastation” as if the person were caught in a trap. The word “foot” represents the whole person. AT: “will protect you from those who want to harm you” (See: **Metaphor** and **Synecdoche**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Give good gifts to those who deserve it,
when you can, help them.

²⁸ Do not say to your neighbor, "Come back later;
perhaps I will help you tomorrow,"
when you have the money with you and can help them now.

ULB:

²⁷ Do not withhold good from those who deserve it,
when it is in your power to act.

²⁸ Do not say to your neighbor,
"Go, and come again, and tomorrow I will give it,"
when you have the money with you.

translationWords:

- [good, goodness](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not withhold good** - "Do not withhold good things" or "Do not withhold good actions"
- **when it is in your power to act** - "when you are able to help"
- **when you have the money with you** - "when you have the money with you now." The meaning here is that the person has the money to help today, but tells his neighbor to come back tomorrow.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Do not make plans to harm anyone you know,
especially those who live close to you and trust you.

³⁰ If a person has done nothing to you,
do not argue with him or say he has done something to you, when
he has not.

ULB:

²⁹ Do not make a plan to harm your neighbor—
the one who lives close and trusts you.

³⁰ Do not argue with a person without a reason,
when he has done nothing to harm you.

translationWords:

- [neighbor](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ Do not envy a person who does violence to others,
and do not imitate anything he does.

³² A lying person is hated by Yahweh for what he does,
but Yahweh is a close friend to anyone who lives rightly.

ULB:

³¹ Do not envy a violent person
or choose any of his ways.

³² For the devious person is detestable to Yahweh,
but he brings the upright person into his confidence.

translationWords:

- [envy, covet](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [upright, uprightness](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)

translationNotes:

- **Do not ... choose any of his ways** - It is implied that he is not to choose to imitate the actions of the violent person. AT: “Do not ... choose to imitate any of his ways” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the devious person is detestable to Yahweh** - “Yahweh detests the devious person”
- **the devious person** - the person who is dishonest or deceitful
- **he brings the upright person into his confidence** - Yahweh shares his thoughts with the those who do right as with a close, trusted friend. AT: “Yahweh is a close friend to the upright” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:33-34**UDB:**

³³ Yahweh promises punishment to the families of those who do evil things.

but he makes happy the families of the good.

³⁴ Yahweh makes fools of those who treat others with disrespect,

but he gives his kindness to people who are humble.

ULB:

³³ The curse of Yahweh is on the house of the wicked person,

but he blesses the home of righteous people.

³⁴ He mocks mockers,

but he gives his favor to humble people.

translationWords:

- curse, cursed
- Yahweh
- house
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- bless, blessed, blessing
- righteous, righteousness
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- humble, humility

translationNotes:

- **The curse of Yahweh is on the house of the wicked person** - The writer speaks of Yahweh's curse as if it were an object that he placed on top of the wicked person's house. The word "house" is a metonym for family. AT: "Yahweh has cursed the family of the wicked person" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **he blesses the home of righteous people** - The word "home" represents the family. AT: "he blesses the families of righteous people" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he gives his favor to humble people** - The writer speaks of Yahweh's favor as if it were an object that he gives to people. AT: "he shows his favor to humble people" or "he is gracious to humble people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 3:35**UDB:**

³⁵ Those who are wise will be honored,
but foolish people will become well known for their dishonor.

ULB:

³⁵ Wise people inherit honor,
but fools will be lifted up in their shame.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- honor, to honor
- fool, foolish, folly
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **Wise people inherit honor** - The writer speaks of wise people obtaining a reputation of honor as if they inherited honor as a permanent possession. AT: “Wise people will obtain honor” or “Wise people will gain an honorable reputation” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **fools will be lifted up in their shame** - The writer speaks of Yahweh making the shame of fools evident to everyone as if Yahweh were lifting fools up for everyone to see them. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will cause everyone to see the shame of fools” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 03 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 03 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 4 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

My Son

Occasionally, the author addresses a proverb to “my son.” This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males. Instead, it is simply a form used to pass on advice as a father does to his son.

Wisdom is feminine

You may notice that wisdom is referenced using a feminine pronoun. This is a feature that is carried in from the Hebrew language. This may apply well in your language but if it does not, follow the conventions of your language. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 04:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 4:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Listen, children, listen to what I am teaching you.

If you pay attention, you will learn about what it means to understand.

² The lessons I give to you are good teaching, given in order.

So do not refuse to learn the lessons I teach you.

ULB:

4 ¹ Listen, sons, to a father's instruction,
and pay attention so you will know what understanding is.

² I am giving you good instructions;
do not forsake my teaching.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- ancestor, father, forefather
- good, goodness
- forsake, forsaken, forsook

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer speaks as a father teaching his children.
- **pay attention** - "listen carefully"
- **you will know what understanding is** - "you will know how to understand" or "you will gain understanding"
- **I am giving you good instructions** - "What I am teaching you is good"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:3-4**UDB:**

³ When I was my father's boy,
 and the only child of my mother,
⁴ my father told me, "Put my words deep within you,
 obey my orders to you,
 and you will have life.

ULB:

³ When I was a son of my father,
 the tender and only child of my mother,
⁴ he taught me and said to me,
 "Let your heart hold fast to my words;
 keep my commands and live.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- children, child
- heart
- word
- command, to command, commandment
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **When I was a son of my father** - This refers to the time when the writer was a child still living under his father's care. AT: "When I was still a boy learning from my father" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the tender and only child** - Here the word "tender" refers to a young age at which the child is still weak. It forms a hendiadys with the word "only." AT: "the tender only child" (See: [Hendiadys](#))
- **Let your heart hold fast to my words** - Here the word "heart" represents the person's mind. The writer speaks of remembering words as if the heart were holding on tightly to them. AT: "Always remember what I am teaching you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Hold on to what is wise and whatever helps you understand,

and do not forget the lessons I taught you and do not throw away the insights I spoke to you.

⁶ Do not run away from the lessons which the wise teach you,

because if you become wise, wisdom will keep you safe.

Love wisdom and it will guard your life.

ULB:

⁵ Acquire wisdom and understanding;

do not forget and do not reject the words of my mouth;

⁶ do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you;

love her and she will keep you safe.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- reject
- word
- watch, watchman
- love

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The father continues to teach his children what his father taught him.
- **Acquire wisdom** - “Work hard to gain for yourself wisdom” or “Get wisdom”
- **do not forget** - “remember”
- **do not reject** - “accept”
- **the words of my mouth** - Here the word “mouth” represents the person who speaks. AT: “what I am saying” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you; love her and she will keep you safe** - The writer speaks of wisdom as if it were a woman who protects the person who is faithful to her. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **do not abandon wisdom** - This can be stated in positive form. AT: “hold tightly to wisdom” or “be faithful to wisdom”
- **love her** - “love wisdom”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ The most important thing you can do is to study the principles of wisdom

and spend all you own so you can grow more and more in your understanding.

⁸ Wisdom is to be loved more than anything that is valuable, and she will raise you to a high position—

and wisdom will honor you when you show how much you love it.

⁹ When you have attained wisdom, it will be like a beautiful wreath of honor on your head;

she will give you a beautiful crown.”

ULB:

⁷ Wisdom is the most important thing, so acquire wisdom and spend all you own so you can get understanding.

⁸ Cherish wisdom and she will exalt you; she will honor you when you embrace her.

⁹ She will put a wreath of honor on your head; she will give you a beautiful crown.”

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- exalt, exaltation
- honor, to honor
- crown, to crown

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The father finishes teaching his children what his father taught him.
- **spend all you own so you can get understanding** - “value understanding more than all you own”
- **Cherish wisdom and she will exalt you** - The writer speaks of wisdom as if it were a woman and of wisdom giving great honor to a person as if wisdom lifted that person to a high position. AT: “If you cherish wisdom, she will give you great honor” (See: **Personification** and **Metaphor**)

- **Cherish** - to feel or show great love for someone or something
- **she will honor you when you embrace her** - The writer speaks of wisdom as if it were a woman and of a person valuing wisdom as if the person placed his arms around her. AT: “if you love wisdom greatly, wisdom will cause people to honor you” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **She will put a wreath of honor on your head** - The writer speaks of the honor that a person will have from gaining wisdom as if wisdom placed a wreath upon that person’s head. AT: “Wisdom will be like a wreath on your head that shows your great honor” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **wreath** - a woven circle made of leaves or flowers
- **she will give you a beautiful crown** - The writer speaks of the honor that a person will have from gaining wisdom as if wisdom placed a crown upon that person’s head. AT: “wisdom will be like a beautiful crown on your head” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Hear, my son, listen and understand what I say to you—

do this, and you will live a long life.

¹¹ I directed you in the way you should walk and to use the wisdom you were taught;

I led you by the hand down the roads, roads that are the right way for you to go. ¹² When you live, you do not have anyone to blame; if you live wisely,

when you use all your effort, you will succeed .

ULB:

¹⁰ Listen, my son, and pay attention to my words, and you will have many years in your life.

¹¹ I direct you in the way of wisdom;

I lead you down straight paths.

¹² When you walk, no one will stand in your way and if you run, you will not stumble.

translationWords:

- word
- life, live, living, alive
- wise, wisdom
- walk
- run, running
- stumble

translationNotes:

- **and pay attention to my words** - “listen carefully to what I teach you”
- **you will have many years in your life** - “you will live many years”
- **I direct you in the way of wisdom; I lead you down straight paths** - The writer speaks of teaching his son to live wisely as if he were leading his son along the paths where one may find wisdom. AT: “I am teaching you how to live wisely; I am explaining the right way to live” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **When you walk, no one will stand in your way and if you run, you will not stumble -**
These two lines share similar meanings. The writer speaks of the decisions and actions that a person makes as if that person were walking or running along a path and of the person being successful as if the path were free of obstacles that might make the person stumble. AT: “When you plan something, you will succeed in doing it” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Remember the lessons that discipline taught you,
and do not let them go.

Guard them; for you live your life by them.

¹⁴ Do not do what wicked people do, nor be with them;
do not be with people who do evil things.

¹⁵ Stay far from those ways;
turn another way and go on another road.

ULB:

¹³ Hold on to instruction, do not let it go;
guard it, for it is your life.

¹⁴ Do not follow the path of the wicked
and do not go along the way of those who do evil.

¹⁵ Avoid it, do not go on it;
turn away from it and go another way.

translationWords:

- discipline, self-discipline
- life, live, living, alive
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **Hold on to instruction, do not let it go** - The writer speaks of a person remembering what he has learned as if “instruction” were an object that the person can hold tightly. AT: “Continue to obey what I have taught you and never forget it” (See **Metaphor**)
- **for it is your life** - The writer speaks of discipline preserving a person’s life as if it were that person’s life. AT: “for it will preserve your life” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **Do not follow the path of the wicked and do not go along the way of those who do evil** - The writer speaks of a person’s actions as if that person were walking along a path. AT: “Do not do what wicked people do and do not join in the actions of people who do evil” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Avoid it** - “Avoid the path of the wicked”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Evil people cannot rest until they have done something that Yahweh said they must not do.

They will not rest until they force someone to fall, someone who was doing well until they came along.

¹⁷ They get their strength, and they are fed by doing what is wrong; and they are intoxicated by hurting others; they get drunk on it.

ULB:

¹⁶ For they cannot sleep until they do evil and they are robbed of sleep until they cause someone to stumble.

¹⁷ For they eat the bread of wickedness and drink the wine of violence.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- stumble
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **they cannot sleep until they do evil** - The writer uses an exaggeration to express wicked people's desire to commit evil actions. (See: **Hyperbole**)
- **they are robbed of sleep** - The writer speaks of people being unable to sleep as if sleep were an object that someone stole from them. AT: "they are unable to sleep" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **until they cause someone to stumble** - The writer speaks of causing harm to another person as if it were causing that person to stumble. AT: "until they harm someone" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **they eat the bread of wickedness and drink the wine of violence** - Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor in which the writer speaks of these people constantly committing wickedness and violence as if they ate and drank them like one would drink bread and wine. AT: "wickedness is like the bread that they eat and violence is like the wine that they drink" or 2) these people get their food and drink by committing wickedness and violence. AT: "they eat bread that they obtain by doing wicked things and drink wine that they obtain through violence" (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ The path taken by those who do right grows brighter and brigher, like the rising of the sun at dawn,

and it shines brighter and brighter until it is as full as the light of day.

¹⁹ The actions of the wicked are like the darkness—

they stumble because they cannot see what makes them fall.

ULB:

¹⁸ But the path of righteous people is like the first light that grows brighter; it shines more and more until the fullness of the day comes.

¹⁹ The way of the wicked is like darkness—

they do not know what it is they stumble over.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- darkness
- stumble

translationNotes:

- **the path of righteous people ... The way of the wicked** - The writer speaks of the actions and lifestyles of righteous people and wicked people as if they were a “path” or “way” upon which they walk. AT: “the lifestyle of righteous people ... The lifestyle of the wicked” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the path of righteous people is like the first light that grows brighter** - The writer compares the path of righteous people to the sunrise, meaning that they are safe because they have light to see where they are walking. AT: “righteous people walk along their path safely because the morning sun shines on it and grows brighter” (See: **Simile**)
- **the first light** - This refers to the dawn or sunrise.
- **until the fullness of the day comes** - This refers to the time of day at which the sun shines the brightest. AT: “until the sun shines most brightly” or “until full daylight” (See: **Idiom**)
- **The way of the wicked is like darkness** - The writer compares the way of wicked people to darkness, meaning that they are always in danger because they have no light to see where they are walking. AT: “Wicked people walk dangerously along their path because they have no light to be able to see” (See: **Simile**)

- **they do not know what it is they stumble over** - The writer speaks of experiencing harm as if it were stumbling over an object in the path along which the person walks. AT: “they do not know why they experience harm and misfortune” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ My son, pay attention to what I am saying to you.

Pay attention to these lessons I am teaching you.

²¹ Keep reading them over and over,
and keep them deep within you.

ULB:

²⁰ My son, pay attention to my words;
incline your ear to my sayings.

²¹ Do not let them turn away from your eyes;
keep them in your heart.

translationWords:

- word
- heart

translationNotes:

- **pay attention** - “listen carefully”
- **incline your ear to my sayings** - Here the word “ear” represents the person who is listening. The writer speaks of listening attentively to someone as if it were leaning forward so that the ear is closer to the one speaking. The word “sayings” can be translated as a verb. AT: “listen attentively to the things that I am saying” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Do not let them turn away from your eyes** - The writer speaks of always thinking about something as if it were keeping it where one can see it. AT: “Do not stop thinking about them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **keep them in your heart** - The writer speaks of remembering something as if it were keeping it within one’s heart. AT: “always remember them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 04 General Notes
- **Proverbs 04 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 4:22-23**UDB:**

²² For my words bring a message of life to those who pay attention to them,
and their message brings health to the entire body.

²³ Protect your heart with all your strength and guard what you love;
guard it, for it becomes a fountain overflowing with life.

ULB:

²² For my words are life to those who find them
and health to their whole body.

²³ Keep your heart safe and guard it with all diligence,
for from it flow the springs of life.

translationWords:

- word
- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- fountain, spring

translationNotes:

- **my words are life** - The writer speaks of his words preserving a person's life as if they were that person's life. AT: "my words give life" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **to those who find them** - The writer speaks of fully understanding his words as if the person searches for them and finds them. AT: "to those who understand and practice them" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **health to their whole body** - The word "their" refers to "those who find them." The subject for this phrase can be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: "my words will give health to the whole body of those who find them" (See: **Ellipsis**)
- **Keep your heart safe and guard it** - Here the word "heart" represents a person's mind and thoughts. AT: "Keep your mind safe and guard your thoughts" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **with all diligence** - with constant and earnest effort
- **from it flow the springs of life** - The word "it" refers to the heart, which is a metonym for the mind and thoughts. The writer speaks of a person's life as if it were a flowing spring that originates from the heart. AT: "from your thoughts comes everything you say and do" or "your thoughts determine your course of life" (See: **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Make it your aim to keep away from you any lying speech,
and put any deceptive talk far away.

²⁵ Look straight ahead because you are focused on what is good and right,
and do not turn aside neither to the right or the left.

ULB:

²⁴ Put crooked speech away from you
and put corrupt talk far from you.

²⁵ Let your eyes look straight ahead
and fix your gaze straight before you.

translationWords:

- [corrupt, corruption](#)

translationNotes:

- **Put crooked speech away from you and put corrupt talk far from you** - The writer speaks of lying or deceitful speech as if it were crooked and of a person not using this kind of language as if it were removing it far away from oneself. AT: “Do not lie and do not speak deceitfully” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Let your eyes look straight ahead and fix your gaze straight before you** - Here the word “eyes” represents the person who is looking. The writer speaks of a person being committed to doing the right thing as if that person were constantly looking forward without turning his head to look in another direction. AT: “Always look straight ahead and fix your gaze straight before you” (See [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 4:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Take care about where you will go, and take care to be sure that the way is safe;
 then you will know what to expect along the way.

²⁷ Do not leave the straight road by turning to the left or to the right,
 and do not follow the way that leads to evil.

ULB:

²⁶ Make a level path for your foot;
 then all your ways will be secure.

²⁷ Do not turn aside to the right or to the left;
 turn your foot away from evil.

translationWords:

- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Make a level path for your foot** - Here the word “foot” represents the person who is walking. The writer speaks of a person’s actions as if he were walking along a path, and of planning those actions carefully as if it were making that path level. AT: “Make a level path to walk on” or “Prepare well what you want to do” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **a level path** - “a smooth path” or “an even path”
- **then all your ways will be secure** - The writer speaks of a person’s actions as if the person were walking along a path and of those actions being successful as if the path were safe and secure. AT: “then everything that you do will be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Do not turn aside to the right or to the left** - The directions “right” and “left” form a merism, meaning that the person is not to leave the level path in any direction. AT: “Walk straight ahead and do not leave the level path” (See: [Merism](#))
- **turn your foot away from evil** - Here the word “foot” represents the person who walks. The writer speaks of not committing evil actions as if the person were walking away from evil. AT: “turn away from evil” or “stay away from evil” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 04 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 04 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 5 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

My Son

Occasionally, the author addresses a proverb to “my son.” This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males. Instead, it is simply a form used to pass on advice as a father does to his son.

Adulteress

This chapter is unusual because it holds a theme about the adulteress and warns the young man to avoid her. An adulteress is a woman who commits adultery. (See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 05:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 5:1-2**UDB:**

¹ My son, learn the lessons I teach you about wisdom.

I understand much about this, so listen very carefully to what I tell you.

² If you do that, you will learn the difference between what is important and what is not,

and you will not mix true knowledge with mistakes when you speak.

ULB:

⁵ ¹ My son, pay attention to my wisdom;

incline your ears to my understanding,

² so you may learn about discretion

and your lips may protect knowledge.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The writer speaks as a father teaching his children.
- **incline your ears** - Here the word “ears” represents the person who is listening. The writer speaks of listening attentively to someone as if it were leaning forward so that the ears are closer to the one speaking. See how you translated this in [4:20](#). AT: “listen attentively” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **discretion** - Discretion is the quality of being careful with regard to one’s actions and speech. See how you translated this in [1:4](#).
- **your lips may protect knowledge** - Here the word “lips” represents the person who speaks. The writer speaks of a person being careful only to say what is true as if the person’s lips were protecting knowledge. AT: “you will speak only what is true” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:3-4**UDB:**

³ The woman who desires to commit adultery speaks with words that are sweet,
 and her kisses are smoother than oil,
⁴ but in the end, she is so bitter you can taste it,
 and she cuts you like a sharp sword.

ULB:

³ For the lips of an adulteress drip with honey
 and her mouth is smoother than oil,
⁴ but in the end she is as bitter as wormwood,
 cutting like a sharp sword.

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- honey, honeycomb
- oil
- sword

translationNotes:

- **the lips of an adulteress drip with honey** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “lips” represents the words of the adulteress and the writer speaks of the attractiveness of her words as if her lips dripped with honey. AT: “the words of an adulteress are sweet, as if dripping with honey” or 2) the writer speaks of the allure of kissing the adulteress as if her lips dripped with honey. AT: “the kisses of an adulteress are sweet, as if her lips dripped with honey” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **her mouth is smoother than oil** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “mouth” represents the speech of the adulteress and the writer speaks of the persuasiveness of her speech as if her mouth were smoother than olive oil. AT: “her speech is persuasive and smoother than olive oil” or 2) the writer speaks of the pleasure of kissing the adulteress as if her mouth were smoother than oil. AT: “her kisses are smoother than olive oil” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **but in the end she is as bitter as wormwood** - The writer speaks of the harm that comes from having a relationship with an adulteress as if she tasted as bitter as wormwood. AT: “but in the end, she is like bitter-tasting wormwood and will cause you harm” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **wormwood** - a plant that tastes bitter
- **cutting like a sharp sword** - The writer speaks of the pain that the adulteress will cause to the one who has a relationship with her as if she were a sharp weapon that cuts the person. AT: “she wounds a person, as if she were a sharp sword” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ She walks down to the place of death;

if you follow her, she will lead you all the way to the grave.

⁶ She does not want to take the path that will let her live for a long time.

She goes here and there, but where she is going she does not know.

ULB:

⁵ Her feet go down to death;

her steps go all the way to Sheol.

⁶ She gives no thought to the path of life.

Her footsteps wander; she does not know where she is going.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- hades, sheol
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Her feet go down to death** - Here “her feet” represent the adulteress as she walks. The writer speaks of her conduct as if she were walking along a path. AT: “She is walking along a path that leads to death” or “Her lifestyle leads to death” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **her steps go all the way to Sheol** - The writer speaks of her conduct as if she were walking along a path. AT: “she walks all the way to Sheol” or “her conduct takes her all the way to Sheol” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She gives no thought to the path of life** - The writer speaks of behavior that gives a person long life as if it were a path that leads to life. AT: “She does not think about walking along the path that leads to life” or “She is not concerned about conduct that leads to life” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Her footsteps wander** - Possible meanings are 1) “She wanders about as if she were lost” or 2) “She walks along the wrong path.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ So now, my sons, pay attention to what I say,

and do not forget or disobey the instruction I am giving you.

⁸ Stay far away from the immoral woman;

do not go near the door of her house.

ULB:

⁷ Now, my sons, listen to me;

do not turn away from listening to the words of my mouth.

⁸ Keep your path far away from her

and do not come near the door of her house.

translationWords:

- turn, turn away, turn back
- word

translationNotes:

- **Now** - Here the teacher shifts from warning about the adulteress to giving advice.
- **listen to me ... do not turn away from listening** - These two phrases express the same idea to make the student pay attention. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **do not turn away from listening** - The writer speaks of stopping an action as if the person physically turned away from it. AT: “do not stop listening” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the words of my mouth** - Here the word “mouth” represents the person who is speaking. AT: “my words” or “what I am saying” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **Keep your path far away from her** - Here the word “path” represents the person’s daily conduct and circumstances. AT: “Keep yourself far away from her” or “Stay away from her” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **do not come near the door of her house** - Here “the door of her house” represents the house itself. It may be more appropriate to use the word “go” instead of “come” since the latter might imply that the speaker is at the door of her house. AT: “do not go near the door of her house” or “do not even go near her house” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Go and Come**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ If you go to her you will lose the respect of others,

and you give your life to someone who will not have mercy on you.

¹⁰ It may be that others will take all the wealth that you have earned,

and it goes into the houses of people you do not know.

ULB:

⁹ In that way you will not give away your honor to others

or years of your life to a cruel person;

¹⁰ strangers will not feast on your wealth;

what you have worked for will not go into the house of strangers.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- life, live, living, alive
- feast
- house

translationNotes:

- **In that way** - “If you do this.” This phrase refers to what he has just said in previous verses.
- **you will not give away your honor to others** - Possible meanings for the word “honor” are 1) it refers to one’s reputation. AT: “You will not lose your good reputation among other people” or 2) it refers to one’s wealth and possessions. AT: “You will not give away your wealth to other people” or 3) it refers to strength and represents the prime years of one’s life. AT: “You will not give away the best times of your life to other people”
- **or years of your life to a cruel person** - The writer speaks of a person dying prematurely, possibly by murder, as if the years of his life were items that he gives away to another person. The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: “or give years of your life to a cruel person” or “or cause a cruel person to kill you while you are still young” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **a cruel person** - This may refer to the husband of the adulteress, who will deal cruelly with the person who sleeps with her.

- **strangers will not feast on your wealth** - The writer speaks of people taking and enjoying another person's wealth as if they were feasting on the wealth. AT: "strangers will not take all of your wealth" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what you have worked for will not go into the house of strangers** - Here the word "house" represents the person's family. AT: "the things that you have obtained will not end up belonging to the families of strangers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ And when you are about to die,

you will groan because your flesh and your body are wasting away.

¹² Then you will say, "I hated it when I was punished for doing wrong;

I despised people when they told me how to live.

ULB:

¹¹ At the end of your life you will groan

when your flesh and your body waste away.

¹² You will say, "How I hated instruction

and my heart despised correction!

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- discipline, self-discipline
- heart

translationNotes:

- **your flesh and your body waste away** - The words "flesh" and "body" mean basically the same thing and represent the whole person. AT: "your body wastes away" or "you waste away" (See: [Doublet](#))
- **waste away** - "physically wear down" or "become weak and unhealthy"
- **I hated instruction ... my heart despised correction** - These two phrases express the same idea and emphasize how much this person disliked what the teacher had said. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **How I hated instruction** - The word "How" is an exclamation that emphasizes the strength of his hatred. The word "instruction" can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "I hated it so much when someone would instruct me" (See: [Exclamations](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **my heart despised correction** - Here the word "heart" represents the person and his emotions. The word "correction" can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "I despised people when they corrected me" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ I did not obey my teachers

and I paid no attention to those who taught me.

¹⁴ I was almost destroyed by bad things that happened to me;

and this was known to everyone who came together to worship Yahweh.”

ULB:

¹³ I would not obey my teachers

or incline my ear to my instructors.

¹⁴ I was almost completely ruined

in the midst of the assembly, among the gathering of the people.”

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [teacher, Teacher](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)

translationNotes:

- **incline my ear to my instructors** - Here the word “ear” represents the person who is listening. The writer speaks of listening attentively to someone as if it were leaning forward so that the ear is closer to the one speaking. See how you translated a similar phrase in [4:20](#). AT: “listen to those who instructed me” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **in the midst of the assembly, among the gathering of the people** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to the person’s community that has gathered together either 1) to worship God or 2) to judge him for his offense. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:15-17**UDB:**

- ¹⁵ Just as you drink water from your own cistern, be faithful to your own wife.
- ¹⁶ You would not waste your own water by pouring it into the street,
or let your water run into the public places.
- ¹⁷ Let both your water and your wife be for you alone to enjoy,
and not for others to share with you.

ULB:

- ¹⁵ Drink water from your own cistern
and drink running water from your own well.
- ¹⁶ Should your springs overflow everywhere
and your streams of water flow in the public squares?
- ¹⁷ Let them be for yourself alone
and not for strangers with you.

translationWords:

- well, cistern
- fountain, spring

translationNotes:

- **water from your own cistern ... running water from your own well** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The writer speaks of a man sleeping only with his wife as if he drank water only from his own cistern or well. (See **Parallelism** and **Metaphor**)
- **running water** - The writer speaks of fresh or flowing water as if the water were running. AT: “fresh water” or “flowing water” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Should your springs ... your streams of water flow in the public squares?** - The writer asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that his son should not do these things. AT: “Your springs should not ... your streams of water should not flow in the public squares.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Should your springs ... your streams of water flow in the public squares?** - Here the words “springs” and “streams of water” are likely euphemisms for male reproductive fluids. Possible meanings for these metaphorical phrases are 1) sleeping with women other than one’s wife is spoken of as if it were allowing one’s water to flow in the public streets or 2)

having children with women other than one's wife is spoken of as if it were allowing one's water to flow in the public streets. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **public squares** - Open areas in a city or town where two or more streets meet. A common place for people to meet each other and talk.
- **Let them be** - The word "them" refers to the "springs" and "streams of water" and what they stand for.
- **not for strangers with you** - "do not share them with strangers"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ May your fountain be blessed;

may you be happy with the woman you married when you were young.

¹⁹ She is as graceful as a loving deer and as graceful as a young doe.

Let her breasts always satisfy your longings,

so you are forever enraptured with her love.

ULB:

¹⁸ May your fountain be blessed

and may you rejoice in the wife of your youth,

¹⁹ for she is a loving deer and a graceful doe.

Let her breasts satisfy you at all times;

may you be continually intoxicated by her love.

translationWords:

- fountain, spring
- bless, blessed, blessing
- rejoice
- deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn
- love

translationNotes:

- **May your fountain be blessed** - The writer speaks of the son's wife as if she were a fountain. Here the word "blessed" refers to the sense of joy that the man has in his wife. AT: "May you always find joy with your wife" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the wife of your youth** - Possible meanings are 1) "the wife whom you married when you were young" or 2) "your young wife."
- **she is a loving deer and a graceful doe** - The writer speaks of the son's wife as if she were "a loving deer and a graceful doe." Here "deer" and "doe" mean a female deer. They were symbols of beauty both in their appearance and in their movements. AT: "she is as beautiful and graceful as a deer or a doe" or "she is as beautiful and graceful as a female deer" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **graceful** - This word does not mean "full of grace," but "beautiful while moving."

- **Let her breasts satisfy you** - Possible meanings are 1) the wife's breasts excite the husband's sexual desire and possibly represent the wife's entire body. AT: "Let her breasts satisfy your desires" or "Let her body satisfy your desires" or 2) this is a metaphor in which the writer speaks of the wife's breasts satisfying the husband's desires as they would satisfy the thirst of a hungry baby. AT: "Let her breasts fill you with delight as a mother's breasts fill her child with food" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **may you be continually intoxicated by her love** - Intense excitement and joy from the romantic love of one's wife is spoken of as if he was drunk from that love. This can be stated in active form. AT: "let her love control you as alcohol controls someone who is drunk" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by her love** - Possible meanings are 1) "by your love for her" or 2) "by her love for you."

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ My son, why should you be caught up in the arms of an adulteress?

Why should you caress the breasts of another man's wife?

²¹ Yahweh sees everything we do; nothing is hidden from him.

He sees every path we take; he knows everywhere we go.

ULB:

²⁰ For why should you, my son, be captivated by an adulteress;
why should you embrace the breasts of an immoral woman?

²¹ Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes.

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **For why should you, my son, be captivated by an adulteress; why should you embrace the breasts of an immoral woman?** - The writer asks these rhetorical questions to emphasize that his son must not do these things. AT: "My son, do not be captivated by an adulteress! Do not embrace the breasts of an immoral woman!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **be captivated by an adulteress** - Intense excitement that arises from the desire for a woman is spoken of as if he were being held captive by that woman. This can be stated in active form. AT: "allow an adulteress to captivate you" or "allow an adulteress to fascinate you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **why should you embrace the breasts of an immoral woman** - Here the word "breasts" represents the immoral woman and her sexual attractiveness. AT: "why should you embrace an immoral woman" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **an immoral woman** - Possible meanings are 1) "a woman who is not your wife" or 2) "a woman who is another man's wife."
- **sees everything ... watches all the paths** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God knows everything that everyone does. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **all the paths he takes** - The writer speaks of a person's actions or lifestyle as if it were a path on which the person walks. AT: "everywhere he goes" or "everything he does" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 5:22-23**UDB:**

²² An evil person's sinful desires take hold of him;

his sins are like a trap that catches him.

²³ An evil man will die because he could not say, "No" to his desires;

he gets lost because his foolishness has no limits.

ULB:

²² A wicked person will be seized by his own iniquities;

the cords of his sin will hold him tight.

²³ He will die because he lacks instruction;

he is led astray by his great foolishness.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- seize
- iniquity
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- death, die, dead
- discipline, self-discipline
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **A wicked person will be seized by his own iniquities** - The writer speaks of a wicked person being unable to avoid the consequences of his iniquities as if those iniquities were people who capture the wicked person. This can be stated in active form. AT: "A wicked person's own iniquities will seize him" or "A wicked person will be unable to avoid the consequences of his iniquities" (See: **Personification** and **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)
- **the cords of his sin will hold him tight** - The writer speaks of a wicked person being unable to avoid the consequences of his sin as if that sin were a trap made of cords in which the person is caught. AT: "because of his sin, he will be like an animal caught in a trap" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **he is led astray by his great foolishness** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "his great foolishness leads him astray" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **by his great foolishness** - "because he is very foolish"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 05 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 05 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 6 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

My Son

Occasionally, the author addresses a proverb to “my son.” This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males. Instead, it is simply a form used to pass on advice as a father does to his son.

Adulteress

The latter part of this chapter comes back to the theme about the adulteress and warns the young man to avoid her. An adulteress is a woman who commits adultery. (See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#))

Numbers

Occasionally, the author will mention a list of 6 things or 7 things, that Yahweh hates, these numbers are used to draw attention to the list of things. It is not important whether it is 6 or 7 in the list.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The author will use rhetorical questions to draw the reader’s attention to important points. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Animals Used as Types

The gazelle and the ant have certain characteristics which author uses to give wisdom. If your language does not recognize these characteristics in those animals you could add a footnote to explain or possibly substitute another animal from your culture that would help explain the same concept. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- **Proverbs 06:01 Notes**

Proverbs 6:1-2**UDB:**

¹ My son, if you provide a guarantee for a neighbor who takes out a loan,

or if you give the promise that you will pay for a loan of a person you do not know,

² you laid a trap for yourself by making the promise,

and you have been caught by agreeing to a contract for someone you did not know.

ULB:

⁶ ¹ My son, if you set aside your money as a guarantee for your neighbor's loan,

if you gave your promise for a loan of someone you do not know,

² then you have laid a trap for yourself by your promise

and you have been caught by the words of your mouth.

translationWords:

- neighbor
- promise
- word

translationNotes:

- **set aside your money** - Implied here is that your promise and the circumstances forced you to save up your money. AT: "had to save up some of your money" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **a guarantee for your neighbor's loan** - Possible meanings are 1) your neighbor may come to you to ask for a loan or 2) your neighbor wants to take out a loan from someone else, but you promise to pay the lender back if your neighbor cannot.
- **neighbor** - This same Hebrew word can also mean "friend."
- **you have laid a trap for yourself** - This is a figure of speech saying that you are going to trap yourself. AT: "you have made a trap in which you yourself are caught" (See: **Idiom**)
- **the words of your mouth** - "what you said" or "what you promised to do"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:3

UDB:

³ Do this, my son, and deliver yourself from this difficulty:

humbly go to your neighbor and beg him to cancel the agreement that you made.

ULB:

³ When you are caught by your words, my son, do this and save yourself, since you have fallen into the hand of your neighbor; go and humble yourself and make your case before your neighbor.

translationWords:

- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [beg, beggar](#)

translationNotes:

- **save yourself** - “protect yourself” or “help yourself out of these problems”
- **you have fallen into the hand of your neighbor** - This is a figure of speech using the term “hand” to mean “harm.” AT: “your neighbor can bring harm to you if he wants to” or “your neighbor has power over you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **neighbor** - “friend”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Do not sleep,

and do not rest until you go and talk with him.

⁵ Save yourself,

like a deer that escapes from the hunter;

or like a bird that flies away from the hand of one who hunts for birds.

ULB:

⁴ Give your eyes no sleep

and your eyelids no slumber.

⁵ Save yourself like a gazelle from the hand of the hunter,

like a bird from the hand of the fowler.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **Give your eyes no sleep and your eyelids no slumber** - “Do not let your eyes sleep; do not let your eyelids slumber.” These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how important it is not to be lazy. It is also stated negatively for even more emphasis. AT: “Stay awake, and do what you can” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Litotes](#))
- **your eyes ... your eyelids** - This is a figure of speech using parts of your face to mean your whole body. AT: “yourself ... yourself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Save yourself like a gazelle from the hand of the hunter** - “Escape from your neighbor like a gazelle that flees from a hunter”
- **gazelle** - This is a big, lean animal that eats grass and that people often hunt for meat. It is famous for running away quickly.
- **from the hand of the hunter** - The hand of the hunter refers to the hunter’s control. AT: “from the control of the hunter” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **like a bird from the hand of the fowler** - “and escape like a bird that flies away from a bird-hunter”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ You lazy person, learn something from watching the ants.

Become wise and watch what they do.

⁷ The ant has no commander, officer, or ruler telling him what to do,

⁸ but during the summer it works hard,

gathering and storing food to eat during the winter.

ULB:

⁶ Look at the ant, you lazy person,

consider her ways, and be wise.

⁷ It has no commander,

officer, or ruler,

⁸ yet it prepares its food in the summer

and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- commander, command
- ruler, rulers, rule
- harvest

translationNotes:

- **Look at ... consider** - “Study ... think about” or “carefully observe ... ponder”
- **ant** - An ant is a small insect that lives underground or in a self-built hill. They usually live in groups of thousands, and they can lift things that are much bigger than they are.
- **consider her ways** - This is a figure of speech using the “ways” of an ant to refer to the behavior of the ant. AT: “consider how the ant behaves” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **commander, officer, or ruler** - These three words mean basically the same thing and are used to emphasize that no one has formal authority over an individual ant. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **it prepares its food in the summer ... during the harvest it stores up what it will eat** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to show how responsible the ant is. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **summer** - Summer is the time of the year when some trees bear their fruit.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ But you lazy person, how long will you continue to sleep ?

When will you rise and go to work?

¹⁰ You sleep a for a little time, and then you say, "A little more sleep, a little more resting in bed,

a little more folding of the hands to take a nap."

¹¹ Suddenly poverty will take over your life like a thief who steals everything from you.

ULB:

⁹ How long will you sleep, you lazy person?

When will you rise from your sleep?

¹⁰ "A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest"—

¹¹ and your poverty will come like a robber
and your needs like an armed soldier.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **How long will you sleep ... When will you rise from your sleep?** - The teacher uses these questions to scold the lazy person for sleeping too much. AT: "Wake up, you lazy person! Get out of your bed!" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **A little sleep ... of the hands to rest** - These are the kinds of things that lazy people say.
- **A little sleep, a little slumber** - Both of these statements mean the same thing. They can be stated as complete sentences. AT: "I will just sleep a little longer. Let me sleep lightly a little longer." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **folding of the hands to rest** - People often fold their hands while reclining in order to rest more comfortably. AT: "I will just cross my arms comfortably and rest a little" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **and your poverty will come** - This can be stated as a new sentence to make clear that this is a result of being lazy. AT: "If you continue to be lazy, your poverty will come" or "While you sleep, poverty will come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge](#) and [Implicit Information](#))

- **your poverty will come like a robber** - The sudden way a lazy person becomes poor is like the sudden way a robber comes and steals things. AT: “you will suddenly become poor, just as if a robber came and stole everything you have” (See: [Simile](#))
- **and your needs like an armed soldier** - The sudden way a lazy person becomes in need of things is like the sudden way an armed soldier takes things from a person. This can be stated as a complete sentence. AT: “and your needs will come to you like an armed soldier” or “and you will become needy just as if an armed soldier stole all your things” (See: [Simile](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **an armed soldier** - “a soldier who is holding a weapon” or “a man with a weapon”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:12-13**UDB:**

¹² A worthless person—a person who does bad to others—he lives by the lies he speaks to others.

¹³ They tell tales by winking their eyes and they give signals by moving their feet, and they make plans by pointing with their fingers.

ULB:

¹² A worthless person—a wicked man—

lives by the crookedness of his speech,

¹³ winking his eyes, making signals with his feet
and pointing with his fingers.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **A worthless person—a wicked man** - These two words have the same meaning and emphasize how bad this person is. AT: “A person with no value—an evil man” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **lives by the crookedness of his speech** - “constantly tells lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **winking his eyes, making signals with his feet and pointing with his fingers** - All three of these phrases describe a way in which the evil person communicates secretly to deceive other people.
- **winking his eyes** - If someone winks, he closes one eye very briefly as a secret signal to another person. This might be a sign of trust, of approval, or of something else.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:14-15**UDB:**

- ¹⁴ The one who does bad things lays out plans within himself;
 he stirs up constant conflict wherever he goes.
¹⁵ His own disaster will overtake him in a second;
 he will be crushed to the point that he cannot be healed.

ULB:

- ¹⁴ He plots evil with deceit in his heart;
 he always stirs up discord.
¹⁵ Therefore his disaster will overtake him in an instant;
 in a moment he will be broken beyond healing.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **He plots evil** - “He plans evil” or “He prepares to do evil deeds”
- **he always stirs up discord** - “he always causes discord” or “he is constantly looking for conflict and escalating it”
- **Therefore** - “For that reason”
- **his disaster will overtake him** - This implies that the disaster is chasing him like a person or an animal, and that it will catch him soon. AT: “his disaster will catch him” (See: [Personification](#))
- **his disaster** - This refers to the disaster that will happen to him, but also the disaster that he himself caused.
- **in an instant; in a moment** - Both mean the same thing, and one or both of them can be replaced by “suddenly” or “very quickly”.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 06 General Notes
- **Proverbs 06 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 6:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ There are six, even seven, things that Yahweh hates.

ULB:

¹⁶ There are six things that Yahweh hates,
seven that are disgusting to him.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **six things that Yahweh hates, seven that** - This whole verse is a parallelism that emphasizes that God hates several things and not just one. AT: “six things that Yahwah hates; seven things that” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **that are disgusting to him** - “that make him feel disgust” or “that make you disgusting according to him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh hates the eyes of the proud, the tongue that tells lies,
 the hands that shed the blood of the innocent, ¹⁸ a heart that plots and makes
 plans to do evil things to others,
 ¹⁹ the witness who breathes out lies when he gives testi-
 mony,
 and the one who causes strife between members of the
 same family.

ULB:

¹⁷ The eyes of a proud person, a tongue that lies,
 hands that shed the blood of innocent people,
¹⁸ a heart that invents wicked schemes,
 feet that quickly run to do evil,
¹⁹ a witness who breathes out lies
 and one who sows discord among brothers.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- blood
- innocent
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- witness, eyewitness
- sow, sower, plant

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - This is the list of things that Yahweh hates that was introduced in 6:16.
- **eyes ... tongue ... hands ... heart ... feet** - All of these body parts refer to a whole person. You can translate each of these with “people.” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **shed the blood of** - “kill” or “murder”

- **wicked schemes** - “evil plans”
- **breathes out lies** - This figure of speech uses “breathes” to refer to lying constantly. AT: “constantly lies” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **discord** - Translate this as in [6:14](#).
- **one who sows discord** - This figure of speech is using “sows” to refer to causing or bringing about discord. AT: “a person who causes discord” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ My son, obey the command of your father,

and do not walk away from what your mother taught you.

²¹ Keep these lessons and tie them close inside as a part of yourself;

tie them around your neck, to remind you how important they are to you.

ULB:

²⁰ My son, obey the command of your father

and do not forsake the teaching of your mother.

²¹ Always bind them on your heart;

tie them about your neck.

translationWords:

- obey, obedient, obedience
- command, to command, commandment
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- heart

translationNotes:

- **obey the command of your father ... do not forsake the teaching of your mother** - These two phrases on the one hand mean the same thing. On the other hand, the repeated emphasis on both “father” and “mother” explicitly includes women in the whole teaching-learning process. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **do not forsake the teaching of your mother** - This figure of speech is using the negative “forsake” to mean the positive “obey”. AT: “obey the teaching of your mother” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **bind them on your heart; tie them about your neck** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They describe the commands and instructions as if they are written down so that you can put it in or on your body to remind yourself. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bind them on your heart** - “love them” or “think about them”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:22-23**UDB:**

²² When you walk, those lessons will guide you.

When you sleep, they will watch over you and protect you.

When you wake up in the morning, they will teach you.

²³ These commands are like a lamp for you, and what we teach you is like a light to guide you.

When people correct you, this is to continually teach you the right way to live.

ULB:

²² When you walk, they will guide you;

when you sleep, they will watch over you;

and when you wake up, they will teach you.

²³ For the commands are a lamp, and the teaching is a light;

the corrections that come by instruction are the way of life.

translationWords:

- **command, to command, commandment**
- **lamp**
- **light**
- **discipline, self-discipline**
- **life, live, living, alive**

translationNotes:

- **When you walk ... when you sleep ... when you wake up** - These three phrases are used together to emphasize that the lessons are valuable all the time. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **they will guide you ... they will watch over you ... they will teach you** - The repetition of these phrases is to show that the lessons are valuable for all sorts of things. It also speaks of those lessons as if they were people. (See: **Parallelism** and **Personification**)
- **the commands ... the teaching ... the corrections that come by instruction** - These three phrases mean basically the same thing, and together they show the various types of lessons a father and a mother teach. (See: **Parallelism**)

- **a lamp ... a light ... the way of life** - All three of these mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize the fact that the lessons make life better and easier. AT: “as useful as a lamp ... as helpful as light in the darkness ... as necessary to follow as the way of life” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Parallelism](#))
- **the way of life** - “the way that leads to life” or “the way of living that God approves of”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ These lessons keep you from the immoral woman,

they tell you about her enticing words and warn you to be on guard.

²⁵ Do not throw your desires after such a woman, nor should you desire her beauty;

do not let her capture you by the way she looks at you.

ULB:

²⁴ It keeps you from the immoral woman,

from the smooth words of an immoral woman.

²⁵ Do not lust in your heart after her beauty

and do not let her capture you with her eyelashes.

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- lust
- heart

translationNotes:

- **It keeps you from** - Here the word “it” refers to the lessons taught by the father and mother in [6:20](#). AT: “It saves you from” or “It protects you from” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **the immoral woman ... an immoral woman** - These two words mean basically the same thing. See how you translated the word “adulteress” in [5:3](#).
- **immoral** - “morally evil”
- **her beauty** - “what is beautiful about her” or “her” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **capture** - “gain control over”
- **her eyelashes** - The “eyelashes” stand for the beautiful things about her body that she uses to catch a man’s attention. AT: “her beautiful eyes” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:26-27**UDB:**

- ²⁶ Sleeping with a prostitute may cost you only the price of a loaf of bread,
 but if you sleep with another man's wife, it may cost you your life.
- ²⁷ Can you carry hot coals in your pockets and not be burned?

ULB:

- ²⁶ Sleeping with a prostitute can cost the price of a loaf of bread,
 but the wife of another may cost you your very life.
- ²⁷ Can a man carry a fire against his chest
 without burning his clothes?

translationWords:

- prostitute, harlot, whore
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **the price of a loaf of bread** - This is talking about the material cost, not the spiritual cost or the moral cost. AT: "a little bit"
- **may cost you your very life** - Possible meanings are 1) the wife of another man will destroy your life because she always wants more or 2) the husband of the other woman will hunt you down and kill you.
- **Can a man carry a fire against his chest without burning his clothes?** - This action would be very dangerous and would cause harm. The implied answer to the question is "no". AT: "Every man who carries a fire in his chest will burn his clothes." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **without burning** - "without destroying" or "and not destroy"
- **his clothes** - His clothes stand for him as a whole person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ Can you walk on burning coals and not scorch your feet?

²⁹ So is anyone who sleeps with another man's wife: he will suffer for doing that.

It is certain he will be severely punished.

ULB:

²⁸ Can a man walk on hot coals

without scorching his feet?

²⁹ So is the man who sleeps with his neighbor's wife;
the one who sleeps with her will not go unpunished.

translationWords:

- [neighbor](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?** - Walking on hot coals will scorch a person's feet, so the implied answer is "no." AT: "Every man who walks on hot coals will have scorched feet." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **walk on hot coals** - This stands for committing adultery. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **walk** - That is to slowly walk a long distance, without using tricks or magic.
- **scorching** - "burning"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ We do not despise a thief if he steals some food because he is very hungry.

³¹ But if he steals something and then is caught by others,
he will have to pay back seven times as much as he stole,
even if he must sell everything that is in his house to get enough money to
repay what he stole.

ULB:

³⁰ People do not despise a thief if he steals
to satisfy his need when he is hungry.

³¹ Yet if he is caught, he will pay back seven times what he stole;
he must give up everything of value in his house.

translationWords:

- [thief, thieves, robber](#)

translationNotes:

- **despise a thief** - “do not regard a thief with contempt” or “do not think a thief is evil”
- **if he is caught** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “if someone catches him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in his house** - This figure of speech is saying that everything in his house is all that he owns. AT: “that he owns” ([Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:32-33**UDB:**

³² But a man who commits adultery is has no good judgment
because he is destroying his own self.

³³ Wounds and shame will come to him;
he will never forget how others disgraced him for his deed.

ULB:

³² The one who commits adultery has no sense;
the one who does it destroys himself.

³³ Wounds and shame are what he deserves
and his disgrace will not be wiped away.

translationWords:

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **The one** - “The person” or “The man”
- **what he deserves** - “the appropriate punishment for what he has done”
- **his disgrace** - This figure of speech is using the term “disgrace” to refer to the feeling of him acting shamefully. AT: “the memory of his shameful act” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will not be wiped away** - This figure of speech is using the negative “will not be wiped away” to refer to it always being there. AT: “will always remain” (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 6:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ Because that woman's husband will be jealous, he will become furious,

and when he gets revenge, he will not act mercifully toward that man.

³⁵ And he will not accept any bribe to stop him.

ULB:

³⁴ For jealousy makes a man furious;

he will show no mercy when he takes his revenge.

³⁵ He will accept no compensation

and he cannot be bought off, though you offer him many gifts.

translationWords:

- jealous, jealousy
- mercy, merciful
- gift

translationNotes:

- **furious** - "very angry"
- **he will show no mercy** - The "he" is the neighbor whose wife has committed adultery with another man. AT: "he will not limit the pain he will cause you" or "he will hurt you as much as he can" (See: [Litotes](#))
- **when he takes his revenge** - "in the moment of his revenge" or "when the moment arrives when he can take his revenge"
- **takes his revenge** - If a person takes revenge, it is to cause hurt to the person who hurt him first.
- **compensation** - "payment"
- **he cannot be bought off** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "you cannot pay him enough money to change his mind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **off, though** - "off. This will be true even if"
- **offer** - "give" or "promise"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 06 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 06 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 3 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine.

Special concepts in this chapter

Parallelism

Proverbs are often written without any surrounding context and in two lines of text. Each line will have a certain relationship to the other line. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Many of the proverbs are stated as promises or commands but they are intended to be advice.

My Son

Occasionally the author addresses a proverb to “my son”. This is not intended to restrict the words of that proverb to only males but is still given in the context of a father warning his son.

Adulteress

This chapter continues the theme about the adulteress and warns the young man to avoid her.

Links:

- [Proverbs 07:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 7:1-3**UDB:**

¹ My son, obey the words I say to you;

remember all my orders.

² If you obey my commands, you will live.

Consider my commands to be the most precious thing you possess, and obey them.

³ Write down my commands and tie them to your fingers to remind yourself of them;

let it be as if you had written them in your inner self.

ULB:

⁷ ¹ My son, keep my words
and store up my commands within yourself.

² Keep my commands and live
and keep my instruction as the apple of your eye.

³ Tie them on your fingers;
write them on the tablet of your heart.

translationWords:

- word
- command, to command, commandment
- life, live, living, alive
- heart

translationNotes:

- **keep my words** - Here keeping represents obeying. AT: “obey my words” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **store up my commands within yourself** - Here God’s commands are spoken of as if they were objects that someone could put into a storeroom. AT: “memorize my commands” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **keep my instruction** - Here keeping represents obeying. AT: “obey my instructions” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **as the apple of your eye** - The apple of the eye is the pupil inside the eye, which people normally instinctively protect when an object flies at their face. Here “the apple of the eye” represents whatever a person values and protects the most. AT: “as your most valuable possession” (See: [Idiom](#)).
- **Tie them on your fingers** - Possible meanings are 1) that the writer wanted his son to engrave certain commands from God on a ring and wear it, or 2) that the writer wanted his son to always remember God’s commands, as if he always wore a certain ring. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **write them on the tablet of your heart** - Here the heart represents a person’s mind, and remembering something well is spoken of as if the person were writing it on a stone tablet. See how you translated this in [3:3](#). AT: “remember my commands well as if you were writing them in stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Think of wisdom as if it were a woman, one of your own sisters, whom you love;

think of understanding as if it were a person, one of your own family, to whom you are loyal.

⁵ If you do this, you will be able to stay away from women whom you must not be with,

random women who say nice things to you so that you will sin with them.

ULB:

⁴ Say to wisdom, "You are my sister,"

and call understanding your kinsman,

⁵ in order to keep yourself from the adulterous woman,

from the immoral woman with her smooth words.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- word

translationNotes:

- **Say to wisdom, "You are my sister** - Here wisdom is spoken of as if it were a person. AT: "Value wisdom as you would love your sister" (See: **Personification**)
- **call understanding your kinsman** - Here the quality of understanding is spoken of as if it were a kinsman or relative. AT: "treat understanding as you would treat your kinsman" (See: **Personification**)
- **kinsman** - "relative" or "family member"
- **the adulterous woman** - This refers to any woman to whom a man is not married. AT: "the woman whom you should have nothing to do with"
- **the immoral woman** - This refers to any woman who is not known to a man.
- **with her smooth words** - Words intended to deceive are spoken of as if they were smooth objects. AT: "who says pleasant things, but wants to deceive you"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Standing in my house, I looked out of a window,
through the wooden shade,
⁷ and I saw some young men who had not yet learned how to live wisely.
I especially saw a young man there who had no good judgment.

ULB:

⁶ At the window of my house
I was looking out through the lattice.
⁷ I looked at the naive people,
and I noticed among the young men
a youth who had no sense.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **lattice** - a covering over a window made of thin strips of wood that cross one another in a slanted pattern that forms square-shaped openings in the pattern
- **naive** - “inexperienced” or “immature”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ He walked down the street near the house on the corner of the road,
and he walked toward the house of the adultress.

⁹ It was the time of day when night and darkness were coming near.

ULB:

⁸ That young man passed down the street near her corner,
and he went toward her house.

⁹ It was twilight, in the evening of the day,
at the time of night and darkness.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **her corner** - Here “her” refers to any female stranger, as referred to in [07:05](#). She was standing at a certain corner, waiting for a suitable man to pass by. AT: “the corner where a female stranger was standing”
- **corner** - This refers to where two roads meet.
- **twilight** - the time of day when it is getting darker and about to become night

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ That was where the woman who was seeking an affair met the young man, and she greeted him.

She was dressed as prostitutes dress, with seductive and enticing clothes, and she had secret plans.

¹¹ She was loud and wayward, attracting attention.

She did not stay in her own home.

¹² She searched for a man as she walked along the streets one day; on another day she stood in the market place to find a man.

At any street corner she waited for someone who would commit sin with her.

ULB:

¹⁰ There a woman met him,
dressed like a prostitute, with a false heart.

¹¹ She was loud and wayward;
her feet did not stay at home.

¹² Now in the streets, then in the market place,
and at every corner she waited in ambush.

translationWords:

- prostitute, harlot, whore

translationNotes:

- **with a false heart** - Here “heart” represents intentions or plans. AT: “she planned to deceive someone” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **She was loud and wayward** - “She talked loudly and acted in the ways she wished to”
- **her feet did not stay at home** - The phrase “her feet” represent the woman. AT: “she did not stay at home” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **she waited in ambush** - Here the woman is spoken of as if she were preparing to physically trap a person or an animal. Also, the idea of trapping someone here represents persuading someone to commit sin. AT: “she waited to trap someone” or “she waited to find someone she could persuade to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ When she saw the young man, she firmly took hold of him, and then she kissed him.

Without any shame and with great boldness, she said,

¹⁴ "Today I have meat in my house, because I made a sacrifice in the temple to promise friendship with Yahweh.

In this way I kept my vows to Yahweh,

¹⁵ and now I have come out here to meet you.

I was looking for you, and now I have found you!

ULB:

¹³ So she grabbed him and kissed him,

with a strong face she said to him,

¹⁴ "I made my peace offering today,

I paid my vows,

¹⁵ so came I out to meet you,

to eagerly seek your face, and I have found you.

translationWords:

- kiss
- peace offering
- vow

translationNotes:

- **she** - "She" refers to the woman that was introduced in [7:10](#).
- **grabbed him** - "took hold of him firmly"
- **with a strong face** - Here "strong" represents "stubborn." A "strong face" means a stubborn expression on a person's face. This implies that the woman is acting in a stubborn way, that she is deliberately doing what she knows is wrong. AT: "with a shameless expression on her face" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **I paid my vows** - Here "vows" represents what the person promised to sacrifice to God. AT: "I made the sacrifices I promised to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **seek your face** - Here "face" represents the person and especially the person's presence. AT: "look for you" or "find out where you are" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ I have put on my bed sheets—the finest colored linen fabrics from Egypt.

¹⁷ I have sprinkled perfumes on my bed—
myrrh, aloes, and cinnamon.

¹⁸ Come! Let us make love all night, until the morning comes.
Let us enjoy ourselves with many ways of making love, as much as
we want.

ULB:

¹⁶ I have spread coverings on my bed,
colored linens from Egypt.

¹⁷ I have sprinkled my bed
with myrrh, aloes, and cinnamon.

¹⁸ Come, let us drink our fill of love until morning;
let us take great pleasure in acts of love.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

translationNotes:

- **sprinkled my bed with** - “scattered on my bed”
- **aloes** - A type of wood from a tree that smells good.
- **cinnamon** - This is a spice made from the bark of a tree that smells and tastes good.
- **let us drink our fill of love** - Here the pleasures of romantic love are spoken of as if they were something good to drink. AT: “let us make love to each other as much as we want” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ My husband is not at home;

he has gone away on a long journey.

²⁰ He filled a bag with money and took it with him;

he will not come back until the middle of the month.”

²¹ So she she convinced the young man with her persuasive words;

because of her smooth and convincing talk, he gave in to what she wanted to do.

ULB:

¹⁹ For my husband is not at his house;

he has gone on a long journey.

²⁰ He took a bag of money with him;

he will return on the day of the full moon.”

²¹ With much talk she turned him;

with her smooth lips she misled him.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **is not at his house** - “is not at home”
- **full moon** - The moon is said to be full when it is a perfectly round disk, shining at its brightest.
- **she turned him** - To persuade someone to act in a certain way is spoken of as if it were changing the direction that person was walking. AT: “she persuaded him” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **her ... she ... him** - The female is the married woman who wants to sleep with “him,” the young man.
- **smooth lips** - Here “lips” represents what a person says. When a person flatters someone else by saying things that are not sincere, these words are spoken of as if they were a smooth object. AT: “flattering, deceiving words” (See: **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)
- **she misled him** - “she persuaded him to do something evil” AT: “she convinced him to sin with her”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:22-23**UDB:**

²² He suddenly decided to follow her inside.

He followed her like an ox going to the place where its owner will slaughter it,

or like a deer

²³ caught in a trap, where the hunter kills it by shooting an arrow into its inner parts.

He was like a bird that flies into a trap

without knowing that it will die there.

ULB:

²² He went after her suddenly

like an ox going to slaughter,

like a deer caught in a trap,

²³ until an arrow pierces through its liver.

He was like a bird rushing into a snare.

He did not know that it would cost his life.

translationWords:

- ox, oxen
- slaughter
- bow and arrow
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **He went after her suddenly** - This seems to imply that the young man took very little time to think about what he should do. AT: "He quickly decided to go after her" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **like an ox going ... into a snare** - The naive and unsuspecting way the young man follows the adulteress is compared to the way three animals are unaware of the danger they are in. (See: **Simile**)
- **slaughter** - This refers to killing an animal in order to eat its meat.

- **deer** - Translate this animal as in [5:19](#).
- **until an arrow pierces through its liver** - This passage implies that a hunter has trapped the deer in order to shoot it with arrows. AT: “until a hunter shoots it in its most important part” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **liver** - Here this organ represents a very important part of the deer’s body.
- **it would cost his life** - This is a way of saying that this person will die as a result. AT: “it would kill him” or “he would die soon” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ My sons, listen to me,

and pay careful attention to what I say to you.

²⁵ You must resist her from within you, from deep inside. Do not decide to do what you want and follow her.

You must decide that you will never follow her where she goes.

ULB:

²⁴ Now, my sons, listen to me;

pay attention to the words of my mouth.

²⁵ May your heart not turn aside onto her paths;

do not be led astray onto her paths.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [astray, go astray, led astray, stray](#)

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This is to focus the attention of the speaker's sons on the conclusion of this lesson.
- **May your heart not turn aside onto her paths** - Here "ways" means the paths that a person chooses to walk on. It represents the person's behavior, the things that he decides to do in life. AT: "Make your heart stay far away from the ways of the adulterous woman" or "Do not let your heart want to do the things that the adulterous woman does" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your heart** - Here "heart" represents what a person desires. AT: "you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **do not be led astray onto her paths** - This means the same as the sentence before it. It strengthens the first warning. AT: "do not leave the right path in order to go on her paths" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 7:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ She has caused many men to be ruined;

truly, no one can count the men she destroyed—they are too many to count.

²⁷ The road to her house is the road to the grave;

it goes down to the place where the dead are kept.

ULB:

²⁶ She has caused many people to fall down pierced;

her dead victims are very many.

²⁷ Her house is on the paths to Sheol;

they go down to the dark bedrooms of death.

translationWords:

- [hades, sheol](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **She has caused many people to fall down pierced** - Being pierced by spears or arrows represents being killed. AT: “She has caused many people to fall dead” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Her house is on the paths to Sheol ... they go down** - Here “paths” represents the kinds of behavior that foolish people participate in. Sheol was the name for the world of the dead.
- **on the paths to Sheol ... down to the dark bedrooms of death** - These two phrases basically mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize that the woman’s victims will be destroyed. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **the dark bedrooms of death** - This expression pictures the dead as sleeping in many different rooms in Sheol. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 07 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 07 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 8 continues a collection of proverbs that ends in chapter nine. These chapters operate more as a unit than many of the following chapters in this book.

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom Calls Out

The addressee of this chapter is broader than “My Son” but is personal like the previous chapters’ use of “My son”. In this case, Wisdom is calling out for all to come and learn of her, in contrast to the adulteress mentioned in chapters 5-7. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 08:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 8:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Listen to Wisdom calling; her voice sounds like that of a woman who shouting in the public square.

Understanding raises her voice; she sounds like a woman who calls out to be heard.

² On the top of the hills and where the roads come together, there Wisdom stands.

³ Wisdom also stands at the gates at the entrance to the city, and she calls out with a loud voice. Wisdom says:

ULB:

8 ¹ Does not Wisdom call out?

Does not Understanding raise her voice?

² On the hilltops beside the road, at the crossroads, Wisdom has taken her stand.

³ Before the gates at the entrance into the city, at the entrances into the city, she calls out.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - In chapter 8 wisdom is spoken of as a woman who teaches people how to be wise. (See: **Personification**)
- **General Information:** - Many verses in chapter 8 have parallelisms. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **Does not Wisdom call out?** - This question is used to remind the readers of something they should already know. AT: “Wisdom calls out” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **Does not Wisdom call out?** - Here wisdom is imagined as a woman. If a language does not allow this kind of metaphor, other possible translations are: 1) “Is not wisdom like a woman who calls out?” 2) “Does not a woman named Wisdom call out?” (See: **Personification**)

- **Does not Understanding raise her voice?** - Here “Understanding” means the same as “Wisdom.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the gates at the entrance into the city** - In ancient times, cities usually had outer walls with gates in them.
- **she calls out** - This continues to refer to Wisdom, personified as a woman. (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ "I am calling out to everyone;

I am shouting to all people!

⁵ You people who have no training, you must be taught how to live;
you must learn so that you can understand completely.

ULB:

⁴ "It is to you, people, that I call;
my voice is for the sons of mankind.

⁵ You who are naive, learn wisdom;
and you who are foolish, you must get an understanding mind.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Wisdom speaks to the people in verses 4-36.
- **my voice is for the sons of mankind** - Here "voice" represents the words that are spoken. AT: "my words are for the sons of mankind" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the sons of mankind** - This is metonymy representing all human beings. AT: "all people" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **naive** - "inexperienced, immature"
- **learn wisdom** - The abstract word "wisdom" refers to what a wise person believes and to the way in which he acts. AT: "learn how a wise person acts" or "learn what it means to be wise" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **you must get an understanding mind** - To understand things is spoken of as if it were obtaining a mind that could understand. AT: "you must begin to understand things with your mind" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Listen to me, because I will explain to you some excellent things.

I can teach you about what is right—

⁷ for I speak what is true;

I detest evil things so much, I hate to even speak about them.

ULB:

⁶ Listen, because I will speak of noble things,
and when my lips open I will say upright things.

⁷ For my mouth speaks what is trustworthy,
and wickedness is disgusting to my lips.

translationWords:

- noble, nobleman
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **when my lips open** - Here “lips” represents a person’s mouth, which which he speaks. AT: “when I open my mouth to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **upright** - “proper” or “just”
- **my mouth speaks** - Here “mouth” represents a person who speaks. AT: “I speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **what is trustworthy** - “what people should believe”
- **wickedness is disgusting to my lips** - Here “lips” represents a person who is speaking. AT: “wickedness is disgusting to me” or “saying wicked things would be disgusting to me” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **wickedness** - Here the abstract noun “wickedness” represents wicked speech. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 08 General Notes
- **Proverbs 08 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 8:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Everything that I say is right;

I do not say anything that changes the meaning of what is good or that leads people away from it.

⁹ My words give good advice to the one who understands the meaning of what I say;

those who have learned to tell good from evil will easily know that my words are right.

ULB:

⁸ All the words of my mouth are just;

in them is nothing twisted or misleading.

⁹ All of them are straight for the person who understands;

my words are upright for those who find knowledge.

translationWords:

- word
- just, justice, justly
- know, knowledge, make known
- upright, uprightness

translationNotes:

- **the words of my mouth** - Here “words” represent a message or teaching. Also, “mouth” stands for the person who is speaking. AT: “The things I teach” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **twisted** - “false”
- **straight** - “honest and clear”
- **my words are upright for those who find knowledge** - This probably means that those who find knowledge will easily understand that the speaker’s words are upright. Here “words” represent a message or teaching. AT: “those who know what is right and what is wrong consider what I teach to be right” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **upright** - “honest”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Choose what I teach you,

instead of trying to get much silver;

and choose the knowledge I will show you, for it is more valuable than gold.

¹¹ For I, Wisdom, am more precious than jewels;

nothing is as valuable for you as I am.

ULB:

¹⁰ Acquire my instruction rather than silver;

acquire knowledge rather than pure gold.

¹¹ For Wisdom is better than jewels;

no treasure is equal to her.

translationWords:

- [instruct, instruction](#)
- [silver](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **Acquire my instruction rather than silver** - “You should try much harder to understand my instructions than to get silver”
- **For Wisdom is better than jewels; no treasure is equal to her** - Here Wisdom, personified as a woman, is not speaking. However, it is possible to make Wisdom the speaker here as well. AT: “For I, Wisdom, am better than jewels; no treasure is equal to me” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:12-13**UDB:**

¹² I, Wisdom, live with Common Sense; we are like two people living in the same house.

I know many things, and I act carefully.

¹³ Everyone who honors Yahweh hates what is evil.

I am Wisdom, and I hate it when people are proud, when they think they are more important than others.

I hate it when people act in evil ways, and when they tell lies.

ULB:

¹² I, Wisdom, live with Prudence,
and I possess knowledge and discretion.

¹³ The fear of Yahweh is to hate evil.

I hate pride and arrogance, the evil way,
and perverted speech. I hate them.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- possess, possession
- know, knowledge, make known
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- proud, pride, prideful
- arrogant

translationNotes:

- **I, Wisdom, live with Prudence** - Prudence is also represented here as a person. (See: **Personification**)
- **Prudence** - “caution” or “good judgment”
- **I possess knowledge and discretion** - The abstract ideas “knowledge” and “discrete” can be expressed in other ways. AT: “I am knowledgeable and discreet” or “I know many things, and I am careful” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

- **discretion** - being careful about what we say and do; being cautious not to cause hurt or harm to others
- **perverted speech** - “wicked talk”
- **perverted** - turned from what is right

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ I give good advice and I have the best wisdom;

I have true understanding about the nature of things, and I have great strength.

¹⁵ When kings are wise, they rule well;

and when rulers are wise, they make laws that are just.

¹⁶ By me, Wisdom, rulers govern their people;

by me those who have authority guide their people with justice.

ULB:

¹⁴ I have good advice and sound wisdom;

I am insight; strength belongs to me.

¹⁵ By me kings reign—

also noblemen, and all who govern justly.

¹⁶ By me princes rule,

nobles, and all who govern with justice.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- king
- reign
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- just, justice, justly
- prince, princess
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **good advice** - “wise suggestions”
- **advice** - counsel that is given to help someone
- **sound** - good, reliable
- **I am insight** - Here Wisdom is spoken of as if she were insight. AT: “I have insight” (See: **Personification**)
- **nobles** - noblemen, leading members of important families in the nation

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ I am Wisdom, and I love all who love me;

those who work hard to find me will find me.

¹⁸ These people will have lasting riches, and they will live right,

because I have riches and honor with me.

ULB:

¹⁷ I love those who love me,

and those who diligently seek me, find me.

¹⁸ With me are riches and honor,

lasting wealth and righteousness.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)

translationNotes:

- **love** - This refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member. This is natural human love between friends or relatives.
- **diligently** - with careful and continued effort
- **With me are riches and honor** - “I have riches and honor”
- **lasting wealth and righteousness** - This explains what is meant by “riches and honor.” This can be made clear with the connecting statement “therefore.” AT: “therefore, I will give lasting wealth and righteousness to those who find me” (See: [Connecting Words](#))
- **righteousness** - “the ability to live in a right way”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ What I can give people is more valuable than fine gold and the best silver.

²⁰ I always do what is right and just.

²¹ I give wealth to those who love me,
and I fill up their treasuries.

ULB:

¹⁹ My fruit is better than gold, even fine gold;
my produce is better than pure silver.

²⁰ I walk in the path of righteousness,
in the midst of the paths of justice.

²¹ As a result, I make those who love me inherit wealth;
I fill up their treasuries.

translationWords:

- fruit, fruitful
- gold
- pure, purify, purification
- silver
- just, justice, justly
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- love

translationNotes:

- **My fruit** - what wisdom produces or causes
- **my produce** - the benefit or gain that wisdom causes
- **I walk in the path of righteousness** - Living the right way is spoken of as walking on the right road. AT: “I live right” or “I do what is right” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **in the midst of the paths of justice** - This tells more of what is meant by “the path of righteousness.” AT: “I do what is perfectly just” or “I only do what is just” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **treasuries** - storehouses for valuable things. Wisdom is spoken of as a woman who fills the storehouses of her followers with valuable things. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:22-23**UDB:**

²² Yahweh created me, Wisdom; he made me when he began to create the world;

I was the first thing he created in the beginning.

²³ He made me long ago—at the very first, at the beginning of the earth.

ULB:

²² Yahweh created me at the beginning,

the first of his deeds then.

²³ In ages long ago I was made—from the first,

from the beginnings of the earth.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)
- [age](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **the first of his deeds then** - “I was the first of the things he created then”
- **In ages long ago** - “Very long ago”
- **ages** - The word “age” refers to a general, extended period of time.
- **I was made** - This can be put into active form. AT: “God made me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from the beginnings of the earth** - The idea of beginnings can be translated in a less abstract way. AT: “from when God created the earth” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ I was born before the oceans were created,

when there were no springs from which water flowed.

²⁵ I was born before the hills and mountains were set in place.

ULB:

²⁴ Before there were oceans, I was given birth—

before there were springs abounding with water.

²⁵ Before the mountains were settled

and before the hills, I was born.

translationWords:

- fountain, spring
- water, waters

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Wisdom continues to speak. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Before the mountains were settled** - “Before the bases of the mountains were put into place.” This can also be put into active form. AT: “Before God made the foundations of the mountains and put them into their proper places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ I am Wisdom and I was born before Yahweh made the earth,

before he made the tiny particles of dust in the earth, I was there.

²⁷ I was there when Yahweh put the heavens where they are,

on the day when he marked on the ocean's surface how far a person at sea can see in every direction.

ULB:

²⁶ I was born before Yahweh had made the earth or the fields,
or even the first dust in the world.

²⁷ I was there when he established the heavens,
when he drew a circle on the surface of the deep.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)

translationNotes:

- **I was born ... I was there** - This is wisdom speaking about herself. (See: [Personification](#))
- **was born** - "I was alive"
- **established** - To establish something is to bring into being on a stable basis. AT: "created" or "made"
- **when he drew a circle on the surface of the deep** - This refers to setting a limit to how far someone in a ship at sea can see all around himself. AT: "when he marked on the ocean's surface how far a person at sea can see in every direction" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the deep** - "the ocean"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ I was there when Yahweh put the clouds above the earth,
 and when he made the springs at the bottom of the sea to give water
 to the oceans.

²⁹ I was there when he fixed a boundary for the seas,
 so that the water in the seas would not go past those boundaries,
 and when he marked out the limits of the dry land.

ULB:

²⁸ I was there when he established the clouds above and
 when the springs in the deep became fixed.

²⁹ I was there when he made his limit for the sea,
 so the waters should not spread beyond his command,
 and when there was set the limit for the foundations of the dry land.

translationWords:

- fountain, spring
- water, waters
- command, to command, commandment
- foundation, founded
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Wisdom continues to speak. (See: **Personification**)
- **established** - brought into permanent being
- **when the springs in the deep became fixed** - This can be put into active form. AT: “when God fixed the springs in the deep” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **the springs in the deep** - The ancient Hebrews thought that the ocean got its water from springs at the bottom of the sea.
- **when he made his limit for the sea** - “when he created the shorelines for the oceans. The ”limit for the sea” divided the oceans from the dry land.

- **when there was set the limit for the foundations of the dry land** - The Hebrew word for “earth” also often means “land.”
- **when there was set the limit for the foundations of the dry land** - This can be put into active form. AT: “when God set the limit for the foundations of the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ I was at Yahweh's side as his master craftsman;

I made him happy every day, and I always rejoiced when I was with him.

³¹ I was delighted with the whole world he created;

I was happy with the people he brought into existence, too.

ULB:

³⁰ I was beside him, as a skilled craftsman;

I was his delight day after day,

always rejoicing before him.

³¹ I was rejoicing in his whole world,

and my delight was in the sons of mankind.

translationWords:

- [delight](#)
- [rejoice](#)

translationNotes:

- **I was beside him** - This is still wisdom speaking. Wisdom now says she was right next to Yahweh, implying that she was his assistant in creating the world. (See: [Personification](#))
- **skilled craftsman** - This is a person who has trained for years to make useful things very well, like furniture or houses.
- **delight** - “source of joy” or “reason to be glad”
- **day after day** - This is a way to express the idea of a habitual action or of a continuous condition. AT: “continually” or “the whole time” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **his whole world** - “the whole world he created” (UDB) or “everything he created”
- **the sons of mankind** - This refers to human beings in general. AT: “the people he brought into existence” (UDB) (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:32-34**UDB:**

³² So, you who are my children, listen to me.

How fortunate are those who live as I live.

³³ Listen to what I teach you and you will become wise.

Do not reject what I have taught you.

³⁴ How fortunate are those who listen to me,
those who wait for me outside my house every day.

ULB:

³² Now, my sons, listen to me,
for those who keep my ways will be blessed.

³³ Listen to my instruction and be wise;
do not neglect it.

³⁴ The one who listens to me will be blessed.
He will be watching every day at my doors,
waiting beside the posts of my doors.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **Now** - This is to focus the attention of the children to the conclusion of this lesson.
- **listen to me** - This is still wisdom talking about herself. (See: **Personification**)
- **those who keep my ways** - Here “my ways” represents wisdom’s behavior. AT: “those who do what I teach” or “the people who follow my example” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **do not neglect** - “do not disregard” AT: “be sure to pay attention to” or “be sure to follow” (See: **Litotes**)
- **watching every day at my doors, waiting beside the posts of my doors** - These two phrases basically mean the same thing. Wisdom is described as having a home; possible meanings of “watching” are 1) a wise person waits outside wisdom’s home in the morning in order to serve her, or 2) a wise person waits outside wisdom’s house for her to come and teach him. (See: **Parallelism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 8:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ Those who find me will find life,

and Yahweh will be pleased with them.

³⁶ But those who do not find me, they hurt themselves.

All those who hate me love death.”

ULB:

³⁵ For whoever finds me, finds life,

and he will find the favor of Yahweh.

³⁶ But he who fails, harms his own life;

all who hate me love death.”

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [love](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **finds me ... find me ... hate me** - This is still wisdom talking about herself. (See: [Personification](#))
- **he who fails** - The complete thought is, “he who fails to find me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **his own life** - Here “life” represents the person’s self. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 08 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 08 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 9 concludes a collection of proverbs that operate as a unit about wisdom. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom Calls Out

The addressee of chapters 8 and 9 is broader than “My son” but is personal like the previous chapters’ use of “My son”. In this case, Wisdom is calling out for all to come and learn of her.

Links:

- [Proverbs 09:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 9:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Wisdom builds her own house, just like a woman who has built her home;

she made seven pillars to support the roof of her house.

² She prepared a meal and set her table;

she prepared the animals and cooked them to serve for the dinner,

and she made the wine ready for her guests.

ULB:

⁹ ¹ Wisdom has built her own house;

she has carved seven pillars out of rocks.

² She has slaughtered her animals; she has mixed her wine;

and she has set her table.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- pillar, column
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses begin a parable in which wisdom is imagined to be a woman who is giving good advice to people. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Wisdom has built** - The writer speaks about wisdom as if it were a woman who has built her own house. (See: [Personification](#))
- **She has slaughtered her animals** - This refers to animals whose meat will be eaten in the dinner that Wisdom will give. AT: “She has killed the animals for meat at dinner” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **mixed her wine** - In ancient Israel, people often mixed wine with water. AT: “prepared her wine by mixing it with water” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **she has set her table** - “she has prepared her table”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:3-4**UDB:**

³ Like a woman who sends out her maids to give the invitations to her guests, Wisdom calls out from the highest place in the city for all to hear, and she says:

⁴ “If you are still immature, come here,”

and she gives the invitation to those who have no good judgment.

ULB:

³ She has sent out her maids; she calls out from the highest points of the city,

⁴ “Who is naive? Let him turn aside here!”

To the one lacking good sense she speaks.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - These verses begin to give the message of Wisdom, who is personified as a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **She has sent out her maids** - These maids went out and invited people to come to the feast that Wisdom had prepared.
- **her maids** - Young women or girls who are in the service of a respectable, adult woman, such as Wisdom.
- **she calls out** - “she proclaims” or “she summons” AT: “she loudly recites her invitation”
- **the highest points of the city** - The invitation is shouted from the highest points so that it will be best heard by all the people.
- **Who is naive? Let ... the one lacking good sense** - These two phrases describe the same group of people, those who need more wisdom in their lives. Here the question is addressed to all such people. AT: “Anyone who is naive, let ... anyone lacking good sense”
- **is naive** - “is inexperienced or immature”
- **turn aside here** - “leave his path and come into my house”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ “Come and eat the food that I have prepared,” she says,

”and drink the good wine that I have mixed.

⁶ Leave your untrained ways behind you, and live,

and I will show you how to walk on the road that will give you understanding.

ULB:

⁵ ”Come, eat my food,

and drink the wine I have mixed.

⁶ Leave your naive actions and live;

walk in the path of understanding.

translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the message of Wisdom.
- **Come ... eat ... drink ... Leave ... live ... walk** - All of these commands are plural; Wisdom is addressing many people at the same time.
- **the wine I have mixed** - In ancient Israel, people often mixed wine with water. AT: “prepared her wine by mixing it with water” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Leave your naive actions** - Here naive actions are spoken of as if they were a place that a person could leave. AT: “Stop your naive behavior” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **naive actions** - “inexperienced, immature actions”
- **the path of understanding** - Here the process of understanding wisdom is spoken of as if it were a path that a person could follow. AT: “the manner of living that a wise person has” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ If you rebuke someone who says insulting things about other people, he will insult you, too.

If you offer correction to an evil person, he will hurt you.

⁸ A person who insults others will hate you if you tell him to stop.

But if you rebuke a wise person, he will become your friend.

⁹ If you give instruction to a wise person, he will become even more wise.

And if you teach a person who does what is right, he will learn even more.

ULB:

⁷ Whoever disciplines a mocker receives abuse,
and whoever rebukes a wicked person receives insults.

⁸ Do not reprove a mocker, or he will hate you;
reprove a wise man, and he will love you.

⁹ Give to a wise person, and he will become even wiser;
teach a righteous person, and he will add to his learning.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- love
- wise, wisdom
- righteous, righteousness

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the message of Wisdom.
- **Whoever disciplines ... whoever rebukes** - These two phrases basically say the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **a mocker** - Someone who habitually mocks people. AT: “someone who says insulting things about other people” (UDB) or “someone who likes to make other people look bad”

- **receives abuse** - “receives harsh treatment”
- **whoever rebukes** - “whoever corrects”
- **Do not reprove** - “Do not correct”
- **Give to a wise person, and he ... teach a righteous person, and he** - These two commands actually represent conditional statements. AT: “If you give to a wise person, he ... if you teach a righteous person, he”
- **Give to a wise person ... teach a righteous person** - These two phrases basically say the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Give to a wise person** - This refers to giving instruction to a wise person. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:10-12**UDB:**

- ¹⁰ The first step in getting wisdom is to give Yahweh the respect he deserves,
and knowing Yahweh, the Holy One, is the where understanding
comes from.
- ¹¹ If you become wise, your days will be filled full,
and you will add years to your life.
- ¹² If you become wise, you will gain many benefits from it;
if you ridicule other people, you will suffer by yourself.”

ULB:

- ¹⁰ The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of wisdom,
and the knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.
- ¹¹ For through me your days will be multiplied,
and years of life will be added to you.
- ¹² If you are wise, you are wise for yourself,
and if you mock, you will carry it by yourself.”

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- Holy One
- life, live, living, alive
- mock, ridicule, scoff at

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses finish the message of Wisdom.
- **The fear of Yahweh** - Translate this phrase as in **1:7**.

- **through me your days will be multiplied** - This may be put into active form. AT: “I will multiply your days” or “I will cause you to live many more days” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **through me** - Wisdom, personified as a woman, continues to speak here. (See: [Personification](#))
- **your days will be multiplied, and years of life will be added to you** - These two phrases basically mean the same thing and are used to emphasize the great benefits wisdom has. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **years of life will be added to you** - Wisdom speaks of years of life as if they were physical objects. This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will add years of life to you” or “I will add years to your life” or “I will enable you to live longer” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **If you are wise ... and if you mock** - These two statements seem to mean that wise people gain advantages for themselves because of their wisdom, and mockers suffer because of their behavior.
- **you will carry it** - This speaks of the consequence of one’s bad behavior as if it were a heavy load that one had to carry on his back. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ A foolish woman talks loudly;

she is untaught in the subjects of wisdom and she knows very little.

¹⁴ She sits at the door of her house

or on the highest place in the town,

¹⁵ and she calls out to the men who are passing by,

to those walking down the road, concerned only about where they are going.

ULB:

¹³ The woman of foolishness is ignorant;

she is untaught and knows nothing.

¹⁴ She sits at the door of her house,

on a seat in the highest places of the town.

¹⁵ She is calling out to those who pass by in the streets,

to people walking straight on their way.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses begin to describe foolishness, which is also personified as a woman. (See: [Personification](#))
- **The woman of foolishness** - It is possible to translate “foolishness” as a description. AT: “A foolish woman.” However, if a language allows wisdom to be personified, as in the previous part of this chapter, it may also allow foolishness to be personified. AT: “The woman Foolishness” (See: [Personification](#))
- **she is untaught and knows nothing** - These two expressions basically mean the same thing, which is repeated to show how useless the foolish woman is. AT: “she does not know anything at all” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **she is untaught** - “she has not learned from experience” or “she is young and naive”
- **walking straight on their way** - This seems to be an idiom for “thinking only of their own affairs” or “minding their own business.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 9:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ “Any of you who have no experience, come here,”

she says to those who have no good judgment.

¹⁷ ”If you sleep with me, it will as sweet as drinking water that you have stolen,

or eating delicious food all by yourself.”

¹⁸ Any man who accepts her invitation does not know that the dead are in her home,

that those who accepted her invitation and went into her house are now in the world of the dead.

ULB:

¹⁶ “Let anyone who is naive turn aside here,”

she says to those who have no sense.

¹⁷ ”Stolen waters are sweet,

and bread of secrecy is delicious.”

¹⁸ But he does not know that the dead are there,

that her invited guests are in the depths of Sheol.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- hades, sheol

translationNotes:

- **is naive** - “is inexperienced or immature”
- **turn aside here** - “leave his path and come here”
- **she says** - This is the foolish woman who was introduced in [9:13](#).
- **those who have no sense** - “those who do not have wisdom” or “those who are not wise”
- **Stolen waters are sweet, and bread of secrecy is delicious** - The foolish woman speaks of the pleasure of stolen waters and bread of secrecy to tell men that if they sleep with her, they will have pleasure. This can be stated clearly in a simile: “You can enjoy me just as you enjoy water that you have stolen or bread that is secret” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **that the dead are there** - “that the men who have gone to her are now dead”
- **in the depths of Sheol** - “Sheol” refers to the world of the dead. (See UDB).

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 09 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 09 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 10 starts a new section of the books, which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual Proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often using contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, and wicked/righteous. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 10:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 10:1-3**UDB:**

¹ These are the proverbs of Solomon:

A child who lives according to wisdom makes his father happy;

but if a child does foolish things, he causes his mother to be very sad.

² Riches that you got by being dishonest will not have any value;

but when you do what is right, you will be protected from death.

³ Yahweh does not allow people who do right to starve,

but he will makes it impossible for wicked people to get what they want.

ULB:

10 ¹ The proverbs of Solomon.

A wise son makes his father rejoice

but a foolish son brings grief to his mother.

² Treasures accumulated by wickedness have no value,

but doing what is right keeps you from death.

³ Yahweh does not let the soul of the righteous person go hungry,

but he frustrates the cravings of the wicked.

translationWords:

- proverb
- Solomon
- wise, wisdom
- rejoice
- fool, foolish, folly
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- death, die, dead
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Many verses in Chapter 10 are contrasting parallelisms (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **The proverbs of Solomon** - After the introduction of Chapters 1-9, Chapter 10 begins the collection of the proverbs; short sayings that teach wisdom.
- **accumulated** - acquired over time
- **Yahweh does not let the soul of the righteous person go hungry** - Here “soul” refers to the person. This can be stated in positive form. AT: “Yahweh makes sure those who do what is right have food to eat” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ A lazy person who will not work becomes poor;

those who work hard become rich.

⁵ He is wise who harvests the crops when they are ready to be gathered;

but it would be shameful for him to sleep while others are harvesting the crop.

ULB:

⁴ A lazy hand causes a person to be poor,

but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.

⁵ A wise son gathers a crop in the summer,

but it is disgraceful for him to sleep during harvest.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [harvest](#)

translationNotes:

- **A lazy hand** - “Hand” represents the strength and ability of a person. AT: “A person unwilling to work” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **hand of the diligent** - “Hand” represents the strength and ability of a person. AT: “person who works hard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Those who do right will receive many good gifts from God;

but those who do wicked things cover their violence so they cannot be seen.

⁷ When we remember those who do what is right, we get a blessing from Yahweh;

but we cannot remember the names of the wicked.

ULB:

⁶ Gifts from God are upon the head of the righteous person,
but the mouth of the wicked covers up violence.

⁷ The righteous person makes those who remember him happy,
but the name of the wicked will rot away.

translationWords:

- gift
- God
- head
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- name

translationNotes:

- **are upon the head** - “head” represents the whole person. AT: “are given to” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **mouth of the wicked** - “mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “words the wicked speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **covers up** - hides the truth
- **name** - “name” represents a person’s reputation. AT: “memory” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Wise people follow good instructions,

but a fool who talks too much will fail.

⁹ An honest person lives his life and has nothing to hide;

but one who is dishonest—his lies will be discovered.

ULB:

⁸ Those who are sensible accept commands,

but a talkative fool will come to ruin.

⁹ He who walks in integrity walks in safety,

but the one who makes his ways crooked, he will be found out.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [walk](#)
- [integrity](#)

translationNotes:

- **come to ruin** - “be destroyed” or “be made useless”
- **crooked** - not straight; deformed; dishonest; deceitful

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ The one who winks his eye signals others to help him do something that is wrong,
and a fool will be ruined because he talks too much.

¹¹ A person who does right is like a spring that gives life-saving water;
but the wicked person hides his brutality by his words.

ULB:

¹⁰ He who winks the eye causes grief,
but a talkative fool will be thrown down. [1]Some modern versions have *but one who bravely corrects makes peace* .

¹¹ The mouth of the righteous person is a water spring of life,
but the mouth of the wicked covers up violence.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- ruin, ruins
- fountain, spring
- life, live, living, alive
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **He who winks the eye** - “Winking the eye” represents a secretive sign for being cruel to someone else. AT: “He who makes a signal with a gesture” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will be thrown down** - A person who is ruined is spoken of as if he were thrown down. AT: “others will ruin him” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **The mouth of the righteous** - “The words of a righteous person” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **is a water spring of life** - This person’s speech is spoken of as if it preserved living animals or people, as a water spring would do in a dry land. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the mouth of the wicked** - “Mouth” represents what a persons says. AT: “the words of a wicked person” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the mouth of the wicked covers up violence** - That is, the wicked person appears to say harmless things, but plans to violent things against other people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Hatred has the power to start many arguments;

but love covers anything that may hurt us.

¹³ Those who have good sense say what is wise,

but people who do not have good judgment must be punished.

ULB:

¹² Hatred stirs up conflicts,

but love covers over all offenses.

¹³ Wisdom is found on the lips of a discerning person,

but a rod is for the back of the one who has no sense.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [discern, discernment](#)
- [rod](#)

translationNotes:

- **love covers over** - Love acts like a person who quiets trouble between people instead of stirring it up. (See: [Personification](#))
- **on the lips of a discerning person** - “Lips” represents what a person says. AT: “in what a sensible person says” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a rod is for the back** - “Rod” represents strong, physical punishment and “the back” represents the person who receives the punishment. AT: “a person who has no sense needs forceful punishment.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Wise people continue to learn all that they can,

but when foolish people speak, they will soon experience destruction.

¹⁵ The wealth that rich people have protects them like a city is protected by a strong wall around it ,

but because people are poor, they have no one to help them.

ULB:

¹⁴ Wise men store up knowledge,

but the mouth of a fool brings destruction near.

¹⁵ The wealth of a rich man is his fortified city;
the poverty of the poor is their destruction.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

translationNotes:

- **the mouth of a fool** - “Mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “the words from a foolish person” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his fortified city** - This represents wealth as a safe place. AT: “his safety” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:16-17**UDB:**

- ¹⁶ If you do what is right, your reward will lead you to life,
but all that sinful people gain is the ability to sin even more.
- ¹⁷ Life can be found by the one who is trained by discipline;
but the one who will not listen to correction wanders away.

ULB:

- ¹⁶ The wage of the righteous person leads to life;
the profit of the wicked leads them to sin.
- ¹⁷ There is a path to life for the one who follows discipline,
but the one who rejects correction is led astray.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [profit, profitable](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [astray, go astray, led astray, stray](#)

translationNotes:

- **The wage ... the profit** - These terms normally refer to the money a worker earns. Here they represents the results of either doing what is right or doing what is wrong. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **There is a path to life for the one who follows discipline** - “The person who obeys wise instruction will have a long and happy life”
- **but the one who rejects correction is led astray** - “but the one who does not obey wise instruction will not have a good life” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Those who hide their hatred of others, must lie to cover it up.

and those who repeat slander are foolish.

¹⁹ When people talk a lot, sin is sure to follow;

if you are wise, you will always be careful about what you say.

ULB:

¹⁸ Whoever conceals hatred has lying lips,

and whoever spreads slander is a fool.

¹⁹ When there are many words, transgression is not lacking,

but he who is careful in what he says is wise.

translationWords:

- [slander, slanderer](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [word](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **has lying lips** - “Lips” represent what a person says. AT: “tells lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **transgression is not lacking** - “there is much sin” (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ The one who does right

is like pure silver;

there is little value in the heart of the one who does wicked things.

²¹ What those who do right say benefits many,

but foolish people die because they lack good sense.

ULB:

²⁰ The tongue of the righteous person is pure silver;

there is little value in the heart of the wicked.

²¹ The lips of the righteous person nourish many,

but fools die because of their lack of sense.

translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- silver
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- fool, foolish, folly
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **The tongue of the righteous person** - “Tongue” represents what a person says. AT: “Whatever a righteous person says” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **is pure silver** - “Silver” represents valuable sayings. AT: “is extremely valuable” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The lips of the righteous** - “Lips” represents what a person says. AT: “The sayings of a righteous man” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **nourish** - cause them to develop or grow stronger

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 10 General Notes
- **Proverbs 10 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 10:22-23**UDB:**

²² Yahweh gives good gifts that make some people wealthy,
and he does not make them suffer for it.

²³ Foolish people play games when they do what is wrong,
but people with understanding enjoy wisdom.

ULB:

²² The good gifts of Yahweh bring wealth
and he adds no pain to it.

²³ Wickedness is a game a fool plays,
but wisdom is a pleasure to a man of understanding.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- gift
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **Wickedness is a game a fool plays** - A game is an activity people do for pleasure. AT: "Fools find pleasure in wickedness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ What the wicked fear will happen to them;

those who do what is right will get what they hoped for.

²⁵ Wicked people are like the storm that comes and then it is gone.

but those who do right are like a foundation that lasts forever.

ULB:

²⁴ The fear of the wicked person will overtake him,

but the desire of righteous people will be granted.

²⁵ The wicked are like the storm that passes by, and they are no more,

but the righteous person is a foundation that lasts forever.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- righteous, righteousness
- foundation, founded
- forever

translationNotes:

- **overtake** - overcome someone
- **The wicked are like the storm** - Just as storm comes and sweeps everything away so wicked people will disappear. (See: [Simile](#))
- **is a foundation that lasts forever** - “Foundation” represents the base or a beginning of something that people build over. AT: “is a start for something that lasts forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Like vinegar in our mouths or smoke in our eyes,
 that is what the lazy man is like to the one who hired him. ²⁷ If you give
 Yahweh the respect he deserves, you will live for a long time;
 but wicked people die before they become old.

ULB:

²⁶ Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
 so is the sluggard to those who send him.
²⁷ The fear of Yahweh prolongs life,
 but the years of the wicked will be short.

translationWords:

- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes, so is the sluggard to those who send him** - “Vinegar” and “smoke” represent things that hurt a person’s teeth and eyes. AT: “Sending a lazy person to accomplish a task is irritating and unpleasant” (See: [Simile](#))
- **vinegar** - a sour liquid used to flavor or preserve foods
- **the years of the wicked** - “Years” represent the time a person lives. AT: “the lifetime of the evil person” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ Those who do right have hope in their joy,

but the wicked can expect their lives to be short.

²⁹ Following Yahweh brings protection to those who keep their promises;

but those who do not follow him find out he destroys those who do what is evil.

³⁰ Those who do right will never be defeated,

but wicked people will not have a home.

ULB:

²⁸ The hope of righteous people is their joy,

but the years of wicked people will be short.

²⁹ The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,

but it is destruction for the wicked.

³⁰ The righteous person will never be overthrown,

but the wicked will not remain in the land.

translationWords:

- hope
- joy, joyful
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- integrity

translationNotes:

- **the years of wicked people** - Here “years” represent the time a person lives. AT: “the lifetime of the evil person” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will never be overthrown** - This can be stated as active and positive: AT: “will be secure” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 10:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ Wisdom is like a fruit that those who do right bear,

but Yahweh will cut out the deceitful tongue.

³² Those who do right know the words Yahweh permits them to speak,

but wicked people say what Yahweh has forbidden.

ULB:

³¹ Out of the mouth of the righteous person comes the fruit of wisdom,
but the perverse tongue will be cut out.

³² The lips of the righteous person know what is acceptable,
but the mouth of the wicked, they know what is perverse.

translationWords:

- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Out of the mouth of the righteous person** - “Mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “From the righteous man’s words” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the perverse tongue will be cut out** - “Tongue” represents what a person says. AT: “God will shut the mouths of people who say what is false” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **lips of the righteous know what is acceptable** - “Lips” represent what a person says. AT: “righteous person knows how to speak acceptably” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **mouth of the wicked** - “Mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “the words of the wicked” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 10 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 10 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 11 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often using contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise, wisdom, fool, foolish, folly, evil, wicked, wickedness and righteous, righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 11:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 11:1-2**UDB:**

¹ When people use scales that are not correct;

Yahweh is angry that they are stealing from their customers;

he is delighted with those who use correct weights on the scales.

² People who are proud live in such a way that always ends in disgrace;

people who are humble are the only ones who can learn about wisdom.

ULB:

11 ¹ Yahweh hates scales that are not accurate,

but he delights in a precise weight.

² When pride comes, then comes disgrace,

but with humility comes wisdom.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [humble, humility](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Many verses in Chapter 11 are contrasting parallelisms (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **Yahweh hates scales that are not accurate** - “Scales” represent measuring accurately in negotiating. AT: “God hates deceiving scales” or “God hates it when people are deceitful” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but he delights in a precise weight** - “Precise weight” represents accuracy in negotiating. AT: “but he delights in honest ways” or “but he is happy when people are honest”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:3-4**UDB:**

³ People who keep their promises also make choices that lead them in the right way;
 those who cannot be trusted are destroyed by their own dishonesty.

⁴ Your money will not help you on the day Yahweh judges the world;
 but if you do what is right, you will be kept safe from many dangers,
 even death.

ULB:

³ The integrity of the upright guides them,
 but the crooked ways of the treacherous destroy them.

⁴ Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath,
 but doing right keeps you from death.

translationWords:

- [integrity](#)
- [upright, uprightness](#)
- [biblical time: day](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **the treacherous** - This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. AT: “treacherous people” or “those who are treacherous” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath** - The “day of wrath” represents a specific event, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “judgment day” or “last days.” AT: “A person’s wealth will do him no good when God comes to judge.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ When people are honest and good, they know where they should go and what they should do;
but those who do evil find that their wickedness will destroy them.

⁶ God rescues those who do what is right,
but those who do what is evil become slaves to their desires.

ULB:

⁵ The right conduct of a blameless person makes his way straight,
but the wicked will fall because of their own wickedness.

⁶ The right conduct of those who please God keeps them safe,
but the treacherous are trapped by their cravings.

translationWords:

- [blameless](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **makes his way straight** - “has clear direction”
- **the wicked ... the treacherous** - These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. AT: “those who are wicked ... those who are treacherous” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **the treacherous are trapped by their cravings** - “those who do evil are captured by their passions”
- **treacherous** - ready to betray trust; traitorous; deceptive

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ When a wicked person dies, all he hoped for in the future is lost;

what he wanted to accomplish with his strength, will never happen.

⁸ The one who does what is right, Yahweh delivers from trouble;
and Yahweh gives that trouble to the wicked.

ULB:

⁷ When a wicked man dies, his hope perishes
and the hope that was in his strength comes to nothing.

⁸ The righteous person is kept away from trouble
and it comes upon the wicked instead.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- death, die, dead
- perish, perishing, perishable
- hope
- strength, strengthen

translationNotes:

- **the hope that was in his strength** - “the confidence he has in his own power”
- **comes to nothing** - “disappears”
- **The righteous person is kept away from trouble** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God keeps away from trouble the person who does what is right” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **it comes** - “trouble comes”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ A person who has no kind of religious faith uses his words to destroy his neighbor;

but people who do right will be saved by the knowledge they have gathered.

¹⁰ When things go well for those who do what is right, those in their city are happy,

and shouts of joy are heard when wicked people die.

¹¹ When there are people in the city who please God and they give good gifts to others, the city becomes great;

but the words spoken by the wicked tear down the city.

ULB:

⁹ With his mouth the godless person destroys his neighbor,
but through knowledge righteous people are kept safe.

¹⁰ When righteous people prosper, a city rejoices;
when the wicked perish, there are shouts of joy.

¹¹ Through the good gifts of those who please God, the city becomes great;
by the mouth of the wicked, the city is torn down.

translationWords:

- ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
- neighbor
- know, knowledge, make known
- rejoice
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- perish, perishing, perishable
- joy, joyful
- God

translationNotes:

- **With his mouth the godless** - “Mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “The words of the godless” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **the city becomes great** - “City” represents the community or people group. AT: “the people group prospers” or “the community becomes prosperous” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **by the mouth of the wicked** - “Mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “the words of evil people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:12-13**UDB:**

- ¹² The one who treats his friend with contempt has no good judgment;
a person who has learned what is important says nothing.
- ¹³ Those who spread gossip tell secrets to others,
but a person you can trust will not talk about it.

ULB:

- ¹² The man who has contempt for his friend has no sense,
but a man of understanding keeps quiet.
- ¹³ Whoever goes around slandering reveals secrets,
but a faithful person keeps a matter covered.

translationWords:

- [contempt, contemptible](#)
- [slander, slanderer](#)
- [reveal, revelation](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)

translationNotes:

- **keeps a matter covered** - “Covered” represents keeping things concealed as much as possible. AT: “does not tell” or “does not speak about the matter” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:14

UDB:

¹⁴ A nation will be destroyed if it does not have leaders who guide it wisely;
but the nation will have victory when it listens to many advisors.

ULB:

¹⁴ Where there is no wise direction, a nation falls,
but victory comes by consulting many advisors.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- nation
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

translationNotes:

- **advisors** - those who give recommendations as a guide to action; counselors

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ If you promise to pay off a loan that is taken by a stranger, you will lose your money.

You will be safe if you refuse to make any kind of agreement to pay someone else's debts.

¹⁶ A kindhearted woman earns respect;

but violent people take hold of riches.

ULB:

¹⁵ Whoever guarantees a loan for a stranger will surely suffer harm, but the one who hates giving a pledge in that kind of promise is safe.

¹⁶ A gracious woman gets honor,

but ruthless people grasp for wealth.

translationWords:

- suffer, suffering
- pledge
- promise
- grace, gracious
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **one who hates giving** - "one who refuses to give"
- **ruthless people** - people without pity or compassion; cruel people
- **grasp for wealth** - "are greedy for wealth"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ By their kindness to others kind people give good gifts to themselves,

but one who is cruel hurts himself by his cruelty.

¹⁸ Wicked people tell lies to make more money,

but those who do what is right will be paid even more because they earned it.

ULB:

¹⁷ A kind person benefits himself,

but one who is cruel hurts himself.

¹⁸ The wicked person lies to get his wages,

but one who sows what is right reaps the wages of truth.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [reap, reaper](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)

translationNotes:

- **one who** - “a person who”
- **sows what is right** - To “sow” represents spreading out to gain more. AT: “spreads out what is right” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **reaps the wages of truth** - To “reap” represents acquiring or gathering in” AT: “will surely be rewarded” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Those who do what is right will live,

but those who do what is wrong will die.

²⁰ Yahweh hates those who take good things and they twist them and they do bad things with them,

but he is delighted with those who always do what is right.

ULB:

¹⁹ An honest person who does what is right will live,
but the one who pursues evil will die.

²⁰ Yahweh hates those whose hearts are perverse,
but he delights in those whose ways are blameless.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- death, die, dead
- Yahweh
- heart
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- blameless

translationNotes:

- **the one who** - “the person who”
- **pursues evil** - “chases after evil” or “seeks to do evil”
- **whose hearts are perverse** - “Heart” represents the feelings, attitudes and motivations of a person. AT: “who have wicked thoughts” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ It is certain that evil people will not escape their punishment.

and the children of those who do right will be kept safe.

²² If you see a gold ring in a pig's nose,

that is very much like a beautiful woman who does not have good sense.

ULB:

²¹ Be sure of this—the wicked person will not go unpunished, but the descendants of righteous people will be kept safe.

²² Like a gold ring in a pig's nose is a beautiful woman without discretion.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- punish, punishment
- descendant, descended from
- gold
- pig, swine, pork

translationNotes:

- **will not go unpunished** - “will be punished” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **Like a gold ring ... without discretion** - A beautiful woman without discretion is compared to a useless and unsuitable golden ring in a pig's nose. (See: [Simile](#))
- **without discretion** - ” without common sense” or “who is foolish”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Those who do what is right desire things that result in good,

but the reward of the wicked is that they will experience Yahweh's wrath.

²⁴ If a person sows seed, he can expect to harvest a crop;

his few seeds will give him much more;

another person does not plant a crop, and he becomes poor.

ULB:

²³ The desires of righteous people result in good,

but wicked people can only hope for wrath.

²⁴ There is one who sows seed—he will accumulate even more;

another does not sow—he comes to poverty.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- hope
- wrath, fury
- sow, sower, plant

translationNotes:

- **one who sows seed** - “Sowing seed” represents preparing for the future. AT: “a person who prepares for the future” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will accumulate even more** - “will gain even more”
- **does not sow** - “Sow” represents preparing for a result. AT: “does not prepare” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Those who give generously to others will prosper;

if you share your water with other people, you will have enough for yourself, too.

²⁶ People will curse the merchant who will not sell them grain,

but they praise the one who sells it.

ULB:

²⁵ The generous person will prosper

and the one who gives water to others will have water for himself.

²⁶ People curse the man who refuses to sell grain,

but good gifts crown the head of him who sells it.

translationWords:

- **curse, cursed**
- **grain**
- **gift**
- **crown, to crown**

translationNotes:

- **will prosper** - “will gain more”
- **the one who** - “the generous person who” or “anyone who”
- **the man who refuses to sell** - This describes the person who hoards his wealth instead of helping those in need.
- **good gifts crown the head of him who sells it** - “Crown” represents the reward or award for the person who is willing to sell grain. AT: “good gifts are given as a crown of honor to him who sells it” or “the person who sells it is honored with many blessings” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- **Introduction to Proverbs**
- **Proverbs 11 General Notes**
- **Proverbs 11 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 11:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ If you work hard and go out to find what is good, you will also find good will.

but if you look for evil, you will find it.

²⁸ Those who trust in their money will fall down,

but those who do what is right will grow like a healthy tree.

ULB:

²⁷ The one who diligently seeks good is also seeking favor,

but the one who searches for evil will find it.

²⁸ Those who trust in their riches will fall,

but like the leaf, righteous people will flourish.

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **The one who diligently seeks** - the one who seeks with careful and continued effort
- **will fall** - This is an idiom. Here “fall” represents destruction or failure. AT: “will be destroyed” or “awaits a bad future” (See: **Idiom**)
- **like the leaf, righteous people will flourish** - “Leaf” represents growth and prosperity. AT: “righteous people will prosper in the same way a healthy green leaf grows” (See: **Simile**)
- **righteous people will flourish** - This means that righteous people will thrive or prosper.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:29**UDB:**

²⁹ Those who bring troubles to their families will inherit nothing,
and those who do foolish things will become the servants of those
who are wise.

ULB:

²⁹ The one who brings trouble on his own household will inherit the wind
and the fool will become a servant to the wise of heart.

translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- household
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- fool, foolish, folly
- servant, slave, slavery
- wise, wisdom
- heart

translationNotes:

- **inherit the wind** - The “wind” is something that cannot be grasped. AT: “inherit nothing.” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 11:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Those who do what is right will be like a life giving tree,

but acts of violence take away life.

³¹ It is sure that those who do what is right will get what they truly deserve;

but even more, the person who does bad things
and the one who sins against Yahweh,
will surely receive what they deserve.

ULB:

³⁰ The righteous person will be like a tree of life,

but violence takes away lives.

³¹ Behold! The righteous person receives what he deserves;

how much more the wicked and the sinner!

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [receive](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

translationNotes:

- **The righteous will be like a tree of life** - A person who does what is right is compared to a tree that produces life as its fruit. AT: “Those who do right will bring life to themselves and others” (See: [Simile](#))
- **tree of life** - Translate this as in [3:18](#).
- **how much more** - “even more so”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 11 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 11 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 12 continues the section of the book (Chapter 10-22) which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often using contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility and integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 12:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 12:1-2**UDB:**

¹ The one who wants to learn will welcome correction.

But the one who does not want to be corrected will remain stupid.

² Yahweh approves of those who are good,
but he condemns those who make evil plans.

ULB:

12 ¹ Whoever loves discipline loves knowledge,
but the one who hates correction is stupid.

² Yahweh gives favor to a good man,
but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [condemn, condemnation](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The author uses [Parallelism](#) throughout this chapter.
- **General Information:** - Verses 1-15 contrast wisdom and foolishness.
- **Whoever** - “Any person who”
- **the one who hates correction** - “the person who does not want to be told what to do”
- **is stupid** - “is foolish” or “is unwise”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:3-4**UDB:**

³ Wickedness is a bad foundation for a person's life.

People who do well are as stable as a tree with deep roots.

⁴ A good wife brings praise to her husband,

but a wife who brings shame home is like a disease that destroys his bones.

ULB:

³ A person cannot be established by wickedness,

but righteous people cannot be uprooted.

⁴ A worthy wife is her husband's crown,

but she who brings shame is like a disease that rots his bones.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- crown, to crown
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **A person cannot be established by wickedness** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "No one can become safe and secure by doing what is wicked" (See **Active or Passive**)
- **cannot be uprooted** - "Uprooted" represents being pulled out of the ground like a plant or a tree. This cannot happen to those who do right. AT: "are as stable as a tree with deep roots" (UDB) (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)
- **A worthy wife is her husband's crown** - A crown represents the greatest honor a person can receive. AT: "A good wife is a sign of great honor for her husband." (See: **Metaphor**)
- **she who brings shame is like a disease that rots his bones** - A disease that rots the bones represents the spoiling of a person's life. AT: "a wife's shameful acts destroy her husband's influence and happiness" (See: **Simile**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ People who do the right thing make plans that are fair and just.

But advice given by wicked people are filled with lies.

⁶ What wicked people say is like setting up a secret attack while planning to commit murder;

but when those who please Yahweh speak, their words keep them out of danger.

ULB:

⁵ The plans of the righteous are just,
but the advice of the wicked is deceitful.

⁶ The words of wicked people are an ambush waiting for a chance to kill,
but the words of the upright keep them safe.

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- word

translationNotes:

- **The words of wicked people are an ambush waiting for a chance to kill** - The deceitful things that wicked people say in order to harm other people are spoken of as if their words are waiting to kill someone by surprise. AT: “The deceitful things wicked people say are like a person who waits to kill someone by surprise” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the words of the upright keep them safe** - “the advice from an upright person keeps people safe”
- **the upright** - “the righteous person” or “the honest person” or “the just person”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 12 General Notes
- Proverbs 12 Translation Questions

Proverbs 12:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Wicked people are put out of power, and they are gone,

but those who do what is right will have many generations and that family will continue for a long time.

⁸ A person will be praised according to how much wisdom he has;

but one who takes good things and twists them into bad will be hated.

ULB:

⁷ Wicked people are overthrown and they are gone,

but the house of the righteous person will stand.

⁸ A person is praised by how much wisdom he has,

but the one who makes perverse choices is despised.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- praise
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **Wicked people are overthrown** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People will overthrow the wicked people” or “People will remove the wicked people from power” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **house** - The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a person’s ancestors, descendants or other relatives. AT: “family” or “descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **A person is praised by how much wisdom he has** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People will praise those who have wisdom” (See [Active or Passive](#))
- **the one who makes perverse choices is despised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “people will hate the one who always thinks evil thoughts” or “people will hate the one who takes good things and twists them into bad” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ It is better to be a humble person, just living your life as a servant to others,
than to tell others how important you are, but you have nothing to eat.

¹⁰ People who do what is right care about the feeding and health of their animals,
but even when the wicked try to do something for their animals, it becomes an act of cruelty.

ULB:

⁹ Better to have an unimportant position—only being a servant—
than to brag about your importance but have no food.

¹⁰ The righteous person cares about the needs of his animal,
but even the compassion of the wicked is cruel.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Better to have an unimportant position** - “It is better to be an ordinary person”
- **is cruel** - “causes suffering”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The farmer who works hard in the fields will have enough food to eat,

but those who have no good judgment take on projects that bring them nothing.

¹² Wicked people desire the things that evil people have—things they stole from others.

But people who do what is right have what they have earned; it is their reward.

ULB:

¹¹ The one who works his land will have plenty of food,
but whoever chases after worthless projects has no sense.

¹² The wicked person desires what evil men have stolen from others,
but the fruit of righteous people comes from themselves.

translationWords:

- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)

translationNotes:

- **projects** - “plans” or “tasks”
- **fruit** - This refers to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ An evil person is trapped by the wicked things he says,

but those who do right stay away from much trouble.

¹⁴ The good words spoken by a person fill his life with good things,

just as his hard work brings him a reward.

ULB:

¹³ An evil person is trapped by his wicked talk,

but the righteous person escapes from trouble.

¹⁴ From the fruit of his words a person is filled with good things,

just as the work of his hands rewards him.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- fruit, fruitful
- word
- works, deeds, work, acts
- reward

translationNotes:

- **An evil person is trapped by his wicked talk** - “Trapped” represents being caught in a snare or being tricked. This can be stated in active form. AT: “The wicked things an evil person says will trap him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **just as the work of his hands rewards him** - The phrase, “the work of his hands” represents work done by physical labor. AT: “just as the good work he does rewards him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Foolish people think that what they are doing is always right;

but wise people are willing to listen to advice.

¹⁶ A foolish person quickly shows how angry he is;

but those who have good sense ignore it when someone insults them.

ULB:

¹⁵ The way of a fool is right in his own eyes,

but a wise man listens to advice.

¹⁶ A fool shows his anger at once,

but one who ignores an insult is prudent.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **in his own eyes** - This phrase represents the idea he has from his own observation, imagination or memory. AT: “in his own opinion” (See: **Idiom**)
- **advice** - wise suggestions
- **is prudent** - “is wise” or “has good sense.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Speaking the truth is the same as saying what is right,

but a dishonest person tell lies.

¹⁸ When a person speaks without thinking, it is like they are taking stabs at you with a sword;

but what wise people say helps to heal the hurts.

ULB:

¹⁷ The one who speaks the truth says what is right,

but a false witness tells lies.

¹⁸ The words of one who speaks rashly are like the thrusts of a sword,

but the tongue of the wise brings healing.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- word
- sword
- tongue
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **The words of one who speaks rashly are like the thrusts of a sword** - The phrase, “thrusts of a sword” represents cruel words that hurt another. AT: “What a person says without thinking can hurt as much as if he stabbed with a sword.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))
- **the tongue of the wise** - “Tongue” represents what a person says. AT: “what wise people say” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **brings healing** - “comforts and heals”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Speaking the truth will never be out of favor,
but a lie is over in a moment.

²⁰ When evil is planned there must be lies within those who carry it out;
but those who give advice that leads to peace, those advisors will
celebrate.

ULB:

¹⁹ Truthful lips last forever,
but a lying tongue is only for a moment.

²⁰ There is deceit in the hearts of those who plan to do evil,
but joy comes to the advisors of peace.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- forever
- tongue
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- joy, joyful
- peace, peaceful

translationNotes:

- **Truthful lips last forever** - “Lips” represents what a person says. AT: “A truthful person endures forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a lying tongue is only for a moment** - “Tongue” represents what a person says. AT: “the one who lies lasts only for a moment” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **advisors** - those who give recommendations as a guide to action; counselors

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 12 General Notes
- **Proverbs 12 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 12:21-22**UDB:**

- ²¹ Bad things do not happen to those who do what is right,
but wicked people's lives are filled up with troubles.
- ²² Yahweh detests those who tell lies,
but he is delighted with those who live faithfully.

ULB:

- ²¹ No ill comes on the righteous person,
but wicked people are filled with difficulties.
- ²² Yahweh hates lying lips,
but those who live faithfully are his delight.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness](#)

translationNotes:

- **No ill comes** - The negative, "No" cancels out the idea of "ill" (bad things that happen). AT: "Good things come" (See: [Litotes](#))
- **Yahweh hates lying lips** - "Lips" represents what a person says. AT: "Yahweh detests those who tell lies" (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Those with good sense do not reveal all that they know,

but foolish people shout out their foolish thinking.

²⁴ Those who are known for their hard work will gain authority over others,

but those who are lazy will be forced to work, even though they hate it.

ULB:

²³ A prudent man conceals his knowledge,

but the heart of fools shouts out folly.

²⁴ The hand of the diligent will rule,

but lazy people will be put to forced labor.

translationWords:

- [prudent](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [heart](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [subject, be subject to, in subjection to](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)

translationNotes:

- **conceals his knowledge** - “does not tell everything he knows”
- **The hand of the diligent** - “Hand” represents what a person does – his works. AT: “Diligent people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will be put to forced labor** - “Forced labor” describes what a person must do who is not free to do what he wants. AT: “will become a slave” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ When a person is anxious, it is like he is carrying a heavy load,
but a good word makes him feel better.

²⁶ The one who does right will be a good guide for his friend,
but wicked people always get lost.

ULB:

²⁵ Anxiety in the heart of a person weighs him down,
but a good word makes him glad.

²⁶ The righteous person is a guide for his friend,
but the way of the wicked leads them astray.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [word](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Anxiety** - uneasy feeling of fear or dread, worry
- **weighs him down** - “Weighing down” represents the idea of putting a very heavy load on a person so he cannot move freely. This phrase means to make a person sad or depressed. AT: “causes him to become sad or depressed” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but a good word makes him glad** - The abstract noun “word” can be stated as the verb “speak.” AT: “but when others speak kindly to him, he is cheerful again” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 12:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Lazy people do not even cook the animal they caught,

but those who work hard will acquire wealth that is worth keeping.

²⁸ Those who walk in the right way find life

and on that road there is no death.

ULB:

²⁷ Lazy people would not roast their own game,

but the diligent man will obtain precious wealth.

²⁸ Those who walk in the right way find life

and in its path there is no death.

translationWords:

- [walk](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **would not roast their own game** - “Game” means animals caught and killed while hunting. And “roast” is a way of cooking food.
- **precious wealth** - “valuable treasure”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 12 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 12 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 13 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 13:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 13:1-2**UDB:**

¹ A wise child pays attention to the teaching his father gives him;

but a stubborn child refuses to listen to correction.

² Good things come as the fruit of what one says,

but the desire of the deceitful is to consume more and more violence.

ULB:

13 ¹ A wise son hears his father's instruction,

but a mocker will not listen to rebuke.

² From the fruit of his mouth a person enjoys good things,

but the appetite of the treacherous is for violence.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- ancestor, father, forefather
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- rebuke
- fruit, fruitful

translationNotes:

- **A wise son hears** - Here "hears" represents listening in order to do it. AT: "A wise son obeys" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will not listen to rebuke** - Here "listen" represents paying attention in order to do it. AT: "will not learn from rebuke" or "will not obey, despite rebuke" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **From the fruit of his mouth** - Here "fruit" represents what a person says. AT: "From the words of his mouth" or "From what he says" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the appetite** - the desire or liking for something
- **the treacherous** - those who are willing to betray or deceive others (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 13 General Notes
- Proverbs 13 Translation Questions

Proverbs 13:3-4**UDB:**

³ The person who is very careful about what he says preserves his life;

the one who talks too much ruins everything.

⁴ People who are lazy are hungry for everything, but they will not get anything.

People who work hard will get more than they desired.

ULB:

³ The one who guards his mouth protects his life,
but the one who opens wide his lips will ruin himself.

⁴ The appetite of lazy people craves but gets nothing,
but the appetite of diligent people will be richly satisfied.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

translationNotes:

- **his mouth** - Here “mouth” represents what a person says. AT: “what he says” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **opens wide his lips** - Opening the lips represents speaking, and opening them wide represents speaking too often or too much. AT: “speaks a lot” or “talks too much” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The appetite ... the appetite** - Translate as you did in [13:2](#).
- **craves but gets nothing** - “strongly desires but gets nothing”
- **the appetite of diligent people will be richly satisfied** - Here “appetite” represents desire. AT: “diligent people will have a richly satisfied life” or “being diligent will make people richly satisfied” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **diligent people** - people who work with careful and continued effort

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 13 General Notes
- Proverbs 13 Translation Questions

Proverbs 13:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Anyone who does right hates it when other tell lies,

but a wicked person brings disgrace on himself.

⁶ Anyone who does right always acts in ways that are respected,

but the one who does what Yahweh has forbidden ruins his own wicked life.

ULB:

⁵ The righteous person hates lies,

but a wicked person makes himself repugnant, and he does what is shameful.

⁶ Righteousness protects those who are faultless in their path,

but wickedness turns away those who commit sin.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- righteous, righteousness
- turn, turn away, turn back
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **repugnant** - causing a strong feeling of disgust
- **Righteousness protects those** - “Righteousness” represents a way of life approved by Yahweh. This quality acts like a person who protects. AT: “A way of life approved by Yahweh protects” (See: **Personification**)
- **who are faultless in their path** - Here “path” represents how a person directs his life. AT: “who are faultless in their way of living” or “who live lives of integrity” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **wickedness turns away those who commit sin** - Here “wickedness” represents an evil conduct of life. This quality acts like a person who turns away those who commit sin. AT: “wickedness turns sinners away from a successful path” or “wickedness ruins sinners’ lives” (See: **Personification**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Some people have many possessions, but they have nothing of value;

but other people give all they have away, and yet have the best kind of riches.

⁸ A rich person may have to use his wealth to buy back his life from a criminal who holds him as a hostage,

but a poor person does not listen even when he is threatened.

ULB:

⁷ There is someone who enriches himself, but has nothing at all and there is someone who gives everything away, yet is truly wealthy.

⁸ The ransom of a rich man's life is his wealth, but a poor person does not hear a threat.

translationWords:

- [amen, truly](#)
- [ransom](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [possess, possession](#)

translationNotes:

- **who enriches himself** - "who makes himself rich"
- **does not hear a threat** - Possible meanings are 1) no one will threaten to steal from him because he has nothing anyone would want to steal or 2) he will not listen when people correct him because he has nothing to lose if they punish him. AT: "does not listen to rebuke"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The one who does what is right shines like a light that gives joy,

but wicked people are like a lamp that will be extinguished.

¹⁰ Pride works within a person and it results in conflict and arguments,

but those who listen to good advice find the wisdom they need.

ULB:

⁹ The light of righteous people rejoices,

but the lamp of wicked people will be put out.

¹⁰ Pride only breeds conflict,

but for those who listen to good advice there is wisdom.

translationWords:

- light
- rejoice
- lamp
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- proud, pride, prideful
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **The light of righteous people rejoices** - The light stands for the influence of righteous people and is described as experiencing the human emotion of joy. This can also be expressed as a simile as it is by the UDB. AT: “The influence of righteous people produces joy” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))
- **the lamp of wicked people will be put out** - The lamp of wicked people stands for the influence of those wicked people. The lamp being put out means their influence will stop. AT: “wicked people will lose their influence” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Pride only breeds conflict** - “Pride always causes conflict”
- **listen to** - “heed” or “follow”
- **good advice** - suggestions that are helpful and profitable

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ People who think too much of themselves will spend all their money;

the one who makes his money by working with his hands, will find ways to make his money grow.

¹² When hope for the future is postponed, it makes you sick—you feel you will never receive what you long for,

but if you receive what you desire, that will be like a tree that gives life.

ULB:

¹¹ Wealth dwindles away when there is too much vanity,

but the one who makes money by working with his hand will make his money grow.

¹² When hope is postponed, it breaks the heart,

but a longing fulfilled is a tree of life.

translationWords:

- vain, vanity
- hope
- heart
- fulfill
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Wealth dwindles away** - “Wealth decreases” or “Wealth slowly disappears”
- **working with his hand** - The phrase “working with his hand” refers to physical work instead of only mental or other types of work. Many people give physical work a low value. AT: “working with physical strength” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **make his money grow** - Money is compared to a tree that grows. AT: “make his money increase” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **When hope is postponed** - Here “hope” represents the thing a person hopes for. This can be stated in active form. AT: “When a person hopes for something but does not receive it for a very long time” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **it breaks the heart** - Breaking a person's heart represents overwhelming that person with sadness. AT: "it causes intense sadness" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a longing fulfilled is a tree of life** - Someone receiving what they hoped for and becoming very happy is spoken of as if the fulfillment of their hope were a tree that gives life. AT: "a longing fulfilled is like a tree of life" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **tree of life** - "a tree that gives life" or "a tree whose fruit sustains life." Translate this as you did in [3:18](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Those who despise good advice bring the punishment for disobeying upon themselves;
the one who pays attention to the instruction will receive honor.

¹⁴ The lesson taught by the wise are like a fountain that gives life to all who drink from it,
and they inform you about all the deadly dangers around you.

ULB:

¹³ The one who scorns instruction will still be subject to it,
but the one who honors the command will be rewarded.

¹⁴ The teaching of a wise person is a fountain of life,
turning you away from the snares of death.

translationWords:

- subject, be subject to, in subjection to
- honor, to honor
- command, to command, commandment
- reward
- wise, wisdom
- fountain, spring
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **the one who honors the command will be rewarded** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “they will reward the one who honors the command” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **fountain of life** - A fountain is a good source of water and here represents a source of life. AT: “a bountiful source of life” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **snares of death** - Here “snares” represent dangers that will kill. AT: “traps that lead to death” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Having a mind that understands right and wrong, brings you respect,
 but the one who twists good gifts for bad purposes,
 he never reaches his destination.

¹⁶ Those who have good sense always take action from what they know is true;
 a foolish person proves his decisions are folly, and everyone sees it.

ULB:

¹⁵ Good insight wins favor,
 but the way of the treacherous is never-ending.
¹⁶ Prudent people act out of knowledge in every decision,
 but a fool parades his folly.

translationWords:

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- know, knowledge, make known
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **but the way of the treacherous is never-ending** - Here a person's behavior or conduct is spoken of as if it were a way or path that a person walks. A person being ruined by their own treachery is spoken of as if they are on a way or path that never ends. AT: "but the behavior of the treacherous will cause their own destruction" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the treacherous** - This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. AT: "the treacherous person" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **a fool parades his folly** - To "parade" means to display in front of everyone. AT: "a fool displays his foolishness to everyone" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ A wicked messenger will not deliver the message,

but bitter enemies are brought together

when the messages are delivered by a dependable messenger.

¹⁸ The one who does not learn from the lessons of discipline will be poor,
and he will know shame,

but the one who takes the lessons of discipline and learns from
them,

honor will find him.

ULB:

¹⁷ A wicked messenger falls into trouble,

but a faithful envoy brings reconciliation.

¹⁸ The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame,

but honor will come to him who learns from correction.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- faithful, faithfulness
- reconcile, reconciliation
- discipline, self-discipline
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **falls into trouble** - “is unreliable” or “does something evil”
- **envoy** - “messenger” or “diplomat”
- **learns from correction** - The concept or idea of “correction” can be stated as an action. AT: “learns when someone corrects him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ When a longing comes true,

it is sweet delight to the one with desires;

and those who are foolish continue to turn toward evil again and again.

²⁰ If you spend time with wise people,

by their lives they will show you how you can be wise, as well.

ULB:

¹⁹ A longing realized is sweet to the appetite,
but fools hate to turn away from evil.

²⁰ Walk with wise people and you will be wise,
but the companion of fools will suffer harm.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- turn, turn away, turn back
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- walk
- wise, wisdom
- companion

translationNotes:

- **is sweet** - “is a delight” or “brings joy”
- **the appetite** - the desire or liking for something
- **will suffer harm** - “will experience harm” or “will be ruined”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Sinners run away and disasters chase after them,

but those who do what is right find the good is their reward.

²² A good person sets apart money to give his grandchildren when he dies,

but a sinful person will store up his wealth, not knowing that it will be given to the one who does right.

ULB:

²¹ Disaster runs after sinners,

but righteous people are rewarded with good.

²² A good person leaves an inheritance for his grandchildren,

but a sinner's wealth is stored up for the righteous person.

translationWords:

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [reward](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **Disaster runs after sinners** - "Disaster" is given human characteristics like the ability to run. AT: "Sinners have trouble wherever they go" (See: [Personification](#))
- **righteous people are rewarded with good** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "God rewards righteous people with good" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **his grandchildren** - "the sons of his sons" or "the children of his children" or "his descendants"
- **a sinner's wealth is stored up for the righteous person** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "the one who does right will receive the wealth that a sinner has stored up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 13 General Notes
- **Proverbs 13 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 13:23-24**UDB:**

²³ A field owned by a poor person can produce much food,

but the poor are victims of injustice more than the rich,
and the crop is not planted.

²⁴ A parent who does not train his child in how he should live,
does not show him any love,

but the one who is careful to train the child in how he should live,
shows his great love.

ULB:

²³ An unplowed field owned by the poor could produce much food,
but it is swept away by injustice.

²⁴ The one who does not discipline his son hates him,
but one who loves his son is careful to instruct him.

translationWords:

- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- discipline, self-discipline
- love

translationNotes:

- **An unplowed field** - “A field that is not prepared for food production” or “An empty field not ready for planting”
- **but it is swept away by injustice** - “Swept away” represents completely removing something. This can be stated in active form. AT: “but injustice takes away that food” or “but unjust people take the food away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **is careful to instruct him** - “makes sure to instruct him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 13:25**UDB:**

²⁵ Those who do what is right eat enough food to satisfy their hunger,
but the wicked complain that they are always hungry.

ULB:

²⁵ The righteous person eats until he satisfies his appetite,
but the stomach of the wicked is always hungry.

translationWords:

- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **he satisfies his appetite** - “he has satisfied himself” or “he fulfills his desires”
- **the stomach of the wicked is always hungry** - Here “stomach” represents the desires of a person. AT: “the wicked person is always hungry for more” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 13 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 13 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 14 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 14:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 14:1-2**UDB:**

¹ A wise woman holds her family together,

but a foolish woman tears it apart by the foolish things she does.

² The one who honors Yahweh in the way he lives, gives to Yahweh the respect he deserves;

the dishonest person shows his disrespect, and he despises Yahweh.

ULB:

14 ¹ The wise woman builds her house,

but a foolish woman tears it down with her own hands.

² The one who walks uprightly fears Yahweh,

but the one who is dishonest in his ways despises him.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- house
- fool, foolish, folly
- walk
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **builds her house** - “builds up her house” or “makes her house better”
- **house** - Possible meanings are 1) this may refer to her actual house, that is the building she lives in or 2) this may refer to her family. (UDB)
- **with her own hands** - “Hands” represent the actions she does. AT: “by herself” or “by the way she behaves” (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy**)
- **The one who ... the one who** - “The person who ... the person who”
- **walks uprightly** - “Walks” represents the conduct of life. AT: “conducts his life in a just and honest way” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **despises** - “grossly disrespects” or “indicates he hates”
- **in his ways despises him** - The word “his” refers to the dishonest man and “him” refers to Yahweh.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:3-4**UDB:**

³ Pride grows out of the mouth of the fool, like an offshoot from a tree;

but what wise people say preserves their lives.

⁴ Where there are no cattle feeding in the barn, the feeding trough is clean;

but if a farmer only has one ox, still he can grow a very great crop.

ULB:

³ From the mouth of a fool comes an offshoot of his pride,

but the lips of the wise will preserve them.

⁴ Where there are no cattle the feeding trough is clean,

but an abundant crop can come by the strength of an ox.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- proud, pride, prideful
- wise, wisdom
- clean, cleanse
- ox, oxen

translationNotes:

- **the mouth of ... the lips of** - The mouth and the lips both refer to what a person says. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **an offshoot of his pride** - An offshoot is something that grows out of something else. AT: “what his pride produces” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the wise** - This word is actually a plural. “the wise men” or “wise people”
- **will preserve them** - “will keep them from harm” or “will keep them safe”
- **the feeding trough** - A “trough” is a container in which you put the food for animals.
- **an abundant crop** - “a good harvest”
- **by the strength of an ox** - “Strength” represents the strong work an ox can do. AT: “because of the work an ox does” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ You can tell if a witness is reliable, if he tells the truth,

but when a witness breaths out lie after lie, he is a false witness
and cannot be depended on.

⁶ One who thinks he is better than others, he may seek wisdom, but he will
not find it,

but the one who has grown in knowledge can easily learn much
more.

ULB:

⁵ A faithful witness does not lie,

but a false witness breathes out lies.

⁶ A mocker seeks wisdom and there is none,

but knowledge comes easy to the one who is discerning.

translationWords:

- faithful, faithfulness
- witness, eyewitness
- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **breathes out lies** - This figure of speech uses “breathes” to refer to lying constantly. AT: “constantly lies” (See: **Idiom**). See how you translated this phrase in **6:19**.
- **and there is none** - “and wisdom is not there” or “but he will not find wisdom” (UDB)
- **comes easy to** - “is easily found by” or “acquires without difficulty”
- **the one who is discerning** - “the one who is wise” or “a person who has understanding”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Do not stay close to a foolish person: Walk away from him.

There is no knowledge to be learned from him.

⁸ The one who has learned much knowledge applies it to his own life; that is wisdom.

The foundation of all folly is the lie.

ULB:

⁷ Walk away from a foolish person,
for you will not find knowledge on his lips.

⁸ The wisdom of the prudent person is to understand his own way,
but the folly of fools is deception.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- know, knowledge, make known
- wise, wisdom
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

translationNotes:

- **on his lips** - The word “lips” represents what a person says. AT: “from his speech” or “with his comments” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the prudent** - a person who has good judgment or sense
- **his own way** - The word “way” represents the conduct of life of a person. AT: “his conduct” or “how he lives” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the folly of fools is deception** - The foolishness of fools is that they think they are wise, when they are not.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Fools watch the guilt offering being sacrificed in the temple, and they make fun of it,
but those who please Yahweh are glad to share his favor.

¹⁰ A person keeps close inside all his bitterness and disappointment;
and no stranger will ever know all the joy it contains.

ULB:

⁹ Fools mock when the guilt offering is sacrificed,
but among the upright favor is shared.

¹⁰ The heart knows its own bitterness
and no stranger shares its joy.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- guilt offering
- upright, uprightness
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **when the guilt offering is sacrificed** - “at guilt” or “at the guilt offering” The meaning behind this phrase is that fools do not apologize to God or men for the things they do wrong.
- **but among the upright favor is shared** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “but the upright enjoy favor together” or “but God’s favor is experienced together among the upright” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **bitterness** - “sorrow” or “sadness”
- **no stranger** - “those who do not know him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The family of the wicked will be destroyed,

but a little tent where the upright live will grow, like a tree grows into something grand.

¹² A person sees a way, and it appears to be the right way for him to go, but he does not know that it only leads to death.

ULB:

¹¹ The house of wicked people will be destroyed,

but the tent of upright people will flourish.

¹² There is a way that seems right to a man,

but its end only leads to death.

translationWords:

- house
- upright, uprightness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- tent
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **the tent** - The word “tent” represents everything that happens within it. AT: “the household” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **flourish** - The word “flourish” means vigorous blooming of flowers and so represents anything that grows strongly. AT: “to do well and last long” or “to be healthy” or “to be very successful” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **There is a way that seems right to a man** - The word “way” represents the conduct of life a person follows. AT: “People think that the way they are living is the right way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A person can be in great pain and still be able to laugh;
a time of great joy may end in grief.

¹⁴ The faithless man will receive from Yahweh what he deserves;
but Yahweh will give a good person what is his.

ULB:

¹³ A heart can laugh but still be in pain
and joy may end up being grief.

¹⁴ The one who is not faithful will get what his ways deserve,
but a good person will get what is his.

translationWords:

- heart
- joy, joyful
- faithful, faithfulness
- good, goodness

translationNotes:

- **A heart can laugh** - The word “heart” represents a person’s feelings, attitudes and motivations. AT: “A person’s feelings can show laughter” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **be in pain** - “experience pain” or “hurt”
- **The one who** - “The person who”
- **what his ways deserve** - The word “ways” represents a person’s conduct of life. AT: “what he deserves, based on how he lived” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what is his** - “what belongs to him” or “what he has a right to”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Those who have had no instruction believe everything they are told,
 but the man who has learned some knowledge thinks about what
 he will do.

¹⁶ A wise person sees evil and is afraid of it, and he turns away from it;
 the foolish person boldly throws aside every warning.

ULB:

¹⁵ The one who is naive believes everything,
 but the prudent man thinks about his steps.

¹⁶ A wise man fears and turns away from evil,
 but the fool confidently dismisses a warning.

translationWords:

- [believe, believe in, belief](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

translationNotes:

- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”
- **his steps** - Here the idea of footsteps represents a person’s behavior. AT: “his actions” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **turns away from evil** - Here evil is spoken of as if it were a place. AT: “avoids doing evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **confidently dismisses** - “boldly ignores”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 14 General Notes
- **Proverbs 14 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 14:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Those who get angry quickly do foolish things;

people hate those who make evil plans.

¹⁸ Those who have not been instructed have foolishness handed to them;

those who have learned a little knowledge are surrounded by it.

ULB:

¹⁷ One who is quick to become angry does foolish things,
and a person who makes evil schemes is hated.

¹⁸ The naive inherit foolishness,
but prudent people are crowned with knowledge.

translationWords:

- angry, anger
- fool, foolish, folly
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **is quick to become angry** - “becomes angry quickly”
- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”
- **inherit foolishness** - Here “inherit” represents having permanent possession of something. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **foolishness** - The word “foolishness” is an abstract noun that represents foolish thinking and foolish actions.
- **prudent people** - “wise people”
- **are crowned with knowledge** - Here knowledge is spoken of as if it were a beautiful ornament worn on one’s head, such as a turban with jewels. AT: “wear knowledge as a turban” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Evil people will bow down before those who are good,
and the wicked people will bow down at the gates of those who do right.

²⁰ The poor are hated even by their own companions,
but the rich have many friends.

ULB:

¹⁹ Evil people will bow down before those who are good
and those who are wicked will bow down at the gates of the righteous person.

²⁰ The poor person is hated even by his own companions,
but the rich people have many friends.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- bow, bow down
- gate, gate bar
- companion

translationNotes:

- **bow down** - This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. Here this one action represents all yielding to the more influential person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **at the gates of the righteous** - The word “gates” represents an entrance to meet with another. This means the wicked will have to wait for the righteous person and beg to enter his presence. AT: “to meet with the righteous person.” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The poor person is hated even by his own companions** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Everyone hates the poor person even his own neighbors” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 14 General Notes
- **Proverbs 14 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 14:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ It is sinful to have contempt for your neighbors;

but how fortunate are those who do kind things for the poor.

²² Those who plot with evil plans, do they not go astray?

But those who make plans for the good will receive love and faithfulness.

ULB:

²¹ The one who shows contempt for his neighbor is sinning,

but the one who shows favor to the poor is blessed.

²² Do not those who plot evil go astray?

But those who plan to do good will receive covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness.

translationWords:

- contempt, contemptible
- neighbor
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

translationNotes:

- **The one ... the one** - “The person ... the person”
- **the poor** - “poor people”
- **Do not those who plot evil go astray?** - The assumed answer to this question is “yes”. AT: “Those who plot evil will go astray.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **who plot evil** - “who make evil plans” or “who make plans to do evil things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:23-24**UDB:**

²³ If you work hard, you will make some money,
but where there is only talk, it leads to poverty.

²⁴ The reward of the wise is the wealth they have,
but the folly of fools only brings them more foolishness.

ULB:

²³ With all hard work comes a profit,
but when there is only talk, it leads to poverty.

²⁴ The crown of wise people is their wealth,
but the folly of fools brings them only more folly.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- profit, profitable
- crown, to crown
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **but when there is only talk** - “but if you only talk” or “but when all a person does is talking”
- **The crown of wise people** - The word “crown” represents the highest achievement possible and visible to all. AT: “The reward of wise people” (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the folly of fools** - Translate this phrase as in [14:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:25**UDB:**

²⁵ A witness who tells the truth, saves the lives of the innocent;
a lying witness is filled with deceit.

ULB:

²⁵ A truthful witness saves lives,
but a false witness breathes out lies.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- witness, eyewitness
- save, safe
- life, live, living, alive
- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report

translationNotes:

- **breathes out lies** - This figure of speech uses “breathes” to refer to lying constantly. See how you translated this phrase in [6:19](#). AT: “constantly lies” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Those give Yahweh the honor he deserves

have much confidence in him;

giving honor to Yahweh will also protect your children.

²⁷ Giving Yahweh the honor he deserves is like having a fountain that gives life;

so you can keep away from being trapped by death.

ULB:

²⁶ When someone fears Yahweh, he also has much confidence in him;

these things will be like a strong place of protection for this man's children.

²⁷ The fear of Yahweh is a fountain of life,

so that a person may turn away from the snares of death.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- confidence, confident
- children, child
- fountain, spring
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **fountain of life** - A "fountain" is a bountiful source of water and represents here the source of life. AT: "source of life" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **from the snares of death** - A "snare" is a sort of trap used to hunt animals and represents something tricky and dangerous that will kill. AT: "from the trap that will kill" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ A king measures his glory by the number of the people in his kingdom,
but if the prince has no people, he is brought to ruin.

²⁹ Those who do not quickly become angry have much understanding;
the quick-tempered praise foolishness.

ULB:

²⁸ The glory of a king is found in the great number of his people,
but without people the prince is ruined.

²⁹ A patient person has great understanding,
but the quick-tempered person exalts folly.

translationWords:

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [king](#)
- [prince, princess](#)
- [patient, patience](#)
- [exalt, exaltation](#)

translationNotes:

- **the great number of his people** - “how many people he rules”
- **the prince is ruined** - “the prince has nothing and his kingdom will fall”
- **the quick-tempered** - a person who is quick to become angry

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Being at peace is good for the whole body,
but having evil within, rots the bones.

³¹ The one who oppresses a poor person curses Yahweh who made him,
but those who show favor to a poor person honor Yahweh.

ULB:

³⁰ A tranquil heart is life for the body,
but envy rots the bones.
³¹ The one who oppresses the poor curses his Maker,
but the one who shows favor to the needy honors him.

translationWords:

- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- body
- envy, covet
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- curse, cursed
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **A tranquil heart** - “A peaceful mindset” or “An attitude that is at peace”
- **rots the bones** - The word “rots” represents the decay of a person and “bones” represents the whole person. AT: “causes a person to be unhealthy in body and spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The one who ... the one who** - “The person who ... the person who”
- **curses** - This means to express a desire that bad things will happen to someone.
- **the poor ... the needy** - “a poor person ... a needy person”
- **shows favor to** - “is kind to” or “helps”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:32-33**UDB:**

³² The wicked person is brought down by his evil actions,

but those who do what is right have a safe home, even in death.

³³ Wisdom finds a place to rest in someone who has discernment,

but wisdom lets herself be known even among fools.

ULB:

³² The wicked person is brought down by his evil actions,

but the righteous person has a refuge even in death.

³³ Wisdom rests in the heart of the discerning,

but even among fools she lets herself be known.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- refuge, shelter
- death, die, dead
- wise, wisdom
- heart
- discern, discernment
- fool, foolish, folly
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **is brought down by his evil actions** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “evil actions push over” or “evil actions destroy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Wisdom rests in the heart** - The word “heart” represents the feelings, attitudes and motivations of a person. AT: “Wisdom is in the attitude” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the discerning** - “a discerning person”
- **she lets herself be known** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “she makes sure people know her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **she** - The word “she” refers to wisdom. (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 14:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ When a people do what is right, the nation does well,
but sin brings disgrace upon any people.

³⁵ A king is pleased with a servant who does his work with good judgment,
but the king is angry with any servant who brings shame to him.

ULB:

³⁴ Doing what is right exalts a nation,
but sin is a disgrace to any people.

³⁵ The favor of the king is with the servant who acts prudently,
but his anger is for the one who acts shamefully.

translationWords:

- exalt, exaltation
- nation
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- king
- servant, slave, slavery
- angry, anger
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **disgrace** - “bring shame upon”
- **prudently** - “wisely”
- **the one who** - “the servant who”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 14 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 14 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 15 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 15:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 15:1-2**UDB:**

¹ A gentle answer turns away anger,

but a harsh reply stirs up anger even more.

² When wise people speak, they give praise to the value of knowledge;

foolish people continually say foolish things.

ULB:

15 ¹ A gentle answer turns away wrath,

but a harsh word stirs up anger.

² The tongue of wise people compliments knowledge,

but the mouth of fools pours out folly.

translationWords:

- turn, turn away, turn back
- wrath, fury
- word
- angry, anger
- tongue
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **A gentle answer turns away wrath** - Causing a person to stop being angry is spoken of as if it were turning that person's wrath away. AT: "Answering a person gently will calm that person's wrath" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but a harsh word stirs up anger** - Causing a person to become more angry is spoken of as if it were stirring up or awakening anger. AT: "but speaking harshly causes that person to become more angry" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The tongue of wise people compliments knowledge** - Here the word "tongue" refers to the person who speaks. AT: "Wise people compliment knowledge when they speak" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **compliments knowledge** - "makes knowledge attractive" or "uses knowledge correctly"

- **the mouth of fools pours out folly** - The writer speaks of fools' mouths as if they were containers and of folly as if it were the liquid that filled them. When fools speak, their mouths pour out the liquid. The word "mouth" represents those who speak. AT: "fools are always speaking folly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:3-4**UDB:**

³ Yahweh sees everything that is happening;

he keeps account of the evil and of the good.

⁴ A person who can give healing with what they say is like a tree that gives life;

when someone lies to you, it can feel like they have crushed you.

ULB:

³ The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good.

⁴ A healing tongue is a tree of life,
but a deceitful tongue crushes the spirit.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- watch, watchman
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- tongue
- life, live, living, alive
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere** - Here the word “eyes” represents Yahweh’s ability to see. AT: “Yahweh sees everything” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the evil and the good** - The words “evil” and “good” refer to people. AT: “evil people and good people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **A healing tongue is a tree of life** - The word “tongue” refers to speech. The writer speaks of the words of a person who says things that help and encourage others as if they were a tree that provides life-giving nourishment. AT: “Kind words are like a tree that gives life” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **a deceitful tongue crushes the spirit** - The phrase “a deceitful tongue” refers to speech that is deceitful or hurtful. The writer speaks of a person being hurt or in despair as if that person’s spirit were an object that words have crushed. AT: “deceitful speech causes a person to despair” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ A fool has contempt for his father when he disciplines him,

but the one who learns from correction has insight.

⁶ In the families of those who do right there are great treasures,

but the wealth that the wicked have gives them great troubles.

ULB:

⁵ A fool has contempt for his father's instruction,

but he who learns from correction is prudent.

⁶ In the house of the righteous person there is great treasure,

but the earnings of the wicked person give him trouble.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- contempt, contemptible
- discipline, self-discipline
- house
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trouble, troubles, troubled

translationNotes:

- **he who learns from correction** - The word "correction" can be translated as a verb. AT: "he who learns when someone corrects him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **prudent** - "wise"
- **the earnings of the wicked person give** - The word "earnings" can be translated as a verbal phrase. AT: "the wealth that a wicked person earns gives" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The wise scatter knowledge about like the farmer scatters his seed,
but the hearts of fools are not so generous.

⁸ Yahweh hates it when the wicked offer their sacrifices,
but when those who please him pray, he is delighted.

ULB:

⁷ The lips of wise people scatter knowledge about,
but not so the hearts of fools.

⁸ Yahweh hates the sacrifices of wicked people,
but the prayer of upright people is his delight.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- heart
- fool, foolish, folly
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, offering
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- pray, prayer

translationNotes:

- **The lips of wise people scatter knowledge about** - The word “lips” represents what wise people say. The writer speaks of knowledge as if it were seeds that wise people scatter around when they speak. AT: “The speech of wise people spreads knowledge” (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)
- **not so the hearts of fools** - Possible meanings are 1) the word “hearts” is synecdoche for the fools themselves and means that they do not scatter knowledge like wise people do. AT: “fools do not scatter knowledge about” or 2) fools do not have knowledge in their hearts, with “hearts” being a metonym for the thoughts. AT: “fools do not understand knowledge” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Metonymy**)
- **upright people** - “people who live rightly”
- **is his delight** - “pleases him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:9-10**UDB:**

- ⁹ Yahweh hates the way the wicked live,
 but he loves the one who runs after what is right.
¹⁰ Yahweh will discipline those who lose their way,
 and those who hate correction will die.

ULB:

- ⁹ Yahweh hates the way of wicked people,
 but he loves the one who pursues what is right.
¹⁰ Harsh discipline awaits anyone who forsakes the way
 and he who hates correction will die.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- love
- discipline, self-discipline
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh hates the way of wicked people** - The lifestyles of wicked people are spoken of as if they are paths on which those people walk. AT: “Yahweh hates the way that wicked people live” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the one who pursues what is right** - Being diligent to live rightly is spoken of as if it were chasing after right things. AT: “the person who strives to live rightly” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **anyone who forsakes the way** - Here “the way” refers to the way of righteousness. A person who stops doing what is right is spoken of as if he has stopped walking on the correct path. AT: “anyone who stops living rightly” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **he who hates correction** - The word “correction” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the person who hates it when others correct him” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The places of death and destruction are known to Yahweh;

how much more does Yahweh know everything within the minds
of the people he has made?

¹² The one who thinks he is better than anyone, he resents being corrected
by anyone;

he thinks he is so smart, he will never talk with one who is wise.

ULB:

¹¹ Sheol and destruction are open before Yahweh;

how much more the hearts of the sons of mankind?

¹² The mocker resents correction;

he will not go to the wise.

translationWords:

- **hades, sheol**
- **Yahweh**
- **heart**
- **mock, ridicule, scoff at**
- **wise, wisdom**

translationNotes:

- **Sheol and destruction are open before Yahweh** - The words “Sheol and destruction” both refer to the place of the dead. Yahweh knowing everything about the place of the dead is spoken of as if it were open before Yahweh. AT: “Yahweh knows everything about the place where dead people are” (See: **Doublet** and **Metaphor**)
- **how much more the hearts of the sons of mankind?** - This rhetorical question emphasizes that since Yahweh knows everything about the place of the dead, it is more obvious that he knows everything about the hearts of men. AT: “so he certainly knows the hearts of the sons of mankind!” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

- **the hearts of the sons of mankind** - Here the word “hearts” represents the thoughts and motivations. The phrase “the sons of mankind” is an idiom for humanity. AT: “the thoughts of humans” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **The mocker resents correction** - The word “correction” can be translated with a verbal form. AT: “The mocker hates when others correct him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **he will not go to the wise** - It is implied that he will not go to the wise to seek their counsel or advice. AT: “he will not go to the wise to seek their counsel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ When people are happy, they have smiles on their faces,
but sadness is so strong it crushes the person.

¹⁴ The longing of the one who is wise is to gain more knowledge,
but foolish people only say foolish things.

ULB:

¹³ A joyful heart makes the face cheerful,
but heartache crushes the spirit.

¹⁴ The heart of the discerning seeks knowledge,
but the mouth of fools feeds on folly.

translationWords:

- joy, joyful
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- discern, discernment
- know, knowledge, make known
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **A joyful heart makes the face cheerful** - Here the word “heart” represents the person. AT: “When a person is joyful, his face is cheerful” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **crushes the spirit** - The writer speaks of a person being discouraged as if that person’s spirit were an object that is crushed. See how you translated this in [15:4](#). AT: “makes a person discouraged” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The heart of the discerning** - Here the word “heart” represents the mind and thoughts. AT: “The mind of the discerning person” or “The discerning person” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

- **the mouth of fools feeds on folly** - Here the word “mouth” represents the person. The writer speaks of fools desiring foolish things as if they ate foolish things. AT: “foolish people desire folly as if it were the food that they eat” (See [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Every day for one who is oppressed is misery for him,

but those who have a happy heart, for them life is a never-ending party.

¹⁶ It is much better to have only a little and to give Yahweh the honor he deserves,

than to have great wealth along with much confusion.

ULB:

¹⁵ All the days of oppressed people are miserable,

but a cheerful heart has an unending feast.

¹⁶ Better is little with the fear of Yahweh

than great treasure with confusion.

translationWords:

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- heart
- feast
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **All the days of oppressed people are miserable** - “Oppressed people are miserable all of their days”
- **a cheerful heart has an unending feast** - Here the word “heart” represents the person. The writer speaks of a cheerful person enjoying life as if that person were celebrating a feast that does not end. AT: “the cheerful person enjoys life, as if he were celebrating an unending feast” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **an unending feast** - “a feast that never ends”
- **confusion** - “anxiety”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ It is better to have a simple meal with vegetables when there is love in the home,
 than to enjoy a delicious meal served by people who hate you.

¹⁸ When a person is angry, he stirs up more arguments,
 but one who does not quickly become angry, he is able to stop an
 argument and make peace.

ULB:

¹⁷ Better is a meal with vegetables where there is love
 than a fatted calf served with hatred.

¹⁸ An angry man stirs up arguments,
 but a person who is slow to anger quiets a quarrel.

translationWords:

- love
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- serve, service
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **a meal with vegetables** - The vegetables represent a small meal with very little food. AT: “a small meal” or “very little food” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **where there is love** - The word “love” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “where people love one another” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **a fatted calf served with hatred** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “a fatted calf that someone serves with hatred” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a fatted calf** - This refers to a calf that has been fed a lot of food so that it will become fat. Here it represents a delicious meal or a feast. AT: “a luxurious meal” or “a feast” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **with hatred** - The word “hatred” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “where people hate one another” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

- **stirs up arguments** - Causing people to argue more is spoken of as if it were stirring up or awakening arguments. AT: “causes people to argue more” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ The life of a lazy person is like someone trying to walk through a hedge of thorns,
 but those who do what pleases Yahweh are like those who are
 walking on a level highway.

²⁰ A wise child brings happiness to his father,
 but it is a foolish person who despises his mother.

ULB:

¹⁹ The path of the sluggard is like a place with a hedge of thorns,
 but the path of the upright is a built-up highway.

²⁰ A wise son brings joy to his father,
 but a foolish person despises his mother.

translationWords:

- upright, uprightness
- wise, wisdom
- son, son of
- joy, joyful
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **The path of the sluggard ... the path of the upright** - The writer speaks of a person's life as if it were a path on which the person walks. AT: "The life of the sluggard ... the life of the upright" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The path of the sluggard is like a place with a hedge of thorns** - The writer compares the lifestyle of the sluggard with trying to walk through a hedge of thorns. Both cause the person to suffer pain. AT: "The life of the sluggard is like a person trying to walk through a hedge of thorns" (See: [Simile](#))
- **the path of the upright is a built-up highway** - The writer speaks of the blessings that upright people experience in life as if they were walking on a smooth road. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **built-up highway** - This is a road that is wide, flat, and without obstacles or potholes.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Foolish people enjoy their folly;

those who have insight live a good life.

²² When there is no one giving advice, plans go wrong,

but with many advisors, they will succeed.

ULB:

²¹ Folly delights a person who lacks sense,

but the one who has understanding walks a straight path.

²² Plans go wrong where there is no advice,

but with numerous advisors they succeed.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- walk

translationNotes:

- **the one who has understanding walks a straight path** - The writer speaks of a person doing the right thing as if he were walking straight ahead on a path. AT: “the person who has understanding does what is right” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Plans go wrong** - “Plans fail”
- **where there is no advice** - “when there is no one to give advice”
- **advisors** - people who give recommendations as a guide to action
- **they succeed** - “plans succeed”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:23-24**UDB:**

²³ People rejoice when they give a good answer,

and how nice is the right word spoken at the right moment.

²⁴ The path leading to life goes up, away from death;

he follows that way and turns from the place of the dead.

ULB:

²³ A person finds joy when he gives a pertinent reply;

how good is a timely word!

²⁴ The path of life leads upward for prudent people,

that they may turn away from Sheol beneath.

translationWords:

- joy, joyful
- good, goodness
- word
- life, live, living, alive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- hades, sheol

translationNotes:

- **a pertinent reply** - “a fitting reply” or “an appropriate answer”
- **how good is a timely word** - This exclamation emphasizes that a word spoken at the right time is very good. AT: “a word that a person speaks at the right time is very good” (See: [Exclamations](#))
- **The path of life leads upward ... from Sheol beneath** - The writer speaks of a lifestyle that results in life as if it were a path that goes upward towards life and of a lifestyle that results in death as if it were a path that leads down to the place of the dead. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Yahweh destroys the generations of proud people,

but he protects the little owned by a widow.

²⁶ Yahweh hates what wicked people are thinking about,

but when people say what is kind, they are pure.

ULB:

²⁵ Yahweh tears down the legacy of the proud,

but he protects the property of the widow.

²⁶ Yahweh hates the thoughts of wicked people,

but the words of kindness are pure.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **legacy** - “house.” This refers to household, property, and wealth.
- **the words of kindness are pure** - “kind words are pure” or “pleasant words are pure”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ The thief brings many troubles to his family,
but the one who refuses to accept bribes will live.

²⁸ The people who do right think carefully before they answer;
it is like the wicked pour out of their mouths all kinds of evil when
they talk.

ULB:

²⁷ The robber brings trouble to his family,
but the one who hates bribes will live.
²⁸ The heart of the righteous person ponders before it answers,
but the mouth of wicked people pours out all its evil.

translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- family
- bribe
- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **The heart of the righteous person ponders before it answers** - Here the word “heart” is a metonym for the mind and thoughts. This represents the person who thinks. AT: “The person who does right ponders what to say before he answers” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **the mouth of wicked people pours out all its evil** - The writer speaks of wicked people’s mouths as if they were containers and speaks of evil as if it were the liquid that filled them. When wicked people speak, their mouths pour out the liquid. The word “mouths” represents those who speak. AT: “wicked people are always saying evil things” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **the mouth of wicked people pours out all its evil** - It may be more natural in you language to translate all these words as either singular or plural. AT: “the mouth of the wicked person pours out all its evil” or “the mouths of wicked people pour out all their evil”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Yahweh is far away from wicked people,

but he listens to the prayers of those who do what is right.

³⁰ When people smile, it makes them happy,

and good news brings healing to the body.

ULB:

²⁹ Yahweh is far away from wicked people,

but he hears the prayer of righteous people.

³⁰ The light of the eyes brings joy to the heart

and good news is health to the body.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- pray, prayer
- joy, joyful
- heart
- body

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh is far away from wicked people** - The writer speaks of Yahweh not listening to wicked people as if he were physically far away from them. AT: “Yahweh does not listen to wicked people” or “Yahweh does not answer wicked people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The light of the eyes** - The writer speaks of an expression of joy on one’s face as if the person’s eyes emitted light. AT: “A cheerful expression” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **brings joy to the heart** - The word “heart” represents the person. Possible meanings are 1) the person who has a cheerful expression becomes joyful or 2) other people become joyful when they see someone with a cheerful expression. AT: “causes a person to be joyful” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **good news is health to the body** - Here the word “body” represents the person. AT: “receiving good news makes a person feel good” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ If you pay attention when someone corrects you,

you will stay among those who are wise.

³² The one who refuses to follow discipline, despises himself;

the one who receives correction gains understanding as well.

ULB:

³¹ If you pay attention when someone corrects how you live,
you will remain among wise people.

³² The one who rejects discipline despises himself,
but he who listens to correction gains understanding.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [discipline, self-discipline](#)

translationNotes:

- **you will remain among wise people** - Possible meanings are 1) people will continue to consider you to be a wise person or 2) you will continue to enjoy the company of wise people.
- **listens to correction** - The word “correction” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “listens when others correct him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 15:33**UDB:**

³³ The honor that Yahweh deserves will be the lesson that will teach you wisdom,
and then humility comes before honor.

ULB:

³³ The fear of Yahweh teaches wisdom
and humility comes before honor.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- wise, wisdom
- humble, humility
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **The fear of Yahweh teaches wisdom** - The words “fear” and “wisdom” can be translated with verbal phrases. AT: “When one fears Yahweh, he will learn to be wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **The fear of Yahweh** - Translate this phrase in the same way you did in [1:7](#).
- **humility comes before honor** - This means that a person must first learn humility before Yahweh will honor him.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 15 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 15 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 16 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

King and Royalty

Some of these proverbs mention a king. As in other cases, this is intended to apply to all rulers.

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 16:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 16:1-2**UDB:**

¹ People make plans out of their longings deep within them,
but it is Yahweh who tells him what will happen.

² A person sees nothing wrong with what he does,
but Yahweh measures every part of what a person does according
to his purposes.

ULB:

16 ¹ The plans of the heart belong to a person,
but from Yahweh comes the answer from his tongue.

² All of a person's ways are pure in his own eyes,
but Yahweh weighs the spirits.

translationWords:

- heart
- Yahweh
- tongue
- pure, purify, purification
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **The plans of the heart belong to a person** - Here the word "heart" represents the person's mind and thoughts. AT: "A person makes plans in his mind" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **from Yahweh comes the answer from his tongue** - Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh speaks his answer to a person's plans, which is a metaphor meaning that Yahweh determines the outcome of that person's plans or 2) Yahweh enables a person to speak words about the plans that he has made. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the answer from his tongue** - This phrase is a metonym for the words that one speaks. AT: "the answer that he speaks" (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **All of a person's ways are pure in his own eyes** - The word "eyes" is a metonym for the way a person thinks about right and wrong. The writer speaks of what a person does as if that person were walking down a path. AT: "A person thinks that everything he does is pure" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh weighs the spirits** - Here the word "spirits" represents people's desires and motives. The writer speaks of Yahweh discerning and judging a person's desires and motives as if he were weighing that person's spirit. AT: "Yahweh judges the person's motives" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:3-4**UDB:**

³ When you work, give all your ideas and your labor to Yahweh,
and your plans will be successful.

⁴ When Yahweh made everything, he made them so they would all accomplish something for him.

He has even made the wicked for the day when there is great trouble.

ULB:

³ Commit your works to Yahweh
and your plans will succeed.

⁴ Yahweh has made everything for its purpose,
even the wicked for the day of trouble.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- trouble, troubles, troubled

translationNotes:

- **even the wicked for the day of trouble** - The verbal phrase may be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: “he has made even the wicked for the day of trouble” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Yahweh hates those whose pride comes from deep within them.

But you can be sure of this: they will still be punished for their pride.

⁶ Love and faithfulness will cover over sin and forgive sin.

When people give Yahweh the respect he deserves, they will be able to turn away from doing what is evil.

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh hates everyone who has an arrogant heart, but be sure of this, they will not go unpunished.

⁶ By covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness iniquity is atoned for and by the fear of Yahweh people turn away from evil.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- arrogant
- heart
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- iniquity
- atonement, atone
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **everyone who has an arrogant heart** - Here the word “heart” represents the person. AT: “everyone who is arrogant” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **they will not go unpunished** - The two negatives in this phrase strongly emphasize the positive. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will certainly punish them” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

- **By covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness iniquity is atoned for** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh atones for iniquity by covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **people turn away from evil** - The writer speaks of people no longer doing evil things as if they were turning away from evil. AT: “people stop doing evil things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:7-8**UDB:**

- ⁷ When a person pleases Yahweh by the way he lives his life,
he even causes that person's enemies to get along with him.
- ⁸ It is better to have a little money and to follow what is right,
than to have a large amount of money and to live by spreading in-
justice.

ULB:

- ⁷ When a person's ways are pleasing to Yahweh,
he makes even that person's enemies to be at peace with him.
- ⁸ Better is a little with what is right,
than a large income with injustice.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)

translationNotes:

- **he makes** - "Yahweh makes"
- **a large income** - "earning a lot of money"
- **injustice** - "wrongdoing"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ From deep within a person come the plans he makes,
but Yahweh leads the person in each step he takes.

¹⁰ A king can speak with inspired judgment;
and when he makes a ruling, it is good and true.

ULB:

⁹ In his heart a person plans out his way,
but Yahweh directs his steps.

¹⁰ An oracle is on the lips of a king,
in judgment his mouth does not speak deceitfully.

translationWords:

- heart
- Yahweh
- king
- judge, judgment
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

translationNotes:

- **In his heart a person plans out his way** - Here the word “heart” represents the mind and thoughts. The writer speaks of a person’s actions as if the person were walking on a path. AT: “A person plans in his mind what he will do” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **Yahweh directs his steps** - The writer speaks of Yahweh determining the outcome of a person’s plans as if Yahweh were telling that person where to walk. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **An oracle is on the lips of a king** - Here the word “lips” is a metonym for what the king says. AT: “What a king says is an oracle” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **An oracle** - a decision from God, a divine verdict
- **in judgment his mouth does not speak deceitfully** - The word “mouth” represents the king himself. AT: “when he pronounces judgment, he does not speak deceitfully” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

- **his mouth does not speak deceitfully** - This can be stated in positive terms. AT: “he speaks truthfully” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Honest scales come from Yahweh;

it is he who decided how much each unit should weigh.

¹² We should hate it when kings do wicked things,

for the throne is set on a firm foundation when the king does what is right.

ULB:

¹¹ Honest scales come from Yahweh;

all the weights in the bag are his work.

¹² When kings do wicked things, that is something to be despised,

for a throne is established by doing what is right.

translationWords:

- **Yahweh**
- **works, deeds, work, acts**
- **evil, wicked, wickedness**
- **throne**

translationNotes:

- **Honest scales come from Yahweh** - Yahweh requires justice and fairness when doing business. Dishonest people used heavier or lighter weights in their scales in order to gain more when buying or selling. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **all the weights in the bag are his work** - Merchants carried their weights in bags. Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh has determined how much every weight must weigh or 2) Yahweh is concerned with every weight that a merchant uses.
- **that is something to be despised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “that is something that people despise” or “that is something that Yahweh despises” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **for a throne is established by doing what is right** - Here the word “throne” represents the king’s rule. This can be stated in active form. AT: “for the king establishes his reign by doing what is right” (See: **Metonymy** and **Active or Passive**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A king is happy when he hears someone speaking what is right;
and he loves the one who is direct when he talks.

¹⁴ If a king becomes angry, his wrath is a danger that can kill;
so wise people will try to calm him so that he is not too angry.

ULB:

¹³ A king delights in lips that say what is right
and he loves the one who speaks directly.

¹⁴ A king's wrath is a messenger of death
but a wise man will try to calm his anger.

translationWords:

- king
- love
- wrath, fury
- messenger
- death, die, dead
- wise, wisdom
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **lips that say what is right** - Here the word "lips" represents the person who speaks. AT: "a person who speaks the truth" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **A king's wrath is a messenger of death** - The writer speaks of an angry king causing someone to die as if the king's wrath were a messenger that he sends out to kill someone. AT: "An angry king can put people to death" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ In a king's smile there is life;

when he is happy, he is like the cloud that brings the spring rain.

¹⁶ Becoming wise is better than having gold;

getting good understanding is better than having silver.

ULB:

¹⁵ In the light of a king's face is life

and his favor is like a cloud that brings a spring rain.

¹⁶ How much better it is to get wisdom than gold.

To get understanding should be chosen more than silver.

translationWords:

- king
- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- wise, wisdom
- gold
- silver

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verse 15 contrasts with verse 14.
- **In the light of a king's face is life** - The writer speaks of an expression of joy on the king's face as if his face emitted light. AT: "When the king is cheerful, people live" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **his favor is like a cloud that brings a spring rain** - The writer compares the king showing favor towards someone with a cloud that brings rain to make crops grow. Both promise blessing to those who receive them. (See: **Simile**)
- **How much better it is to get wisdom than gold** - This exclamation emphasizes that having wisdom is much better than having gold. AT: "It is much better to get wisdom than to get gold" (See: **Exclamations**)

- **To get understanding should be chosen more than silver** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “A person should choose to get understanding more than to get silver” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ The one who lives in the way that is right will turn away from doing evil;
 whoever is careful about how he lives his life
 will preserve his life.

¹⁸ Pride happens to someone first, and then he perishes.
 If someone thinks he is better than others,
 he will have a terrible fall.

ULB:

¹⁷ The highway of upright people turns away from evil;
 the one who protects his life guards his way.
¹⁸ Pride comes before destruction
 and a haughty spirit before a downfall.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- life, live, living, alive
- proud, pride, prideful
- haughty
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **The highway of upright people** - The writer speaks of the lifestyle of upright people as if it were a well-built road, free of obstacles. AT: “The righteous way that upright people live” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **turns away from evil** - The writer speaks of avoiding or no longer doing evil things as if it were turning away from evil. AT: “keeps them from doing evil” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **a haughty spirit** - Here the word “spirit” represents the person’s attitude and temperament. AT: “an arrogant attitude” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a downfall** - “ruin” or “failure”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ It is better to be humble and live among the poor
than to receive a portion of what proud people took by force.

²⁰ Those who think about what they have been taught
find many good things in the lesson;
how fortunate are those who put their trust in Yahweh.

ULB:

¹⁹ It is better to be humble among poor people
than to divide the spoil with proud people.
²⁰ Whoever contemplates what they are taught will find what is good,
and those who trust in Yahweh will be blessed.

translationWords:

- [humble, humility](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **spoil** - goods taken in battle
- **what they are taught** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “what someone has taught them” or “what they have learned” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ One who has wisdom deep inside him is given the title, “discerning,”

and those who speak in a way that can be understood

and can motivate their hearers, teach well.

²² When you understand, it is as if you have found a fountain of life within you;

but fools find their punishment when their foolishness comes back to them.

ULB:

²¹ The one who is wise in heart is called discerning

and sweetness of speech improves the ability to teach.

²² Understanding is a fountain of life to the one who has it,

but the instruction of fools is their foolishness.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- heart
- discern, discernment
- fountain, spring
- life, live, living, alive
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **The one who is wise in heart is called discerning** - This person will have a reputation of being a discerning person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “People will call the one who is wise in heart discerning” or “The one who is wise in heart will have a reputation of being a discerning person” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **The one who is wise in heart** - Here the heart represents the mind and thoughts. AT: “The one who is wise” or “The one who is wise in his thinking” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **sweetness of speech** - The writer speaks of kind or pleasant speech as if it were something that tastes sweet. AT: “kind speech” or “pleasant speech” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Understanding is a fountain of life** - The writer speaks of “Understanding” as if it were a fountain that continuously flows with water and which sustains the life of those who drink from it. AT: “Understanding is like a fountain flowing with life-giving water” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:23-24**UDB:**

²³ From deep within him, the wise person speaks from the insight he has learned;
and so when he speaks he has the power to persuade others.

²⁴ Kind words are like a honeycomb;
they are sweet for us to take in,
and they give healing to our bodies.

ULB:

²³ The heart of a wise person gives insight to his mouth
and adds persuasiveness to his lips.

²⁴ Pleasant words are a honeycomb—
sweet to the soul and healing to the bones.

translationWords:

- heart
- wise, wisdom
- word
- honey, honeycomb
- soul
- heal, cure

translationNotes:

- **The heart of a wise person gives** - Here the word “heart” represents the mind and thoughts. AT: “The thoughts of a wise person gives” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **gives insight to his mouth** - Here the word “mouth” is a metonym for speech. AT: “makes his speech wise” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **to his lips** - Here the word “lips” is a metonym for speech. AT: “to what he says” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Pleasant words are a honeycomb** - The writer speaks of pleasant words being able to bring delight to the hearers as if the words were a honeycomb dripping with fresh honey. AT: “Pleasant words are like a honeycomb” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **sweet to the soul** - Possible meanings for the word “soul” are 1) it represents a person’s inward desires and pleasures. AT: “sweet enough to make a person happy” or 2) it can mean “throat” and is a metonym for a person’s tongue and ability to taste. AT: “sweet to a person’s taste” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **healing to the bones** - Here the word “bones” represent a person’s body. AT: “healing to the body” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ A person lives out his life and he thinks he is doing what is right,
but when he comes to the end of his life, all he finds is death.

²⁶ A worker's appetite drives him to work harder,
his hunger urges him to keep working.

ULB:

²⁵ There is a way that seems right to a man,
but its end is the way to death.

²⁶ The laborer's appetite works for him;
his hunger urges him on.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- labor, laborer
- works, deeds, work, acts

translationNotes:

- **There is a way that seems right to a man** - The writer speaks of a person's conduct or behavior as if it were a road on which the person is traveling. AT: "A person thinks that the way he is living is right" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **but its end is the way to death** - The word "its" refers to "way" in the previous line. This "way" is the road that leads to death.
- **The laborer's appetite works for him** - The writer speaks of the appetite as if it were a person who works on behalf of the laborer. This means that the person who labors is motivated by his desire to eat. AT: "The laborer works to satisfy his appetite" (See: **Personification**)
- **his hunger urges him on** - The writer speaks of "hunger" as if it were a person who urges the laborer to continue working. AT: "he keeps on working because he is hungry" (See: **Personification**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ A worthless man digs and digs until he finds something

he can use to embarrass someone and cause them trouble;
and what he says about them is like a fire that burns the field.

²⁸ A person who has no morals stirs up conflict between people;
and those who spread rumors pull friends apart.

ULB:

²⁷ A worthless person digs up mischief
and his speech is like a scorching fire.

²⁸ A perverse person stirs up conflict
and a gossip separates close friends.

translationWords:

- fire
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- gossip

translationNotes:

- **A worthless person digs up mischief** - The writer speaks of a person trying to find ways to harm other people as if that person were digging in the ground to find something buried. AT: "A worthless person looks for mischief as if he were digging for something in the ground" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **worthless** - "useless" or "wicked"
- **mischief** - "evil" or "trouble"
- **his speech is like a scorching fire** - The writer compares the way this person's words hurt others with the way that fire burns things. AT: "he hurts people with his words, like a fire scorches the things it touches" (See: [Simile](#))
- **a gossip** - a person who gossips or spreads rumors

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ A violent person tells lies to his friend,

and he leads him down a path that will never find what is good.

³⁰ The one who winks the eye is signaling to others it is time to begin their terrible plot;

those who press their lips together, they do evil things.

ULB:

²⁹ A man of violence lies to his neighbor

and leads him down a path that is not good.

³⁰ The one who winks the eye is plotting perverse things;

those who purse the lips will bring evil to pass.

translationWords:

- neighbor
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **A man of violence lies to his neighbor** - It is implied that this man lies to his neighbor in order to get his neighbor to join him in violent actions. AT: "A man of violence entices his neighbor" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **A man of violence** - "A violent man" or "A man who practices violence"
- **leads him down a path that is not good** - The writer speaks of a person's actions as if they were a road on which the person walks. AT: "gets him to do things that are not good" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a path that is not good** - The writer uses an understatement to emphasize how bad this path is. AT: "a very bad path" or "a terrible path" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The one who winks the eye ... those who purse the lips** - Both of these are facial gestures which people might use to signal their plans to others. See how you translated "winks the eye" in [10:10](#).

- **will bring evil to pass** - “will do evil things”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ Gray hair is like a glorious crown;

it is given to those who live their lives

by doing what is right.

³² The one who is slow to get angry is stronger than a warrior;

the one who is self-controlled is mightier than one who conquers a city by force.

ULB:

³¹ Gray hair is a crown of glory;

it is gained by living the right way.

³² It is better to be slow to anger than to be a warrior

and one who rules his spirit is stronger than one who conquers a city.

translationWords:

- crown, to crown
- glory, glorious
- life, live, living, alive
- angry, anger
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **Gray hair is a crown of glory** - The writer speaks of gray hair as if it were a crown. “Gray hair” is a metonym for old age. AT: “A person who has lived long enough to have gray hair is like one who wears a glorious crown on his head” (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)
- **it is gained** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a person gains it” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **one who rules his spirit** - The writer speaks of a person being able to control his own temper and emotions as if he ruled over his spirit like a king rules his people. AT: “one who controls his temper” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 16:33**UDB:**

³³ The stones making up the “lot” are thrown into a person’s lap,

but Yahweh decides on which side of the stones they will stop rolling.

ULB:

³³ The lots are thrown into the lap,
but the decision is from Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **The lots are thrown into the lap** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “A person throws the lots into his lap” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the decision is from Yahweh** - Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh decides how the lots will land or 2) it is not the lots, but Yahweh who determines what will happen.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 16 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 16 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 17 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 17:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 17:1-2**UDB:**

¹ It is better to eat a dry piece of bread and not have strife

than to live in a house where quarreling is as regular as feasting.

² A slave who acts wisely will rule over the son of his master

if that son does shameful things.

That slave will receive a share of the inheritance and will be treated like one of his master's sons.

ULB:

17 ¹ It is better to have quiet with a dry morsel of bread

than a house full of feasting with strife.

² A wise servant will rule over a son who acts shamefully

and will share the inheritance as one of the brothers.

translationWords:

- bread
- strife
- wise, wisdom
- servant, slave, slavery
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- brother

translationNotes:

- **to have quiet** - Here “quiet” refers to “peace.” AT: “to have peace” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **than a house full of feasting with strife** - There are words missing here; “to have” or “to be in” may be added. AT: “than to be in a house full of feasting where there is strife” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:3-4**UDB:**

³ Silver is put into the crucible to be refined, and gold is put into the furnace to be made pure,
but it is Yahweh who makes people pure.

⁴ Those who do what is evil pay attention to the person who talks in wicked ways,
and those who tell lies listen to those who speak in order to make trouble.

ULB:

³ The crucible is for silver and the furnace is for gold,
but Yahweh refines hearts.

⁴ The evildoer pays attention to wicked lips;
a liar gives ear to a destructive tongue.

translationWords:

- silver
- furnace
- gold
- Yahweh
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **The crucible is for silver and the furnace is for gold** - This refers to how gold and silver are refined. A metal is refined by heating it to a high temperature so that it melts and the impurities may be removed. AT: "The crucible is used to refine silver and the furnace is used to refine gold" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **crucible** - a pot in which metals are melted at a very high temperature
- **Yahweh refines hearts** - This speaks of Yahweh testing people to help them stop being evil and foolish as if their hearts were a metal that Yahweh was refining to remove everything that is impure. AT: "Yahweh tests peoples' hearts" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **hearts** - Here people are referred to by their hearts to emphasize their thoughts and desires. AT: “people” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **wicked lips** - The word “lips” can be translated as either 1) a synecdoche for the person or 2) a metonym for the words that come out from those lips. AT: “a wicked person” or “wicked talk” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **gives ear** - “listens” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **destructive tongue** - The word “tongue” can be translated as either 1) a synecdoche for the person or 2) a metonym for the words that the tongue produces. AT: “a destructive person” or “destructive talk” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ The one who makes fun of those who are poor insults Yahweh who made him;

Yahweh will punish those who are happy when someone else has troubles.

⁶ Grandchildren bring honor and respect to the aged,
and parents bring honor to their children.

ULB:

⁵ Whoever mocks the poor insults his Maker
and the one who rejoices at misfortune will not go unpunished.

⁶ Grandchildren are the crown of the aged
and parents bring honor to their children.

translationWords:

- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- rejoice
- crown, to crown
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **the poor** - This refers to poor people. AT: “those who are poor” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **his Maker** - This is a name that refers to Yahweh. This is also an abstract noun that can be written as a verb. AT: “the one who made him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **at misfortune** - This refers to the misfortune of others. AT: “at others’ misfortune” or “at other peoples’ troubles” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **are the crown of** - This speaks of older peoples’ grandchildren being a sign of honor for them as if their grandchildren were a crown. AT: “bring honor and respect to” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the aged** - This refers to older people. AT: “those who are older” or “older people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ A fool is not able to give an eloquent speech;

even more is it wrong to lie to someone with a royal title.

⁸ A bribe works like magic for the one who is giving the bribe;

everything he tries to do by giving bribes succeeds.

ULB:

⁷ Eloquent speech is not suitable for a fool;

much less are lying lips suitable for royalty.

⁸ A bribe is like a magic stone to the one who gives it;

wherever he turns, he succeeds.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- bribe

translationNotes

- **Eloquent speech** - “Fine speech” or “Excellent speech”
- **much less are lying lips suitable for royalty** - This describes people lying as if it were actually their “lips” that were lying. AT: “even more it is not suitable for royalty to lie” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **A bribe is like a magic stone to the one who gives it** - This speaks of a person’s bribe working by comparing it to a magical stone or amulet. AT: “A bribe works like a magical stone for the one who gives it” or “A bribe works like magic for the one who is giving the bribe” (UDB) (See: [Simile](#))
- **wherever he turns** - Here “turning” refers to the various things the person does. Specifically, this refers to the different things the person does by bribery. AT: “in whatever he does” or “in everything he tries to do by giving bribes” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ You must learn not to be offended by the one you love,

but if you bring up something to your friend that hurt you, and you do it over and over,

that will pull the best of friends apart.

¹⁰ A rebuke to someone with understanding goes deeper into him

than trying to teach a fool by hitting him a hundred times with a stick.

ULB:

⁹ Whoever overlooks an offense seeks love,

but the one who repeats a matter alienates close friends.

¹⁰ A rebuke goes deeper into a person who has understanding

than a hundred blows go into a fool.

translationWords:

- love
- rebuke
- understand, understanding
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **offense** - something that hurts or angers a person
- **who repeats a matter** - This refers to bringing up a past situation in which a friend was hurt or offended. AT: “who repeats a past offense” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **alienates** - “separates”
- **A rebuke goes deeper into a person ... than a hundred blows go into a fool** - This compares how a rebuke effects a man of understanding to how a beating effects a fool. This speaks of the effect on these people as if it could be measured by the depth that it goes into them. AT: “A rebuke has more effect on a person ... than a hundred blows have on a fool” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **a person who has understanding** - “a person who has good judgment” The word “understand” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “a person who understands” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **a hundred blows go** - “a beating of a hundred blows goes”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ An evil person is only interested in disobeying the rules;

he deserves a messenger who will be cruel to him.

¹² You would be better off meeting a mother bear who had been robbed of her cubs

than to meet a fool who is being foolish.

ULB:

¹¹ An evil person only seeks rebellion,

so a cruel messenger will be sent against him.

¹² It is better to meet a bear robbed of her cubs

than to meet a fool in his foolishness.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- messenger
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **seeks rebellion** - The word “rebellion” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “seeks to rebel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **a cruel messenger will be sent against him** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a cruel messenger will come against him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **will be sent against him** - To be “sent against” someone means to be sent to harm them. AT: “will be sent to harm him” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **a bear robbed of her cubs** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a bear who has just lost her cubs” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **in his foolishness** - The word “foolishness” can be expressed as an adjective. AT: “who is acting foolish” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 17 General Notes
- **Proverbs 17 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 17:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ If someone gives back evil for the good that was given to him,
evil will stay in his family.

¹⁴ Starting a quarrel is like pumping water and letting it run everywhere;
it is much better to walk away before it starts.

ULB:

¹³ When someone returns evil for good,
evil will never leave his house.

¹⁴ The beginning of conflict is like one who releases water everywhere,
so walk away from the dispute before it has broken out.

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **evil will never leave his house** - Here “evil” is spoken of as if it were a person who would not leave the man’s house. Here the word “house” may be taken literally, but it is also a metonym for his family. AT: “bad things will continue to happen to him and his family” or “bad things will never stop happening to him and his family” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **The beginning of conflict is like one who releases water everywhere** - This compares how easily a conflict spreads to how spilled water flows everywhere. AT: “Starting a conflict is like pumping water and letting it run everywhere” (See: [Simile](#))
- **has broken out** - “starts” or “begins”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ When a court sets the wicked free and condemns those who do what is right,

Yahweh hates both of these actions.

¹⁶ There is no benefit for a fool when he pays money to learn about wisdom;

no matter how much he tries, he will not be able to learn about wisdom.

ULB:

¹⁵ The person who acquits the wicked person and the person who condemns the righteous person—

both are an abomination to Yahweh.

¹⁶ Why should a fool pay money to learn about wisdom,

when he has no ability to learn it?

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- condemn, condemnation
- abomination, abominable
- Yahweh
- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **The person who acquits the wicked person and the person who condemns the righteous person** - “The one who acquits wicked people and the one who condemns the righteous”
- **acquits** - justifies, declares someone not guilty
- **Why should a fool pay money to learn about wisdom, when he has no ability to learn it?** - This rhetorical question emphasizes that the fool should not do this. This question may be written as a statement. AT: “A fool should not pay money to learn about wisdom because he does not have the ability to learn it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ A friend loves you all the time,

and when you are in trouble, there is no one better than a brother to help you.

¹⁸ One having no good judgment will make a contract he cannot pay,

and he will even may a promise to pay the money his neighbor owes.

ULB:

¹⁷ A friend is loving at all times

and a brother is born for times of trouble.

¹⁸ A man having no sense makes binding promises

and becomes responsible for his neighbor's debts.

translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- promise
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **a brother is born for times of trouble** - One of the purposes of a brother is to be there to help his brother or sister in times of trouble. AT: "a brother is there for times of trouble" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **no sense** - "no good judgement" (UDB)
- **binding promises** - This refers to promises that must be kept and are often a burden on the person who made them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ The one who loves to have arguments, that person also loves the sin that lies behind the conflict;

one thing leads to another: the one who makes the threshold of his door too high, it is sure to make someone break the bones in his foot.

²⁰ A person who is dishonest because of what is within him, he will never find what is good,

and the one who tells lies will fall into trouble.

ULB:

¹⁹ Whoever loves conflict loves sin;

the one who makes the threshold of his door too high causes bones to be broken.

²⁰ A person who has a crooked heart finds nothing that is good;

the one who has a perverse tongue falls into calamity.

translationWords:

- love
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- threshold
- heart
- good, goodness
- tongue

translationNotes:

- **causes bones to be broken** - This means that someone will trip on the threshold and break bones, probably in their foot. AT: “is sure to cause someone trip and break their the bones in their foot” or “is sure to cause someone to trip and injure himself” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **who has a crooked heart** - The “heart” represents a person’s feelings, attitudes and motivations. AT: “who is deceptive” or “who is dishonest” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **has a perverse tongue** - The “tongue” represents a person’s speech. AT: “speaks perversely” or “speaks wickedly” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **falls into calamity** - “falls into trouble” To “fall into” something means to get into that situation. AT: “will have calamity” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ The father who has a fool brings sadness into his life;

the father of a fool cannot live a happy life.

²² Being cheerful is like medicine that makes you feel better,

but when you are crushed by sadness, it is as if every bone within you could break with only a touch.

ULB:

²¹ Whoever is the parent of a fool brings grief to himself;

and the father of a fool has no joy.

²² A cheerful heart is good medicine,

but a broken spirit dries up the bones.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- rejoice
- heart
- spirit, spiritual

translationNotes:

- **A cheerful heart is good medicine** - This speaks of a cheerful heart as being good medicine because it makes you feel better. AT: "A cheerful heart is like medicine that makes you feel better" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **A cheerful heart** - The "heart" represents a person's feelings, attitudes and motivations. AT: "Being cheerful" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a broken spirit** - Here the "spirit" represents a person's feelings and emotional state. A broken spirit refers to a poor emotional state. AT: "depression" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **dries up the bones** - A person's bones represent their physical health and strength. If a person's bones dry up it means that they are very sick and unhealthy. AT: "makes a person unhealthy and weak" (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:23-24**UDB:**

²³ A wicked person accepts a bribe in such a way as no one could see him,
so the bribe would change the verdict in his favor.

²⁴ The one who has begun to understand, he knows that he must also now
go after wisdom.

However, the foolish person has bold plans and impossible dreams,
and he looks for them no matter how far away they may be.

ULB:

²³ A wicked man accepts a secret bribe
to pervert the ways of justice.

²⁴ The one who has understanding sets his face toward wisdom,
but the eyes of a fool are set on the ends of the earth.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- bribe
- just, justice, justly
- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **to pervert the ways of justice** - “to prevent justice from being rendered” or “to pervert justice”
- **sets his face toward wisdom** - This speaks of a person’s focus on acting wisely as if he were looking at wisdom. AT: “focuses on acting wisely” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the eyes of a fool are** - This refers to a fool by his eyes to emphasize what he is focusing on. AT: “the fool is” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **the ends of the earth** - This speaks of a fool’s impossible dreams as if they were the ends of the earth to emphasize that they are unrealistic. AT: “strive for things that are as far from him as the ends of the earth” or “focus on impossible things” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ A foolish child brings a father great sadness,

and regret to the mother who gave birth to him.

²⁶ It cannot be good to punish someone who does what is right,

and if a good man with moral character is punished by the law, this can never be good.

ULB:

²⁵ A foolish son is a grief to his father

and bitterness to the woman who bore him.

²⁶ Also, it is never good to punish the righteous person;

neither is it good to flog noble men who have integrity.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- punish, punishment
- noble, nobleman
- integrity

translationNotes:

- **A foolish son is a grief to his father** - This speaks of a son causing his father grief as if the son himself were “grief.” AT: “A foolish son brings grief to his father”
- **A foolish son ... and bitterness to the woman** - This speaks of a son causing his mother bitterness as if the son himself were “bitterness.” AT: “A foolish son ... and brings bitterness to the woman”
- **who bore him** - “who gave birth to him”
- **bitterness** - emotional pain, sorrow
- **it is never good ... neither is it good** - These statements can be written in positive form. AT: “it is always wrong ... and it is evil” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **the righteous person** - Another possible meaning is “the innocent person,” anyone whom others have accused of a crime that he did not commit.
- **flog** - whip severely
- **who have integrity** - The word “integrity” can be expressed with the adjective “honest.” AT: “who are honest” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 17:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ The one who has learned knowledge, learned to speak well using few words,
and the one who has understanding, does not lose his temper.

²⁸ When a fool keeps silent, some may think he is very wise;
when he keeps his mouth shut, even a fool looks intelligent.

ULB:

²⁷ One who has knowledge uses few words
and one with understanding is even-tempered.

²⁸ Even a fool is thought to be wise if he keeps silent;
when he keeps his mouth shut, he is considered to be intelligent.

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [word](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **uses few words** - This refers to the way he speaks. AT: “speaks with few words” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Even a fool is thought to be wise** - This can be written in active form. AT: “People even think a fool is wise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **keeps his mouth shut** - This means that he does not speak. AT: “does not speak” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he is considered to be intelligent** - This can be written in active form. AT: “people consider him to be intelligent” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 17 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 17 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 18 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 18:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 18:1-2**UDB:**

¹ The one who keeps himself away from other people will only live for his own desires,
and he never acts with good judgment.

² A foolish person does not enjoy understanding anything;
he only wants to tell others what he thinks.

ULB:

18 ¹ One who isolates himself seeks his own desire
and he quarrels with all sound judgment.

² A fool finds no pleasure in understanding,
but only in revealing what is in his own heart.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- reveal, revelation
- heart

translationNotes:

- **isolates himself** - “keeps away from other people” (UDB)
- **quarrels with all sound judgment** - This speaks of a person disagreeing with sound judgment as if “sound judgment” were a person he fought with. AT: “he disagrees with all sound judgment” (See: [Personification](#))
- **sound judgment** - “good judgment” or “wise choices”
- **A fool finds no pleasure in understanding, but only** - “A fool does not care about understanding, but only about” This means the fool considers “understanding” the opposite of pleasure. AT: “A fool detests understanding and only finds pleasure in” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **but only in revealing what is in his own heart** - This means that the fool only finds pleasure in telling other people what he feels and desires in his heart. AT: “but only in telling others what is in his own heart” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **what is in his own heart** - The contents of a person’s heart refers to the person’s thoughts and feelings. AT: “what he thinks” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:3-4**UDB:**

³ A wicked person comes, and with them comes the contempt they have for other people—
and then comes shame and disgrace following along.

⁴ The words a man speaks are like the deep waters of an ocean
or a fountain that flows with wisdom.

ULB:

³ When a wicked person comes, contempt comes with him—
along with shame and reproach.

⁴ The words of a man's mouth are deep waters;
the fountain of wisdom is a flowing stream.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- contempt, contemptible
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- reproach
- word
- water, waters
- fountain, spring
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **contempt comes with him—along with shame and reproach** - Here “contempt,” “shame,” and “reproach” are spoken of as if they are people who accompany a wicked man. Possible meanings are 1) people show contempt towards the wicked man and cause him to feel shame and reproach. AT: “people feel contempt for him along with shame and reproach” or 2) the wicked man shows contempt for others and causes them to feel shame and reproach. AT: “he shows his contempt for other people and causes them to feel shame and reproach” (See: [Personification](#))
- **shame and reproach** - These two words have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize the “shame” felt by either the wicked man or other people. (See: [Doublet](#))

- **The words of a man's mouth are deep waters; ... the fountain of wisdom is a flowing stream** - These two lines are parallel and it is implied that the man in the first line is a wise man. AT: "The words of a wise man's mouth are deep waters; ... the fountain of wisdom is a flowing stream" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **The words of a man's mouth are deep waters** - This speaks of a wise man's words being profound as if they were profound and as deep as deep waters. AT: "The words of a man's mouth are as profound as deep waters" or "The words of a man's mouth are deep and profound" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a man's mouth** - Here the man is referred to by his mouth to emphasize what he says. AT: "of a man" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the fountain of wisdom is a flowing stream** - This speaks of the source of wisdom being plentiful as if it were a gushing spring. The gushing of the spring is spoken of as if it were a flowing stream. AT: "the source of wisdom is as plentiful as the water of a gushing spring" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ When the wicked are treated with special honor, it is not good,

and it is not good to refuse to give justice to those who do what is right.

⁶ A foolish person says things that start arguments;

he says things that make other people want to beat him with a stick.

ULB:

⁵ It is not good to be partial to the wicked person,

nor to deny justice to the righteous person.

⁶ A fool's lips bring him conflict

and his mouth invites a beating.

translationWords:

- partial, partiality
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **It is not good to ... to the righteous person** - These phrases can be written in positive form. AT: "It is good to treat the wicked person as he deserves, and to be just to the righteous person" (See: [Litotes](#))
- **A fool's lips bring** - Here the fool is referred to by his "lips" to emphasize what he says. AT: "what a fool says brings" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **bring** - "cause"
- **his mouth invites a beating** - This speaks of the fool saying things that cause people to want to beat him as if he were inviting them to beat him. AT: "his mouth makes people want to beat him" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his mouth** - Here what the fool says is referred to as his "mouth." AT: "what he says" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ A foolish person brings himself to ruin by the things he says;

his very words set a trap in which he will be caught.

⁸ When a person gossips, his words are as sweet to other people as candy is in their mouths,

and they love to listen to them.

ULB:

⁷ A fool's mouth is his ruin

and he ensnares himself with his lips.

⁸ The words of a gossip are like delicious morsels

and they go down into the inner parts of the body.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- ruin, ruins
- word
- gossip

translationNotes:

- **A fool's mouth ... with his lips** - Both of these phrases refer to what a fool says. AT: "What a fool says ... by what he says" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **is his ruin** - "will ruin him"
- **he ensnares himself** - This speaks of the man causing problems and trouble for himself as if he were trapping himself like a man traps an animal. AT: "he will cause problems for himself" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The words of a gossip are like delicious morsels** - This speaks of the words of a gossip being desirable to listen to as if they were delicious food to eat. AT: "The words of a gossip are desirable to listen to" or (See: [Simile](#))
- **The words of a gossip** - This refers to what a gossiping person says. AT: "The words that a gossiping person speaks" (See: [Possession](#))
- **morsels** - small bites of food
- **they go down into the inner parts of the body** - This speaks of the words of a gossip going into a person's mind and affecting his thoughts as if they were food that was going into his stomach. AT: "and they enter a person's mind and affect his thoughts" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The person who does a poor job when he is working

is a relative to the one who destroys everything.

¹⁰ The name of Yahweh is like a castle that can never be overrun;

those who do what is right run for safety into it, and in the fortress of his name, they are safe.

ULB:

⁹ Also, one who is slack in his work

is a brother to the one who destroys the most.

¹⁰ The name of Yahweh is a strong tower;

the righteous person runs into it and is safe.

translationWords:

- name
- Yahweh
- watchtower, tower
- save, safe

translationNotes:

- **one who is slack in his work is a brother to the one who destroys** - This speaks of the one who is slack being similar to the one who destroys as if they were actually related. AT: “is closely related to” or “is very similar to” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **is slack** - “is lazy” or “is not interested”
- **the one who destroys the most** - “the one who destroys everything” (UDB) or “the one who is always destructive”
- **The name of Yahweh is a strong tower** - This speaks of Yahweh protecting his people as if he were a strong tower in which they could take refuge. AT: “Yahweh protects like a strong tower” or “Yahweh protects his people like a strong tower” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **The name of Yahweh** - Here Yahweh is referred to by his name. AT: “Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the righteous** - This refers to righteous people. AT: “those who are righteous” or “righteous people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

- **runs into it and is safe** - This speaks of people seeking safety from Yahweh and Yahweh protecting them as if he were a strong tower that they ran into for safety. AT: “run to him and they are safe” or “seek him and they are safe” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ The wealthy person depends on his wealth as a city depends on its fortifications;
 he thinks it protects him as well as a high wall.

¹² When a person is about to be ruined, it is his proud heart that brings his destruction,

but before a person can gain great honor, he must first learn to become humble.

ULB:

¹¹ The wealth of the rich is his fortified city
 and in his imagination it is like a high wall.

¹² Before his downfall a person's heart is proud,
 but humility comes before honor.

translationWords:

- heart
- proud, pride, prideful
- humble, humility
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **The wealth of the rich is his fortified city** - This speaks of a rich person depending on his wealth as if his wealth were a fortified wall that protects him. AT: "The wealthy person depends on his wealth as a city depends on its fortified wall" (UDB) (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the rich** - This refers to people who are rich. AT: "the rich person" (See: **Nominal Adjectives**)
- **fortified city** - a city with strong defenses like walls and towers
- **in his imagination it is like a high wall** - This speaks of the rich person believing his wealth will keep him safe like a high wall keeps those inside a city safe. AT: "he thinks it protects him as well as a high wall" (UDB) (See: **Simile**)
- **Before his downfall a person's heart is proud** - "First a person's heart is proud, but then comes his downfall"
- **downfall** - This refers to a significant decline in a person's reputation or health.
- **a person's heart** - Here a person is referred to by his heart to emphasize his thoughts and feelings. AT: "a person" (See: **Synecdoche**)

- **humility comes before honor** - The word “humility” may be expressed as an adjective and the word “honor” may be expressed as a verb. AT: “a person must be humble before he can be honored” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A person who gives you an answer before he listens to you—

there is nothing more foolish
and nothing that gives him more shame.

¹⁴ A person may survive a terrible sickness in his body,
but if he feels his inner self is crushed, how can he survive?

ULB:

¹³ One who answers before listening—
it is his folly and shame.

¹⁴ A person's spirit will survive sickness,
but a broken spirit who can bear it?

translationWords:

- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

translationNotes:

- **it is his folly and shame** - The word “folly” may be expressed as an adjective and the word “shame” may be expressed as a verb. AT: “it is foolish of him, and he should be ashamed” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **A person's spirit will survive sickness** - Here a person is referred to by his spirit to emphasize his attitude. AT: “A person who is hopeful will survive sickness” or “If a person is full of hope in his inner being, he will survive being sick” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **but a broken spirit who can bear it?** - This is a rhetorical question, expecting the answer that few can bear it. This can be written as a statement. AT: “but it is very hard to bear a broken spirit.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a broken spirit** - This refers to being depressed. AT: “being depressed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Intelligent people have a desire to get more and more knowledge,

and wise people will find someone to teach them even more knowledge.

¹⁶ If you take a gift to an important person, you will open the way to allow you to talk to him.

ULB:

¹⁵ The heart of the intelligent acquires knowledge
and the hearing of the wise seeks it out.

¹⁶ A man's gift may open the way
and bring him before an important person.

translationWords:

- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- wise, wisdom
- gift

translationNotes:

- **The heart of the intelligent acquires** - Here the intelligent person is referred to by his heart to emphasize his desires. AT: "The intelligent desire to acquire" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the intelligent** - This refers to people who are intelligent. AT: "those who are intelligent" or "intelligent people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **acquires** - "gains" or "obtains"
- **the hearing of the wise seeks it out** - Here the wise person is referred to by his hearing to emphasize what he desires to listen to. AT: "the wise seeks to learn about it" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the wise** - This refers to people who are wise. AT: "those who are wise" or "wise people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **seeks it out** - Here the word "it" refers to "knowledge"
- **may open the way** - Here to "open the way" means to create an opportunity. AT: "may create an opportunity for him" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **bring him before** - This means to be allowed to see someone. AT: "let him meet" or "let him be introduced to" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:17-18**UDB:**

- ¹⁷ The first person to present his case before a judge seems right
until the other side comes and questions him.
- ¹⁸ When there are two strong people having a dispute,
casting lots can help to settle the dispute.

ULB:

- ¹⁷ The first to plead his case seems right
until his opponent comes and questions him.
- ¹⁸ Casting the lot settles disputes
and separates strong opponents.

translationWords:

- [plead, pleading, plea](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)

translationNotes:

- **The first** - “The 1st.” This refers to the first person to do something. AT: “The first person” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **Casting the lot** - “Casting lots”
- **and separates strong opponents** - This refers to people who are fighting harshly over a dispute. When they are separated, they are no longer fighting over their dispute. AT: “and causes opponents to stop fighting over their dispute” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ If you offend your brother, finding a way to have peace with him again
 may be harder than waging a battle to win a city.
 and having an argument is more difficult to overcome
 than breaking down the bars of a castle.

²⁰ The words a person speaks can bring satisfaction to himself,
 like the food he eats satisfies his stomach.

ULB:

¹⁹ An offended brother is harder to be won than a strong city,
 and quarreling is like the bars of a castle.

²⁰ From the fruit of his mouth one's stomach is filled;
 with the harvest of his lips he is satisfied.

translationWords:

- brother
- fruit, fruitful
- harvest

translationNotes:

- **An offended brother is harder to be won than a strong city** - This speaks of the difficulty of making peace with a brother you have offended by comparing it to the difficulty of winning a war against a strong city. AT: "If you offend your brother, finding a way to have peace with him again may be harder than waging a battle to win a city" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **quarreling is like the bars of a castle** - This speaks of the difficulty of resolving quarreling by comparing it to the difficulty of breaking down the bars of a castle. AT: "resolving quarreling is as difficult as breaking down the bars of a castle" (See: [Simile](#))
- **castle** - a fortified palace
- **From the fruit of his mouth one's stomach is filled; with the harvest of his lips he is satisfied** - These two lines have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize what is said. They can be combined. AT: "A person is satisfied by the results of the good things that he says" (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **the fruit of his mouth** - This speaks of the good things that a person says as if they were fruit that came from his mouth. AT: “his wise speech” or “his good words” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **one’s stomach is filled** - This speaks of a person being satisfied or content by the result of what they have said as if they had eaten and become satisfied” AT: “a person is satisfied” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the harvest of his lips** - This speaks of the good things that a person says as if they were fruit that is harvested. AT: “his wise speech” or “his good words” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **he is satisfied** - “he is pleased”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ People are able to kill others or keep them alive by means of what they say.

And there is danger for those who love the power of their speaking.

²² The one who finds a wife, finds something so good it is a gift to bless his life,

and it is Yahweh who gives him this wonderful gift.

ULB:

²¹ Death and life are controlled by the tongue,
and those who love the tongue will eat its fruit.

²² He who finds a wife finds a good thing
and receives favor from Yahweh.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- life, live, living, alive
- power, powers
- tongue
- fruit, fruitful
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **Death and life are controlled by the tongue** - This can be written in active form. AT: “The tongue can lead to life or death” or “What people say can lead to life or death” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **by the tongue ... love the tongue** - Here the “tongue” refers to speech. AT: “by what people say ... love speaking” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **will eat its fruit** - This speaks of a person receiving the consequence for what he says as if the consequences were fruit that he receives. AT: “will receive its consequences” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 18:23-24**UDB:**

²³ A poor person desperately begs for mercy, but a rich person is rude when he answers.

²⁴ One person says that he has many friends, but his life is ruined by them;
but there is a friend who stands with us through everything,
and he is always close at our side, even closer than a brother.

ULB:

²³ A poor person pleads for mercy,
but a rich person answers harshly.

²⁴ The one who claims many friends is brought to ruin by them,
but there is a friend who comes closer than a brother.

translationWords:

- [plead, pleading, plea](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)

translationNotes:

- **many friends is brought to ruin by them** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “many friends—they will bring him to ruin” or “many friends—his friends will destroy him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **comes closer than** - “is more faithful than” or “stays more loyal than”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 18 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 18 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 19 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 19:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 19:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Compare a poor person who keeps his promises,

with a fool who is full of lies.

² And consider, having desire without knowledge

is like running so fast that you miss the path you want to take.

ULB:

19 ¹ Better is a poor person who walks in his integrity
than one who is perverse in speech and is a fool.

² Also, it is not good to have desire without knowledge
and the one who runs too fast misses the path.

translationWords:

- walk
- integrity
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- fool, foolish, folly
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **Better is a poor person** - “It is better to be a poor person”
- **who walks in his integrity** - This is an idiom. Here walking refers to living. AT: “who lives in his integrity” or “who lives an honest life” (See: **Idiom**)
- **is perverse in speech** - The word “speech” may be expressed as a verb. AT: “speaks perversely” or “speaks in an evil way” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **to have desire without knowledge** - This refers to people trying to do something without the knowledge for how to correctly do it. AT: “to work hard without knowing what you are doing” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **the one who runs too fast misses the path** - This speaks of a person doing something too quickly and making mistakes as if running too quickly and missing the path. AT: “the one who acts too quickly makes mistakes” or “the one who acts too quickly makes poor choices” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:3-4**UDB:**

³ The folly of a fool destroys his life,

but he becomes furious with Yahweh for his troubles.

⁴ Those who are wealthy easily find many friends, but a poor person will find that his poverty separates him from the one friend he had.

ULB:

³ A person's folly ruins his life
and his heart rages against Yahweh.

⁴ Wealth adds many friends,
but a poor person is separated from his friends.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- ruin, ruins
- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- rage
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **his heart rages** - Here a person is referred to by his "heart" to emphasize his emotions. AT: "he rages" (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **Wealth adds many friends** - This means that a person who is wealthy will have many friends because wealth attracts people. The full meaning of this can be made clear. AT: "Those who are wealthy easily find many friends" (UDB) (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a poor person is separated from his friends** - A poor person is separated from many of his friends because of his poverty. The meaning of this can be made explicit. AT: "poverty causes a person to lose his friends" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ A person who lies in order to become a friend will be punished for taking advantage,
just as the one whose every word he speaks is a lie, he will not
escape.

⁶ When a person is generous with their gifts, many people will ask for favors,
it seems that everyone is a friend of the one who gives many gifts.

ULB:

⁵ A false witness will not go unpunished
and he who breathes out lies will not escape.

⁶ Many will ask for a favor from a generous person
and everyone is a friend of the one who gives gifts.

translationWords:

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- punish, punishment
- breathe, breath
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- gift

translationNotes:

- **A false witness will not go unpunished** - This can be written in positive and active form. AT: “They will certainly punish a false witness” (See: **Double Negatives** and **Active or Passive**)
- **he who breathes out lies will not escape** - This means that he will be captured. AT: “they will capture the one who breathes out lies” (See: **Litotes**)
- **breathes out lies** - This is an idiom. Here “breathes” refers to lying constantly. See how you translated this phrase in **6:19**. AT: “constantly lies” (See: **Idiom**)
- **a generous person** - someone who often gives away things
- **everyone is a friend** - This is a slight exaggeration. AT: “it seems that everyone is a friend” or “almost everyone is a friend” (See: **Hyperbole**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ All the brothers of one who is poor hate him;

and even more do his friends hate him, and they go far away from him;

he calls out to them, but they have left.

⁸ The one who makes every effort to learn about wisdom, loves himself;

having understanding helps you know what is good and what is not.

ULB:

⁷ All the brothers of a poor man hate him;

how much more do his friends who go far away from him!

He calls out to them, but they are gone.

⁸ He who gets wisdom loves his own life;

he who keeps understanding will find what is good.

translationWords:

- brother
- wise, wisdom
- love

translationNotes:

- **how much more do his friends who go far away from him!** - This phrase is an exclamation to show that this is more likely than the previous phrase. AT: “therefore his friends will certainly hate him and go far away from him!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **loves his own life** - Here the person is referred to by his “life” to emphasize himself being alive. AT: “loves himself” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **keeps understanding** - “has understanding”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The ones who lie when they give testimony will be punished,

but the one whose every word is a lie, he will die.

¹⁰ When a fool lives in luxury—it is not right,

and it is even worse for a slave to rule over princes.

ULB:

⁹ A false witness will not go unpunished,

but the one who breathes out lies will perish.

¹⁰ It is not fitting for a fool to live in luxury—

much less for a slave to rule over princes.

translationWords:

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- breathe, breath
- perish, perishing, perishable
- fool, foolish, folly
- servant, slave, slavery
- ruler, rulers, rule
- prince, princess

translationNotes:

- **A false witness will not go unpunished** - This can be written in positive and active form. Translate this phrase the same as you did in 19:5. AT: “They will certainly punish a false witness” (See: **Double Negatives** and **Active or Passive**)
- **breathes out lies** - This figure of speech uses “breathes” to refer to lying constantly. See how you translated this phrase in 6:19. AT: “constantly lies” (See: **Idiom**)
- **It is not fitting** - “It is not right”
- **luxury** - condition of wealth and pleasure
- **much less for a slave** - The missing words may be added. AT: “it is much less fitting for a slave” or “it is even worse for a slave” (UDB) (See: **Ellipsis**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ A person with good sense is slow to get angry,

and it is to his honor that he overlooks it when someone does him wrong.

¹² What is the wrath of the king like? It is like the roaring of a young lion, but his kindness is like the dew on the grass.

ULB:

¹¹ Discretion makes a person slow to anger and it is his glory to overlook an offense.

¹² The wrath of the king is like the roaring of a young lion, but his favor is like dew on the grass.

translationWords:

- glory, glorious
- wrath, fury
- king
- lion
- favor, favorable, favoritism

translationNotes:

- **Discretion makes a person slow to anger** - “A person who has discretion is slow to become angry”
- **Discretion** - This means to know what should be done in a particular situation. Translate this word the same as you did in [1:4](#).
- **it is his glory to overlook** - “it will bring him glory to overlook” or “others will consider it honorable if he overlooks”
- **to overlook** - to forget on purpose
- **The wrath of the king is like the roaring of a young lion** - Here the lion’s roaring refers to attacking. The wrath of a king is compared to the unpredictable and dangerous attack of a young lion. AT: “The wrath of the king is as dangerous as the attack of a young lion” (See: [Simile](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **but his favor is like dew on the grass** - The favor of the king is compared to the refreshing water that appears on grass in the morning. AT: “but his favor is refreshing like dew on grass” or “but his favor is refreshing like the dew on the ground in the morning” (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A foolish child will ruin a father.

A wife who is always quarreling will upset her husband like water that is constantly dripping.

¹⁴ We can inherit houses and money from our parents,
but a sensible wife is from Yahweh.

ULB:

¹³ A foolish son is ruin to his father
and a quarreling wife is a constant dripping of water.

¹⁴ A house and wealth are inherited from parents,
but a prudent wife is from Yahweh.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- ruin, ruins
- house
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **is ruin to his father** - “will ruin a father” (UDB)
- **a quarreling wife is a constant dripping of water** - This speaks of an annoying wife as if she were the constant dripping of water. AT: “a quarreling wife is as annoying and distracting as a constant dripping of water” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a quarreling wife** - “an arguing wife” or “a disagreeing wife”
- **A house and wealth are inherited from parents** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Children inherit a house and wealth from their parents” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **prudent** - Translate this word the same as you did in [12:23](#).
- **a prudent wife is from Yahweh** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh gives a prudent wife” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ The one who is lazy finds that sleep comes easily to him,
but anyone who refuses to work will go hungry.

¹⁶ The one who follows the command he was taught puts a guard over his life,
but the one who does not think about how he lives his life will die.

ULB:

¹⁵ Laziness throws a person into a deep sleep,
but the one not willing to work will go hungry.
¹⁶ The one who obeys the command guards his life,
but the person who does not think about his ways will die.

translationWords:

- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **Laziness throws a person into a deep sleep** - This speaks of how laziness causes a person to sleep a lot as if laziness forcefully throws the person into sleep. AT: “Laziness makes a person sleep a lot” or “A lazy person sleeps a lot” (See: [Personification](#))
- **go hungry** - This is an idiom which means to not eat. AT: “not eat” or “be hungry” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the command** - “the command that he was taught” (UDB)
- **guards his life** - “protects his life”
- **his ways** - This is an idiom which refers to how he lives. AT: “the way that he lives” or “how he lives” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 19 General Notes
- **Proverbs 19 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 19:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ One who is kind to the poor, it is as if he were lending to Yahweh;
and Yahweh will pay him for what he did.

¹⁸ Train your children and give them discipline while it is still possible to rescue them;
but do not allow them to offend you so much that you consider taking their lives.

ULB:

¹⁷ Whoever is kind to the poor lends to Yahweh
and he will repay him for what he has done.

¹⁸ Discipline your son while there is hope
and do not set your desire on putting him to death.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- discipline, self-discipline
- son, son of
- hope
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **Whoever is kind to the poor lends to Yahweh** - Yahweh considers kindness shown to the poor to be kindness shown to him. One of the ways people are kind to the poor is by giving. AT: “The person who gives to the poor is giving to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the poor** - This refers to poor people. AT: “those who are poor” or “poor people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **while there is hope** - This refers to while the child is young and will still accept discipline and instruction. The full meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “while he is young” or “while he can still be taught” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **and do not set your desire on putting him to death** - Possible meanings are 1) this phrase describes punishing your child. AT: “but do not punish him so severely that he might die” or 2) this phrase describes what it is like if you do not punish your child. AT: “for if you do

not punish him you are helping him destroy himself” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **set your desire on putting him** - This idiom means to be determined to cause something to happen. AT: “be determined to put him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ A hot-tempered person will pay a price for his anger;

if you rescue him after he had has an outburst, you will have to do it again and again.

²⁰ Pay attention to good guidance and let others teach you so that you can become wise by the end of your life.

ULB:

¹⁹ A hot-tempered person must pay the penalty;

if you rescue him, you will have to do it a second time.

²⁰ Listen to advice and accept instruction, so you may become wise by the end of your life.

translationWords:

- **counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**
- **wise, wisdom**
- **life, live, living, alive**

translationNotes:

- **A hot-tempered person** - This idiom refers to a person who is easily angered. AT: “A person who does not control his temper” or “A person who becomes angry quickly” (See: **Idiom**)
- **must pay the penalty** - This refers to the person bearing the consequences for what happens when he gets angry. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “must bear the consequences of his anger” or “must bear the consequences of what he does in his anger” (See: **Idiom** and **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **if you rescue him** - “if you save him.” This refers to rescuing him when he has acted out of his anger. The meaning of this can be made explicit. AT: “if you rescue him after he has had an outburst” (UDB) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **a second time** - “a 2nd time” or “again” (See: **Ordinal Numbers**)
- **Listen to advice and accept instruction** - These two phrases mean basically the same and are repeated to emphasize how important it is. (See: **Parallelism**)

- **Listen to advice** - This is an idiom. Here “listening” does not mean to merely listen, but to learn from the advice you are given and to follow it. AT: “Pay attention to advice” or “Follow advice” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ A person has many plans that come from within him,

but Yahweh has his own plans, and he will carry them out.

²² A person wants loyalty,

and a poor person is better than a liar.

ULB:

²¹ Many are the plans in a person's heart,

but it is the purpose of Yahweh that will stand.

²² Loyalty is what a person desires

and a poor person is better than a liar.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **in a person's heart** - Here the "heart" is used to refer to the "mind" to emphasize a person's desire. AT: "in a person's mind" or "that a person desires" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the purpose of Yahweh** - "Yahweh's purpose" or "Yahweh's plans"
- **that will stand** - This idiom means to "happen." AT: "that will happen" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Anyone who has respect for Yahweh will live a long life;

such a person who has this respect for Yahweh will be satisfied,
and will come to no harm.

²⁴ The lazy person puts his hand in the dish;

he is not able to raise his hand up to his mouth to eat.

ULB:

²³ Honor for Yahweh leads people to life;

anyone who has it will be satisfied
and not afflicted by harm.

²⁴ The sluggard buries his hand in the dish;

he will not even bring it back up to his mouth.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- Yahweh
- life, live, living, alive
- afflict, affliction

translationNotes:

- **Honor for Yahweh leads people to life; anyone who has it will be satisfied** - This means that they will live a long time if they honor Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "Those who honor Yahweh will live a long time; anyone who honors Yahweh will be satisfied" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **anyone who has it** - Here the word "it" refers to "honor for Yahweh."
- **satisfied and not afflicted by harm** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "satisfied; nothing will harm him" or "satisfied; he will be safe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **sluggard** - Translate this word the same as you did in [10:26](#).
- **buries his hand in the dish** - "dips his hand in the dish" or "puts his hand in his plate." In the Biblical culture people usually ate with their hands as people do in many cultures today.
- **he will not even bring it back up to his mouth** - He does not bring his hand back to his mouth because he is too lazy. AT: "but he is too lazy to bring his hand up to his mouth to feed himself" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:25**UDB:**

²⁵ If you punish someone who mocks others,

an uninstructed person will learn how to be prudent.

If you correct someone who has understanding,

he will gain more knowledge.

ULB:

²⁵ Strike a mocker, and the naive person will become prudent;

discipline one who is discerning, and he will gain knowledge.

translationWords:

- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)
- [discern, discernment](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **Strike a mocker, and the naive person** - "If you strike a mocker, the naive person"
- **Strike** - "Punish"
- **naive person** - "inexperienced person" or "immature person"
- **prudent** - Translate this word the same as you did in [12:23](#).
- **discipline one who is discerning, and** - "if you discipline one who is discerning,"
- **he will gain knowledge** - Here the abstract idea of knowledge is spoken of as if it were something that one could have more of. AT: "he will know more" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Someone who steals from his father and alienates his mother
brings shame and disgrace to himself.

²⁷ My son, if you will not listen to the teaching,
you will wander away from the words of knowledge.

ULB:

²⁶ The one who robs his father and chases his mother away
is a son who brings shame and reproach.

²⁷ If you cease to hear instruction, my son,
you will stray from the words of knowledge.

translationWords:

- shame, shameful, ashamed
- reproach
- word
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **brings shame and reproach** - Possible meanings are 1) he brings it to himself. AT: “brings shame and reproach to himself” or 2) he brings it to his family. AT: “brings shame and reproach to his family” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **If you cease to hear instruction** - Here “listening and obeying” is spoken of as if it were “hearing.” AT: “If you stop paying attention to instruction” or “If you stop obeying instruction” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you will stray from** - “you will abandon” or “you will turn your back on”
- **the words of knowledge** - “knowledge”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 19:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ A lying witness laughs at anyone who acts justly,

and wicked people act sinfully as easily as they eat food.

²⁹ Yahweh is ready to punish those who make themselves out to be better than other people,

and he is ready to flog the backs of fools.

ULB:

²⁸ A corrupt witness mocks justice

and the mouth of the wicked swallows iniquity.

²⁹ Condemnation is ready for mockers

and flogging for the backs of fools.

translationWords:

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- just, justice, justly
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- iniquity
- condemn, condemnation
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **the mouth of the wicked swallows iniquity** - This speaks of how wicked people enjoy doing evil by saying that they swallow iniquity as easily as they swallow food. AT: “the wicked enjoy doing evil as much as they enjoy eating food” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the mouth of the wicked swallows** - Here wicked people are referred to by their “mouths.” AT: “the wicked swallow” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **the wicked** - This refers to wicked people. AT: “the wicked person” (See: **Nominal Adjectives**)
- **Condemnation is ready for mockers and flogging for** - The words “condemnation” and “flogging” may be expressed as verbs. AT: “Yahweh is ready to condemn mockers and to flog” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **flogging for the backs** - The missing words may be added. AT: “flogging is ready for the backs” or “he is ready to flog the backs” (UDB) (See: **Ellipsis**)
- **flogging** - beating with a whip or stick

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 19 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 19 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 20 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 20:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 20:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Wine makes you loud, and strong drink makes you foolish;

whoever lets alcohol lead them to where they get lost is not wise.

² The king's wrath makes people as afraid as if they were facing a young lion roaring at them;

the person who makes a king angry is giving up his own life.

ULB:

20 ¹ Wine is a mocker and strong drink is a brawler;

whoever is led astray by drink is not wise.

² The fear of a king is like the fear of a young lion that is roaring;

the one who makes him angry forfeits his life.

translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- strong drink
- astray, go astray, led astray, stray
- wise, wisdom
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- king
- lion
- angry, anger
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Wine is a mocker and strong drink is a brawler** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize the danger of too much alcohol. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **Wine is a mocker** - Here “wine” refers to the person who is drunk with wine. AT: “A person who is drunk with wine mocks” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **strong drink is a brawler** - Here “strong drink” refers to a person who is drunk with strong drink. AT: “a person who is drunk with strong drink starts fights” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a brawler** - a person who fights noisily, usually in a public place
- **whoever is led astray by drink is not wise** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “whoever drinks until they can no longer think clearly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by drink** - Here “drink” refers to alcoholic drinks
- **is not wise** - This means the opposite of “wise” which is “foolish.” AT: “is foolish” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **The fear of a king is like the fear of a young lion that is roaring** - This compares how people fear a king’s wrath to how they fear a young roaring lion. AT: “The king’s wrath makes people as afraid as if they were facing a young lion roaring at them” (See: [Simile](#))
- **makes him angry** - “makes the king angry”
- **forfeits his life** - This refers to being killed. “Life” here refers to physical life. AT: “will die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:3-4**UDB:**

³ It is an honor to stay out of an argument,

but every fool is ready to join one.

⁴ The lazy person is not willing to plow his crops again in autumn,

and when it is harvest time, he looks, but there is nothing growing in his field.

ULB:

³ It is an honor for anyone to avoid conflict,

but every fool jumps into an argument.

⁴ The lazy person does not plow in autumn;

he seeks a crop at harvest time but will have nothing.

translationWords:

- [honor, to honor](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)
- [harvest](#)

translationNotes:

- **It is an honor** - "It is honorable." This means that a person will be honored.
- **every fool jumps into an argument** - This speaks of entering an argument quickly as if the argument were something the fool physically jumped into. AT: "every fool quickly gets into an argument" or "every fool is quick to join an argument" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **plow** - to prepare land for planting
- **autumn** - "the planting season"
- **but will have nothing** - This means that there will be nothing growing in his field for him to harvest. AT: "but will have nothing to harvest" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ The purposes within a person's life are like waters in a deep well,
but a person who has understanding is able to draw them out.

⁶ Many people proclaim that they can be trusted to do what they promise,
but it is very difficult to find one who can really be trusted.

ULB:

⁵ The purpose in a human heart is like deep water,
but someone with understanding will draw it out.

⁶ Many a person proclaims he is loyal,
but who can find one who is faithful?

translationWords:

- heart
- water, waters
- proclaim, proclamation
- faithful, faithfulness

translationNotes:

- **The purpose in a human heart is like deep water** - This speaks of how difficult it is to understand the reasons for a person's actions by comparing it to the difficulty of reaching the water in a deep well. AT: "It is as difficult to understand the purpose in the human heart as it is to reach the water in a deep well" or "The purpose of in the human heart is very difficult to understand" (See: [Simile](#))
- **someone with understanding** - "a person who has understanding" (UDB)
- **will draw it out** - This speaks of figuring out the purpose of the human heart as if it was water being drawn from a deep well. AT: "will cause the purpose to be known" or "will figure it out" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **loyal** - "faithful" or "trustworthy"
- **but who can find one who is faithful?** - The implicit answer is "few can find someone like that." This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. AT: "but few men can find a person who is faithful" or "but it is hard to find a person who really is faithful" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The person who always does right—

how fortunate will be his children who follow after him.

⁸ A king who sits on his throne to act as a judge

can distinguish between all the kinds of evil before him just by looking at them.

ULB:

⁷ The righteous person walks in his integrity,
and his sons who follow after him will be blessed.

⁸ A king who sits on the throne performing the duties of a judge
is winnowing with his eyes all the evil that is before him.

translationWords:

- walk
- integrity
- king
- throne
- judge
- winnow, sift
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **walks in his integrity** - Here walking refers to living. See how you translated this phrase in [19:1](#). AT: “lives by his integrity” or “lives an honest life” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **his sons who follow after him** - This simply means that they “follow after him” since they are younger than he and his children. If this phrase is awkward in your language it may be left to be implied. AT: “his sons after him” or “his sons” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **is winnowing with his eyes all the evil that is before him** - This speaks of the king judging between various types of evil as if he were separating them as a person winnows grain. AT: “sees and sorts the different kinds of evils that are brought before him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ No one can truthfully say, “I have kept my heart pure, and I am free from my sins.”

¹⁰ Uneven weights, improperly marked, and unequal measures, that favor the one who is selling,

Yahweh hates both of them.

ULB:

⁹ Who can say, “I have kept my heart clean;

I am free from my sin”?

¹⁰ Differing weights and unequal measures—

Yahweh hates them both.

translationWords:

- heart
- clean, cleanse
- free, freedom, liberty
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **Who can say, “I have kept my heart clean; I am free from my sin”?** - The implicit answer to this question is, “No one can say that.” This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. AT: “No one can say that his heart is clean and that he is free from sin” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **my heart** - Here a person is referred to by his “heart” to emphasize his thoughts and desires. AT: “myself” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **clean** - A person who God considers spiritually acceptable is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **I am free from my sin** - “I am without sin” or “I have not sinned”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 20 General Notes
- **Proverbs 20 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 20:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Also, even a youth is known by how what he does,
it is clear whether what he does is pure and respectable or not.

¹² Ears that hear and eyes that see—
Yahweh made them both.

ULB:

¹¹ Even a youth is known by his actions,
by whether his conduct is pure and upright.
¹² Ears that hear and eyes that see—
Yahweh made them both.

translationWords:

- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Even a youth is known by his actions** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People know a young man by his actions” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **whether his conduct is pure and upright** - “whether his conduct is pure and upright or not”
- **his conduct** - “his deeds” or “what he does”
- **pure and upright** - These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize how good this young person is. They can be combined into one word if necessary. AT: “pure” (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Ears that hear and eyes that see** - The same thought is repeated to emphasize that Yahweh made all our senses. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ If you love to sleep all the time, you will become poor;

stay awake when you should be at work and you will have plenty to eat.

¹⁴ “It is no good,” the buyer says when he is bargaining with you about the price.

But after he buys it, he goes and boasts to his friends what a good price he bought it for.

ULB:

¹³ Do not love sleep or you will come to poverty;

open your eyes and you will have plenty to eat.

¹⁴ “Bad! Bad!” says the buyer,

but when he goes away he boasts.

translationWords:

- love
- boast, boastful

translationNotes:

- **come to poverty** - The phrase “come to” here means to transition into a new situation; to become. AT: “become poor” (See: **Idiom**)
- **open your eyes** - Here “opening one’s eyes” is spoken of as “being awake.” AT: “stay awake” (UDB) or “be alert” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **“Bad! Bad!” says the buyer, but when he goes away he boasts** - Here a buyer is criticizing what someone is selling to get a low price from him. After he buys he boasts about the good price that he persuaded the seller to give him. The full meaning of this can be made clear. AT: ““Bad! Bad!” says the buyer criticizing the seller’s wares, but after he buys he goes away he boasting about the low price that he paid” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Consider the value of gold and many expensive jewels,

but the words of the one who has knowledge are like precious jewels.

¹⁶ Take the expensive coat of the person who guarantees a loan for a stranger, so it can be sold if the debt is not paid back.

And if he makes a pledge for an immoral woman, hold his coat as a guarantee for the loan he makes.

ULB:

¹⁵ There is gold and an abundance of costly stones,
but lips of knowledge are a precious jewel.

¹⁶ Take a garment of one who has put up security for a stranger,
and hold it in pledge when he puts up security for an immoral woman.

translationWords:

- gold
- know, knowledge, make known
- precious
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

translationNotes:

- **lips of knowledge are a precious jewel** - This speaks of the value of lips of knowledge by comparing them to a precious jewel. AT: “lips of knowledge are as valuable as an expensive jewel” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **lips of knowledge** - Here “words” are referred to as “lips.” AT: “wise words” or “words of knowledge” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Take a garment of one who has put up security for a stranger** - When lending money, the lender would take something from the borrower, such as a garment, as a guarantee of repayment. He would return it after the money was repaid. If the borrower was too poor, someone else could give something to the lender as a guarantee for him. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “Take a garment as security from the one who guarantees that what a stranger has borrowed will be paid back” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

- **puts up security** - This is an idiom. It means that someone gives something to a lender as a guarantee that what was borrowed will be paid. AT: “guarantees that what has been borrowed will be paid back” or “promises to pay a loan” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **hold it in pledge** - This is an idiom. To “hold something in pledge” means to hold on to something that someone has given as a pledge, or promise, that he will pay a debt. AT: “hold onto his coat as a guarantee of repayment” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Bread gotten by telling a lie, may taste sweet,

but later his mouth will be like it was full of gravel, because of his lies.

¹⁸ Good plans are made in consultation with good advisors,

and only with wise advisors giving their advice should anyone go to war.

ULB:

¹⁷ Bread gained by deceit tastes sweet,

but afterward his mouth will be full of gravel.

¹⁸ Plans are established by advice

and only with wise guidance should you wage war.

translationWords:

- bread
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **Bread gained by deceit** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “Bread that someone gained by deceit” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by deceit** - The word “deceit” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “by deceiving others” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Bread** - Here “bread” refers to food in general. AT: “Food” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **tastes sweet** - “tastes good”
- **but afterward his mouth will be full of gravel** - This speaks of the food tasting unpleasant as if his mouth were actually full of gravel instead of food. AT: “but afterwards it tastes like gravel in his mouth” or “but soon it tastes like sand in his mouth” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **gravel** - small pieces of rock
- **Plans are established by advice** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “People establish plans based on advice” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ A gossip tells secrets,

so stay away from people who talk too much.

²⁰ If a person curses his father or his mother,

his life will be put out as a light that is snuffed out.

ULB:

¹⁹ A gossip reveals secrets

and so you should not associate with people who talk too much.

²⁰ If a person curses his father or his mother,

his lamp will be snuffed out in the middle of darkness.

translationWords:

- gossip
- reveal, revelation
- curse, cursed
- lamp
- darkness

translationNotes:

- **A gossip** - This means someone who gossips a lot.
- **you should not associate with** - “you should not be friends with”
- **If a person curses** - This means if a someone express a desire that bad things will happen to someone else.
- **his lamp will be snuffed out in the middle of darkness** - This speaks of a person dying suddenly and unexpectedly as if his life were a lamp snuffed out in the dark. AT: “his life will end as suddenly as the light of a lamp that is snuffed out in the dark” or “he will die suddenly” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **his lamp will be snuffed out** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “his lamp will go out” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **his lamp** - This refers to a lamp with a burning flame. Here the lamp’s flame is referred to as the lamp itself. AT: “the flame of his lamp” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **snuffed out** - to cause a flame to go out

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ An inheritance that comes to a person quickly, may do some good at the beginning,
but later it will do less good for the person who received it.

²² Do not say, "I will pay you back for the wrong you did to me."
Wait for Yahweh and he will take care of the matter.

ULB:

²¹ An inheritance gained quickly at the beginning
will do less good in the end.

²² Do not say, "I will pay you back for this wrong!"
Wait for Yahweh and he will rescue you.

translationWords:

- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- good, goodness
- wrong, mistreat, hurt
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **at the beginning** - This refers to a person receiving his inheritance before he is supposed to receive it. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: "before the right time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **I will pay you back** - This means to do wrong to someone because they have done wrong to you. AT: "I will punish you" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **Wait for Yahweh** - This means to have faith that Yahweh will deal with the situation. AT: "Have faith in Yahweh" or "Hope in Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Yahweh detests those who use dishonest scales
and weights that are not accurate.

²⁴ Yahweh is the one who directs the way a person will go.
So then, how can someone understand where he is going?

ULB:

²³ Yahweh hates unequal weights
and dishonest scales are not good.

²⁴ A person's steps are directed by Yahweh;
how then can he understand his way?

translationWords:

- **Yahweh**
- **good, goodness**

translationNotes:

- **Yahweh hates unequal weights and dishonest scales are not good** - These two phrases basically mean the same thing and are combined to emphasize how bad this is. (See: **Parallelism**)
- **A person's steps are directed by Yahweh** - This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh directs a person's steps" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **A person's steps** - This refers to the various things a person does. AT: "A person's actions" (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **how then can he understand his way?** - The implicit answer is that he cannot understand it. This rhetorical question may be written as a statement. AT: "therefore, a person cannot understand his way" (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **understand his way** - This is an idiom. The phrase "his way" refers to the person's life. AT: "understand why some things happen in his life" (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ It is dangerous to declare that something is holy to Yahweh,
and it is worse to think about the meaning of holiness only after
you have made a vow.

²⁶ A king who is wise will separate the wicked from among his people;
then he will severely punish those wicked people.

ULB:

²⁵ It is a snare for a person to say rashly, "This thing is holy,"
and begin to think about what it means only after making his vow.

²⁶ A wise king winnows the wicked
and he turns a threshing wheel over them.

translationWords:

- holy, holiness
- vow
- wise, wisdom
- king
- winnow, sift
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- thresh, threshing

translationNotes:

- **It is a snare** - This speaks of something being dangerous as if it were a trap or a snare. AT: "It is dangerous" (UDB) (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **to say rashly** - to say something quickly and without careful consideration of what it might mean
- **making his vow** - The person has made a vow declaring that something is holy and dedicated to Yahweh. AT: "dedicating it to Yahweh" or "declaring it holy" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **winnows the wicked** - This speaks of the king separating the wicked people as if they were grain that he was winnowing. AT: "separates the wicked" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the wicked** - This refers to wicked people. AT: "those who are wicked" or "the wicked people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

- **and he turns a threshing wheel over them** - This speaks of the king punishing the wicked as if he were driving a threshing wheel over them. AT: “and he severely punishes them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **threshing wheel** - “threshing cart.” This is a tool used to crush grain and help separate it from the chaff.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ The life-giving spirit within a man is the light shining from Yahweh within us,
it shines deep within and shows what is hidden deep inside us.

²⁸ Love and faithfulness preserve the life of the king;
his throne is made strong by steadfast love.

ULB:

²⁷ The spirit of a person is the lamp of Yahweh,
searching all his inmost parts.

²⁸ Covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness preserve the king;
his throne is made secure by love.

translationWords:

- spirit, spiritual
- lamp
- Yahweh
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- king
- throne
- love

translationNotes:

- **The spirit of a person is the lamp of Yahweh, searching all his inmost parts** - This speaks of a person's spirit as if it were a lamp. A person's spirit helps him to understand his inner self. AT: "Yahweh has given us a spirit to understand our deepest selves, just as a lamp makes you see in the dark" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **Covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness preserve the king** - This speaks of the king's covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness as if they were people who kept the king safe. AT: "The king preserves himself by his covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness" (See: **Personification**)
- **preserve the king** - keep the king safe from harm

- **his throne is made secure by love** - This speaks of the king's love as if it were a person who secured the king's rule. AT: "his throne is made secure by his love" (See: [Personification](#))
- **his throne is made secure by love** - Here the king's rule is referred to as his "throne." This can be stated in active form. AT: "a king ensures that he will rule for a long time by showing love to others" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 20:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ The honor of young people is seen in how strong they are,
but the splendor of old people is in their gray hair.

³⁰ When we are beaten, the wound that results may cleanse away evil,
and beatings make our inmost self clean.

ULB:

²⁹ The glory of young men is their strength
and the splendor of old people is their gray hair.

³⁰ Blows that make a wound cleanse away evil
and beatings make the innermost parts clean.

translationWords:

- [glory, glorious](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [clean, cleanse](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **Blows that make a wound cleanse away evil and beatings make the innermost parts clean** - Both statements mean the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. Using physical punishment to correct a person is spoken of as if the evil were dirt and the beatings cleansed him. AT: "Beating a person who has done wrong will correct him and cause him to be a better person" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 20 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 20 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 21 continues the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 21:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 21:1-2**UDB:**

¹ The motives of the king are directed like a stream of water by Yahweh;

he diverts the king like he directs the flow of water, in any way he wants.

² When a person looks at his own life, everything he does may seem right to him,

but what matters is what Yahweh thinks about what he does.

ULB:

21 ¹ The king's heart is a stream of water in the hand of Yahweh;

he turns it wherever he pleases.

² Every person's way is right in his own eyes,

but it is Yahweh who weighs the hearts.

translationWords:

- king
- heart
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **The king's heart is a stream of water in the hand of Yahweh** - The writer speaks of the king's heart as if it were an irrigation ditch in a dry area through which people direct water to plants that need it. AT: "Yahweh controls the king's heart as a man directs water for irrigation" (See: **Metaphor**)
- **The king's heart** - The heart is a metaphor for what a person thinks and what he wants to do. AT: "The king's thoughts and actions" or "What the king thinks and what he wants to do" (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)

- **Every person's way is right in his own eyes** - The word "eyes" is a metonym for the way a person thinks about right and wrong. The writer speaks of what a person does as if it that person were walking down a path. AT: "Every person thinks that what he does is good" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **who weighs the hearts** - The writer speaks of Yahweh deciding whether a person desires to do what is right as if Yahweh were looking at a physical object and deciding whether it is of good quality. AT: "who will judge the motives" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:3-4**UDB:**

³ Doing what is right and just is more acceptable to Yahweh
than offering sacrifices to him.

⁴ When you show people that you think you are better than they,
and add to that the pride you have within you—this shines like a
light and it tells others you are a wicked person—
they are examples of sin.

ULB:

³ To do what is right and just
is more acceptable to Yahweh than sacrifice.

⁴ Haughty eyes and a proud heart—
the lamp of the wicked—are sin.

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, offering
- haughty
- proud, pride, prideful
- heart
- lamp
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **To do what is right** - “To do what Yahweh thinks is right”
- **To do what is ... just** - “To treat people the way Yahweh wants people to treat other people”
- **just is more acceptable to Yahweh** - “just—Yahweh wants this more”
- **Haughty eyes and a proud heart** - The words “eyes” and “heart” are synecdoches for a person who considers himself better than other people and wants other people to know it. AT: “People who want others to think that they are better than other people” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Doublet**)

- **Haughty eyes** - This is a synecdoche for a person who wants others to know that he thinks he is better than they are. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **proud heart** - This is a synecdoche for a person who thinks he is better than others. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the lamp of the wicked** - The things that help the wicked are spoken of as a lamp. AT: “the things that help a wicked person like a lamp helps to see in the dark” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Those who work hard and who carry out their plans will be successful,

but everyone who takes action too quickly and with little planning,
make themselves poor.

⁶ When someone becomes rich because he tells lies,

that wealth fades away like the mist; that wealth will kill him.

ULB:

⁵ The plans of the diligent lead only to prosperity,

but everyone who acts too quickly comes only to poverty.

⁶ Acquiring riches by a lying tongue

is a fleeting vapor and a snare that kills.

translationWords:

- **tongue**

translationNotes:

- **the diligent** - This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “a diligent man” or “a man who works hard” (See: **Nominal Adjectives**)
- **comes only to poverty** - The abstract noun “poverty” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “only becomes poor” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **Acquiring riches** - “Gaining wealth”
- **a lying tongue** - The tongue is a metonym for the words a person uses the tongue to speak. AT: “speaking lies” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **a fleeting vapor** - The writer likens the riches a person gains by lying to a mist that quickly goes away in the morning. AT: “a disappearing mist” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **and a snare that kills** - The writer speaks of the riches that a person gains by lying as if it were the bait in a hunter’s trap; the word “snare” is a metonym for the bait that attracts the animal into the snare. (See: **Metaphor** and **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ When wicked people act with violence, they are destroyed by their own violence,
because they refuse to do what is right.

⁸ A guilty person follows a path covered with lies,
but the innocent chooses to do what is right.

ULB:

⁷ The violence of the wicked will drag them away,
for they refuse to do what is just.

⁸ The way of a guilty person is crooked,
but the one who is pure does what is right.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- guilt, guilty
- pure, purify, purification

translationNotes:

- **The violence of the wicked will drag them away** - The writer speaks as though violence were a person who could drag other people away. God will punish wicked people who harm their innocent neighbors because of the violent deeds they have done. (See: **Personification**)
- **violence of the wicked** - The abstract noun “violence” refers to violent deeds or things people do to harm their innocent neighbors. The word “wicked” is a nominal adjective that can be translated as a noun phrase, “wicked people.” AT: “The violent acts wicked people do to harm their innocent neighbors” (See: **Abstract Nouns** and **Nominal Adjectives**)
- **drag them away** - “take hold of them and force them to appear before God so that God can judge them” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **The way of a guilty person is crooked** - This compares the way one lives to a crooked road one may travel. This is also an idiom. AT: “The way a guilty person lives is crooked” (See: **Idiom** and **Metaphor**)
- **crooked** - Here “crooked” means bent or not straight. This is a metaphor for morally wrong. AT: “wrong” (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ It is better to live alone in the corner of a housetop

than inside a house with a wife who always wants to argue with you.

¹⁰ The wicked crave evil more than anything,

when his neighbor looks at him, he cannot see any kindness in his eyes.

ULB:

⁹ It is better to live on a corner of the roof

than in a house shared with a quarrelsome wife.

¹⁰ The appetite of the wicked craves evil;

his neighbor sees no kindness in his eyes.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **a corner of the roof** - Houses in those days had flat roofs. Ancient Israelites spent much time on their roofs, where it was often cooler than inside the house, and sometimes people would build a shelter large enough for a person to sleep in on one corner of the roof. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **quarrelsome** - a person who often argues or complains
- **The appetite of the wicked craves evil** - The writer speaks of a person's appetite, the physical desire for food and drink, as if it were a person who could desire something. The word "wicked" is a nominal adjective that refers to evil people; the word "evil" is a metonym for evil deeds. AT: "Evil people desire to do evil deeds just as they desire to eat and drink" (See: [Personification](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **craves** - "strongly desires"
- **no kindness in his eyes** - The abstract noun "kindness" can be translated as an adjective. The litotes "no kindness" can be translated positively. The phrase "his eyes" is a metonym for the person. AT: "that he is not kind" or "that he is very mean" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Litotes](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:11-12**UDB:**

- ¹¹ When a person who acts like he is better than other people is punished,
 the simple—who do not know about right and wrong—are taught
 an important lesson,
 and if you teach one who is wise, they can learn even more.
- ¹² One who does what is right watches the house where evil people live,
 and he confronts their wickedness and brings them to justice.

ULB:

- ¹¹ When the mocker is punished, the naive become wise,
 and when the wise person is instructed, he lays hold of knowledge.
- ¹² The righteous person watches the house of the wicked person;
 he brings wicked people to disaster.

translationWords:

- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- punish, punishment
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- house
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **When the mocker is punished** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “When someone punishes the mocker” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **naive** - “inexperienced, immature”
- **the mocker** - “the person who mocks others”
- **when the wise person is instructed** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “when someone instructs the wise person” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **lays hold of knowledge** - Here knowledge is spoken of as if it were an object that someone could grasp and keep for himself. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **The righteous** - Possible meanings are 1) any righteous person or 2) “Yahweh the one who is righteous.”

- **watches** - “pays careful attention to”
- **he brings wicked people to disaster** - Here disaster is spoken of as if it were a place that someone could be brought to. AT: “he destroys them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ When the poor cried out for help, there was a person who refused to listen to their cries,
 but when he cried out, because he covered his ears to their cries,
 no one heard his cries.

¹⁴ Give a gift to a person who is angry with you, and it may turn away his anger;

 a secret gift may help a person who is angry at you to calm down.

ULB:

¹³ The one who shuts his ears to the cry of the poor,
 he also will cry out, but he will not be answered.

¹⁴ A gift in secret appeases anger
 and a concealed gift appeases strong wrath.

translationWords:

- gift
- angry, anger
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **The one who shuts his ears to the cry of the poor** - This is an idiom. AT: “The one who will not listen when poor people ask for help” (See: **Idiom**)
- **he will not be answered** - The word “answered” is a metonym for a person hearing another person ask for help and acting to help. This can be translated in active form. AT: “no one will do anything to help him” (See: **Metonymy** and **Active or Passive**)
- **appeases anger** - “makes an angry person feel better so he is no longer angry”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ When there is justice, those who love what is right are happy,

but when there is justice, it brings great fear to those who do what is evil.

¹⁶ A person who does not understand right and wrong, will get lost when he tries to make decisions,

he will only rest when he is dead.

ULB:

¹⁵ When justice is done, it brings joy to the righteous person, but it brings terror to evildoers.

¹⁶ The one who wanders from the way of understanding, he will rest in the assembly of the dead.

translationWords:

- just, justice, justly
- joy, joyful
- terror, terrify
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- rest
- assembly, assemble
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **When justice is done** - The abstract noun “justice” can be translated as a noun phrase. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “When rulers do what is just” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **wanders from the way of understanding** - This is an idiom. AT: “no longer lives wisely” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **he will rest in the assembly of the dead** - “he will remain in the assembly of dead spirits”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Love pleasure and it will make you poor;

you cannot be rich and love to drink wine and eat expensive foods.

¹⁸ A person who does right is honored much more than a wicked man,
and a good man is worth far more than one who never keeps his
promise.

ULB:

¹⁷ Whoever loves pleasure will become poor;

the one who loves wine and oil will not be rich.

¹⁸ A wicked person is ransom for the righteous person,
and the treacherous person is ransom for upright people.

translationWords:

- [love](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [oil](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [ransom](#)

translationNotes:

- **is ransom for** - The word “ransom” is a metaphor for one person who takes the place of another person. Here the person who does what is wrong is punished instead of the person who does what is right. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the treacherous** - a person who harms those who trust him by lying and otherwise dealing falsely
- **upright people** - “righteous people” or “honest people” or “just people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ It is better to live alone in a desert

than with a wife who is always stirring up conflicts and never stops complaining.

²⁰ Those who are wise have very precious treasures and they live very well, but foolish people waste all they have.

ULB:

¹⁹ It is better to live in the desert

than with a quarreling and angry wife.

²⁰ Precious treasure and oil are in the home of the wise, but a foolish man wastes them.

translationWords:

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [strife](#)
- [precious](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

translationNotes:

- **wise** - This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “wise person” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **wastes them** - “uses them all”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ A person who does right and is kind,

lives a good life, makes wise decisions, and receives honor from others.

²² When a wise leader goes up against a city of mighty warriors,

he knows how to bring down the defenses of the city and he conquers it.

ULB:

²¹ The one who does right and is kind—

this person finds life, righteousness, and honor.

²² A wise man scales the city of the mighty ones,

and he brings down the stronghold in which they trusted.

translationWords:

- life, live, living, alive
- righteous, righteousness
- honor, to honor
- wise, wisdom
- mighty, might
- stronghold, fortress, fortified

translationNotes:

- **scales the city** - “climbs up and over the wall that surrounds the city”
- **the city of the mighty ones** - “a city in which mighty men are living” or “a city of mighty warriors” (see UDB)
- **he brings down** - This is an idiom. AT: “he destroys” (See: **Idiom**)
- **the stronghold in which they trusted** - “the walls and towers around the city that they did not think anyone would be able to get past into the city, so they felt safe”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 21 General Notes
- **Proverbs 21 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 21:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Be careful, if you could put a guard to watch over the words that come out of your mouth and tongue,

you would keep away from a lot of trouble.

²⁴ The mocker thinks he is better than other people,
and his actions come from his pride and his arrogance.

ULB:

²³ Whoever guards his mouth and tongue
keeps himself out of trouble.

²⁴ The proud and haughty person—"Mocker" is his name—
acts with arrogant pride.

translationWords:

- tongue
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- proud, pride, prideful
- haughty
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- name
- arrogant

translationNotes:

- **Whoever guards his mouth and tongue** - Both "mouth" and "tongue" refer to what a person says. AT: "Whoever is careful in what he says" (See: **Doublet** and **Metonymy**)
- **The proud and haughty person ... acts with arrogant pride** - "You can expect a proud and haughty people to act with arrogant pride"
- **proud and haughty** - These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how prideful the person is. (See: **Doublet**)
- **"Mocker" is his name** - The word "name" is a metonym for what people would call him. AT: "a mocker is what you should call him" (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ The things that the lazy person chooses to do will kill him;

he refuses to work.

²⁶ All day long he desires things—he could not desire for more things—

but whoever does right gives gifts to others, and he never holds back anything that is good.

ULB:

²⁵ The desire of the lazy kills him,

for his hands refuse to work.

²⁶ All day long he craves and craves more,

but the righteous person gives and does not hold back.

translationWords:

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **The desire of the lazy kills him** - The writer speaks of what a person wants as if it were a person who could kill a lazy person. Here the lazy person wants to be idle and not work. AT: “A lazy person only wants to be idle, and because of that he will die” or “A lazy person will die because he does not want to work” (See: [Personification](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **his hands refuse** - The hand is a synecdoche for the person. AT: “he refuses” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **craves** - “wants greatly” or “desires strongly”
- **gives and does not hold back** - The phrase “does not hold back” can be stated positively, and what he gives can be made explicit. AT: “gives everything he should” or “gives generously” (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:27-28**UDB:**

- ²⁷ When the wicked decide to give an offering to Yahweh, Yahweh hates it,
 and Yahweh hates it even more when the wicked man comes to
 worship Yahweh in order to get something for himself.
- ²⁸ Those who lie about other people, will die,
 but the one who takes time to listen—when he says something, peo-
 ple will remember it.

ULB:

- ²⁷ The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable;
 it is even more detestable when he brings it with evil motives.
- ²⁸ A false witness will perish,
 but the one who listens will speak for all time.

translationWords:

- sacrifice, offering
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- detestable, detest
- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- perish, perishing, perishable

translationNotes:

- **The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable** - The writer does not mention Yahweh here, as in 15:8, but the reader should understand that it is Yahweh who detests the sacrifice of the wicked.
- **the wicked** - The nominal adjective “wicked” can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “the wicked person” or “wicked people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **it is even more detestable** - “Yahweh detests the sacrifice even more”
- **will speak for all time** - This is because people will never forget what he said.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 21 General Notes
- **Proverbs 21 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 21:29**UDB:**

²⁹ The wicked man acts as if he were strong,

but an honest man has thought about what to do and is certain about it.

ULB:

²⁹ A wicked man makes his face hard,

but an upright person is certain about his ways. [1]Some modern versions have *but an upright person thinks about his way* .

translationWords:

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **makes his face hard** - Possible meanings are 1) “pretends to be courageous” or 2) “will not listen to correction.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **is certain about his ways** - “is certain that what he does is right because he makes sure it is right before he acts” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 21:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Can there be any wisdom, any understanding, or any advice, that is wiser than Yahweh?

³¹ The groomsman prepares the horse for the day of battle,
but the outcome of the battle, the winner or the loser, is determined
by Yahweh.

ULB:

³⁰ There is no wisdom, there is no understanding, and there is no advice
that can stand against Yahweh.

³¹ The horse is prepared for the day of battle,
but the victory belongs to Yahweh.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor
- Yahweh
- horse

translationNotes:

- **There is no wisdom, there is no understanding, and there is no advice that** - The words “there is” are repeated to emphasize the abstract nouns “wisdom,” “understanding,” and “advice.” Yahweh is greater than anything that anyone can know or think or say. Your language may require that you not repeat “there is no.” The abstract nouns can be translated as adjectives or verbs. AT: “There is no wise person, there is no one who understands anything, and there is no one who tells others what to do who” or “There is no wisdom, understanding, or advice that” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **stand against Yahweh** - “defeat Yahweh” or “work against what Yahweh wants to do” or “show that he is right and Yahweh is wrong”
- **The horse is prepared for the day of battle** - These words can be translated in active form. AT: “Soldiers prepare horses for the day of battle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the day of battle** - The word “day” refers to time that may be longer or shorter than a day. AT: “when there is a battle” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 21 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 21 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 22 ends the section of the book which is attributed to Solomon and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

The second half of this chapter and the first half of the next chapter are attributed to the “Wise Men.” The exact identity of the men is unknown.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

With this new section of proverbs, the author begins to use many rhetorical question. The obvious answers should convince the reader. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 22:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 22:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Being a person who keeps his word is more important than having great riches,
and being a person who everyone respects for doing right, is better
than having silver and gold.

² People who are rich and people who are poor have at least one thing in
common—

Yahweh made both of them.

ULB:

22 ¹ A good name is to be chosen over great riches
and favor is better than silver and gold.

² Rich and poor people have this in common—

Yahweh is the maker of all of them.

translationWords:

- name
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- silver
- gold
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **A good name is to be chosen over great riches** - These words can be translated in active form. AT: “A person should choose a good name rather than great riches” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **A good name** - “To have others think that one is a good person”
- **have this in common** - “are alike in one way” or “are the same in this way”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:3-4**UDB:**

³ One who has good sense takes cover when he sees trouble coming,

but those who have no experience or knowledge rush ahead into danger.

⁴ When a person is humble and gives Yahweh the respect he deserves, these are his rewards: riches, and honor, and life.

ULB:

³ A prudent man sees trouble and hides himself, but the naive go on and suffer because of it.

⁴ The reward for humility and fear of Yahweh is riches, honor, and life.

translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- suffer, suffering
- humble, humility
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- honor, to honor
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **A prudent man** - “A man who is wise” or “A man who has good sense.” See how you translated “prudent” in [12:16](#).
- **the naive** - “the inexperienced and immature”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Where the perverse walk, their way is like a road covered with thorns, and there are traps in every step.

When you guard your own life from evil, you will stay away from all these dangers.

⁶ A child must be shown the way to live and the direction he should go, and when he reaches old age, he will stay on that same path.

ULB:

⁵ Thorns and snares lie in the path of the perverse; whoever guards his life will keep far from them.

⁶ Teach a child the way he should go and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.

translationWords:

- thorn, thistle
- perverse, perversely, pervert
- teach, teaching, teacher, taught
- children, child
- turn, turn away, turn back

translationNotes:

- **Thorns and snares lie in the path of the perverse** - The writer speaks of the way perverse people live as if it were a path on which the perverse will have trouble because of the natural “thorns” and man-made “snares.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **snares** - traps to catch animals
- **the perverse** - This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “perverse people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **whoever guards his life** - A person doing what he needs to do so he can live a long time is spoken of as if that person were keeping thieves away from a physical object. AT: “people who want to live a long time” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the way he should go** - How a person lives is spoken of as if it were a path on which he walks. AT: “how he should live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The fact is that the rich often have power over the poor,

and one who borrows money is almost like a slave to the one who lends him the money.

⁸ If you plant the seeds of wickedness, you can expect a crop of trouble,

and when you use a rod to discipline your child,

but you use it when you are furious, it will do no good.

ULB:

⁷ Rich people rule over poor people

and one who borrows is a slave to the one who lends.

⁸ He who sows injustice will reap trouble

and the rod of his fury will fade away.

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule
- servant, slave, slavery
- sow, sower, plant
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- reap, reaper
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **borrow** ... **lend** - You may need to make explicit what it is that is borrowed or lent. AT: “borrows money ... lends money” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **He who sows injustice will reap trouble** - The writer speaks of a ruler or other powerful person treating those less powerful unjustly as if he were planting seeds that will give birth to plants that bring trouble. AT: “If a person treats those less powerful than he is unjustly, they will cause him trouble later on” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the rod of his fury will fade away** - The word “rod” is a metonym for power over other people. Possible meanings are 1) the unjust ruler will lose the power that he had that allowed him to treat other people unjustly or 2) when the people respond to the injustice he had done

by harming him, he will have no power to stop them. AT: “he will no longer have the power that he had used to harm people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **rod of his fury** - The word “rod” is a metonym for power over other people. The unjust man was harming innocent people as if he were very angry with them. AT: “the rod he had used as if he were punishing people” or “the power he used to harm others” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **will fade away** - The word translated “fade away” is also used of plants drying up.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The one who looks for people to help, Yahweh will give many good gifts,

because he considered it important to share his food with the poor.

¹⁰ If you throw out the conceited person, out will go all kinds of conflict with him.

No one will quarrel or insult anyone else when he is gone.

ULB:

⁹ The one who has a generous eye will be blessed,

for he shares his bread with the poor.

¹⁰ Drive away the mocker, and out goes strife;

disputes and insults will cease.

translationWords:

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bread
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- strife

translationNotes:

- **The one who has a generous eye will be blessed** - These words can be translated in active form. AT: “God will bless the one who has a generous eye” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **one who has a generous eye** - The eye is a metonym for seeing what other people need, and the “generous eye” not only sees but gives what the other people need. The eye is also a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “generous person” or “person who is willing to give things to other people” (See: **Metonymy** and **Synecdoche**)
- **bread** - Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, it is often used to refer to food in general. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **disputes and insults will cease** - The abstract nouns “disputes” and “insults” can be translated as verbs. AT: “people will no longer argue with each other or say things to hurt each other” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ When a person loves to do something just because he wants to do what is good and right—
 he is sincere, and his speech is filled with kindness
 —the king will be his friend.

¹² Yahweh gives protection to knowledge, to keep it safe,
 just as surely as he makes the lying promises of the betrayer fail.

ULB:

¹¹ The one who loves a pure heart
 and whose speech is gracious,
 he will have the king for his friend.

¹² The eyes of Yahweh keep watch over knowledge,
 but he overthrows the words of the treacherous.

translationWords:

- pure, purify, purification
- heart
- grace, gracious
- king
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, make known
- word

translationNotes:

- **loves a pure heart** - It is his own heart that the person wants to be pure. The heart is a synecdoche for the person. AT: “loves having a pure heart” or “wants to be pure” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **gracious** - “kind”
- **The eyes of Yahweh keep watch over** - The eyes are a synecdoche for the person. The writer speaks as if Yahweh had physical eyes like a person. AT: “Yahweh keeps watch over” or “Yahweh guards knowledge” (See: **Synecdoche** and **Personification**)
- **keep watch over knowledge** - Keeping watch is a metonym for protecting. AT: “protect knowledge” (See: **Metonymy**)

- **overthrows** - “destroys”
- **the treacherous** - The nominal adjective treacherous can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “a treacherous person.” Translate “treacherous” as in [11:3](#). (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A lazy person calls out, “There is a lion in the street! If I go out, I will be killed!”

¹⁴ The words spoken by an adulteress will draw you in, and it will be as if you have fallen into a deep and dangerous pit!

All those who fall into that pit will be in trouble,

but what is worse, they will experience Yahweh’s anger for what they have done.

ULB:

¹³ The lazy person says, ”There is a lion in the street!

I will be killed in the open places.”

¹⁴ The mouth of an adulteress is a deep pit;

Yahweh’s anger is stirred up against anyone who falls into it.

translationWords:

- lion
- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- pit
- Yahweh
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **The lazy person says** - The quote that follows is a lie and an excuse for not working. If your language introduces false statements in a special way, you can use that here.
- **The mouth of an adulteress is a deep pit** - The word “mouth” is a metonym for the words that come out of the mouth. The writer speaks of a person being unable to escape having people punish him for evil deeds as if that person had fallen into a hole someone had dug in the ground from which he could not escape. AT: “The words spoken by an adulteress will draw you in, and it will be as if you have fallen into a deep and dangerous pit” (UDB) (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **an adulteress** - Translate this as in [5:3](#).
- **Yahweh’s anger is stirred up** - Here “stirred up” means that his anger increased. AT: “Yahweh is angry” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **falls into it** - Adultery is spoken of as if it is something that a person can fall into. AT: “sins because of the adulteress” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:15-16**UDB:**

- ¹⁵ Stupid and silly things are bound up within a child,
 and they come out in foolishness;
 but correcting a child with discipline drives the folly far away.
- ¹⁶ The one who makes his money by taking advantage of the poor,
 or by giving more money to the wealthy,
 Yahweh will bring him into poverty.

ULB:

- ¹⁵ Foolishness is bound up in the heart of a child,
 but the rod of discipline drives it far away.
- ¹⁶ The one who oppresses poor people to increase his wealth,
 or gives to rich people, will come to poverty.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- heart
- children, child
- rod
- discipline, self-discipline
- oppress, oppression, oppressor

translationNotes:

- **Foolishness is bound up in the heart of a child** - “The heart of a child is full of foolish things”
- **the rod of discipline** - The writer speaks of a parent using any form of discipline as if that parent were hitting the child with a wooden rod. (See: **Metonymy**)
- **drives it far away** - The writer speaks as if foolishness were a person that another person could use a physical rod to drive away. AT: “will make a child wise” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **to increase his wealth** - “to become richer” or “to gain more money”
- **gives to rich people** - “gives money to rich people”
- **will come to poverty** - This is an idiom. AT: “will become poor” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Now listen to what those who are wise have said;

give it all your attention and learn the knowledge you will need if you are to become wise.

¹⁸ It will be good for you to make them the guiding principles you live by, and be able to repeat all of them to others.

¹⁹ The most important thing is for you to trust in Yahweh, and so I am teaching them to you, yes, even to you.

ULB:

¹⁷ Incline your ear and listen to the words of the wise and apply your heart to my knowledge,

¹⁸ for it will be pleasant for you if you keep them within you, if all of them are ready on your lips.

¹⁹ So your trust may be in Yahweh, I teach them to you today—even to you.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- heart
- know, knowledge, make known
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verse 17 begins the introduction to a new section of the Book of Proverbs.
- **Incline your ear and listen** - Here the word “ear” represents the person who is listening. The writer speaks of listening attentively to someone as if it were leaning forward so that the ear is closer to the one speaking. See how you translated “incline your ear” in [4:20](#). AT: “Pay attention and listen” or “Listen attentively” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **the words of the wise** - “what wise people say”

- **apply your heart to** - This is an idiom. AT: “do your best to understand and remember” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **my knowledge** - The person speaking is probably the same as the father from [1:8](#). He may be speaking of “the words of the wise” as “my knowledge.” AT: “the knowledge I have, which I am sharing with you” or “what I know” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **all of them are ready on your lips** - The person being ready to speak is spoken of as if it were the words that were ready. AT: “you are able to speak of them at any time” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **today—even to you** - “today. Yes, I am teaching you,” The speaker is emphasizing that it is the hearer, not someone else whom he is teaching, and he is teaching the hearer because the hearer needs to learn. If it is awkward in your language to emphasize in this way, you can emphasize in another way or the words “even to you” can be left untranslated.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ I have written thirty of these sayings for you to learn;

sayings to give you advice and to teach you what you do not know.

²¹ These lessons show you what is true and they teach you with faithful lessons,

so you may give reliable and true answers to those who sent you.

ULB:

²⁰ Have I not written for you thirty sayings
of instruction and knowledge,

²¹ to teach you truth in these trustworthy words,
so you may give trustworthy answers to those who sent you?

translationWords:

- [instruct, instruction](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [word](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue and end the introduction that began in [22:17](#).
- **Have I not written for you ... you?** - This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You need to know that I have written for you ... you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **thirty sayings** - Some translations read, “excellent sayings.” (See: [Textual Variants](#))
- **to those who sent you** - This implies that the hearer is or will be one whom others send to gain and bring back information.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:22-23**UDB:**

²² Anyone can rob a poor person. Do not do it.

And do not hurt them who are begging at the city gate,

²³ for Yahweh stands to defend them,

and he will take the life of those who stole from the poor.

ULB:

²² Do not rob the poor because he is poor,

or crush the needy at the gate,

²³ for Yahweh will plead their case,

and he will rob of life those who robbed them.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- Yahweh
- plead, pleading, plea
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses begin the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Do not rob ... or crush** - If your language has a way of showing that this is the way one person would speak strongly to another, different from a general rule that people are supposed to obey, you should use it here.
- **the poor** - This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “any poor person” or “poor people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **crush** - grind into powder. This is a metaphor for “treat unjustly.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the needy** - This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “any needy person” or “any person who does not have what he needs to live” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **at the gate** - The place where people bought and sold items and settled legal arguments is used as a metonym for business and legal activity. AT: “in court” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Yahweh will plead their case** - The metaphor is of a lawyer defending the needy in front of a judge. AT: “Yahweh will defend the needy from those who oppress them” or “Yahweh will see that the needy receive justice” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **he will rob of life those who robbed them** - Yahweh is not a thief, but like a thief he will take life from those who do not choose to give it. AT: “he will destroy those who oppress poor people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Do not become a friend with one whose life is controlled by his anger,
and do not associate with a person who rages in his terrible wrath,
²⁵ or you will learn to be like him,
and your anger will become like a trap, a trap that will take charge
of your life.

ULB:

²⁴ Do not make a friend of someone who is ruled by anger
and you must not go with one who rages,
²⁵ or you will learn his ways
and you will take bait for your soul.

translationWords:

- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **someone who is ruled by anger** - someone who is unable to control his anger (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **rages** - shows violent anger
- **you will take bait for your soul** - A person who wants to be like an angry person is like an animal taking the bait in a trap. AT: “you will be like an animal that eats the bait that closes a trap and is unable to escape” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **bait for your soul** - The soul is a metonym for the person’s life. AT: “bait that someone has put out so he can kill you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Be careful that you do not shake hands and promise to pay for the debts of others,
and do not make or sign a pledge so another person can take out a
loan.

²⁷ For if you cannot pay it back,
they will surely come and take away everything from you, even
your bed on which you sleep.

ULB:

²⁶ Do not be one who strikes hands in making a pledge,
or who puts up security for debts.

²⁷ If you lack the means to pay,
what could stop someone from taking away your bed from under you?

translationWords:

- [pledge](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **strikes hands** - A person would strike his hand against another person’s hand to bind himself to do what he had agreed to do. Here the speaker warns the hearer not to strike hands as a way to promise to pay off someone’s debts.
- **in making a pledge** - “and agree to pay what someone owes to another person”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 22:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ The ancient boundary stones show where the property lines are. Do not take them away or move them. Your ancestors put them there. Leave them alone.

²⁹ One who learns a trade and is skillful at it will become a servant of kings.

Because of his achievements he will not serve mere ordinary people.

ULB:

²⁸ Do not remove the ancient boundary stone
that your fathers have set.

²⁹ Do you see a man skilled at his work? He will stand before kings;
he will not stand before common people.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- works, deeds, work, acts
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **ancient** - very old
- **boundary stone** - a large stone that shows where one person’s land ends and another person’s land begins
- **fathers** - ancestors
- **Do you see a man skilled at his work?** - This rhetorical question is actually a command. AT: “Think of someone you know who is skilled at his work” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **stand before** - serve, become a servant of. Kings and other important people will think so highly of him that they will use his services. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 22 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 22 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 23 continues the section beginning in the previous chapter of the book and is filled mainly with short, individual proverbs.

The second half of this chapter and the first half of the next chapter are attributed as general sayings.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 23:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 23:1-3**UDB:**

¹ When you sit down to eat a meal with ruler of a country,

think carefully about what is in front of you.

² It is said, “put a knife to your throat” if you think of eating a lot of food,

because it would be foolish to eat too much at such an important event.

³ Do not crave the special and expensive food the ruler enjoys;

the food will deceive you.

ULB:

23 ¹ When you sit to eat with a ruler,

observe carefully what is before you,

² and put a knife to your throat

if you are a person who likes to eat a lot of food.

³ Do not crave his delicacies,

for it is the food of lies.

translationWords:

- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **put a knife to your throat** - Possible meanings are 1) “be very careful not to eat too much” or 2) “do not eat anything at all” (See: **Hyperbole** and **Idiom**)
- **Do not crave** - “Do not strongly desire.” See how you translated “craves” in 21:9.
- **delicacies** - “special and expensive food” (UDB)
- **it is the food of lies** - This is an idiom. “he is giving it to you so he can deceive you” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Do not work so much that you are always tired, so you can become rich;

be wise and know when you should stop and rest.

⁵ As soon as you look at the money, it will be gone;

it will be as if it suddenly took up wings

and flew up like an eagle, up into the sky.

ULB:

⁴ Do not work too hard to gain wealth;

be wise enough to know when to stop.

⁵ Will you let your eyes light upon it?

It will be gone,

for it will surely take up wings like an eagle

and fly off to the sky.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- eagle

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Do not work too hard** - “Do not work so much that you are always tired” (UDB)
- **light upon it** - land like a bird upon the wealth (verse 4). This is a metaphor for looking at the wealth for a short time. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **it will surely take up wings like an eagle and fly off** - A person losing his wealth is spoken of as if the wealth were a bird. AT: “the wealth will disappear as quickly as an eagle can fly away” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **wings like an eagle** - wings like an eagle’s wings

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Do not eat with an evil man—he will gaze at your food for a long time—

do not desire his fine food,

⁷ because he will be thinking about how much your food cost him,

and he will say to you, “Eat and drink,”

but that is not what he will really be thinking.

⁸ When you realize what he is really thinking, you will want to vomit what you have eaten;

and you will have wasted all the compliments you gave about the fine meal he prepared.

ULB:

⁶ Do not eat the food of one with an evil eye—

and do not crave his delicacies,

⁷ for he is the kind of man who counts the price of the food.

“Eat and drink!” he says to you,

but his heart is not with you.

⁸ You will vomit up the little you have eaten

and you will have wasted your compliments.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **one with an evil eye** - Possible meanings are 1) a stingy person, one who does not like to give things to other people, or 2) an evil person (UDB).
- **do not crave** - “do not strongly desire.” See how you translated “craves” in 21:9.
- **delicacies** - “special and expensive food” (UDB). Translate as in 23:3.

- **his heart is not with you** - This is an idiom. AT: “he really does not want you to enjoy the meal” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **You will vomit up the little you have eaten** - This is an exaggeration. AT: “You will wish that you had not eaten anything” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **you will have wasted your compliments** - Compliments are spoken of as if they were valuable objects. The abstract noun “compliments” can be translated as a verb. AT: “he will not be happy even if you say good things about him and the food” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Do not waste time talking to a fool;

he will only despise the wise things that you say.

¹⁰ Again, do not remove the ancient boundary stone. It is a marker for the property lines;

and do not claim land that is set apart for orphans to work,

¹¹ because the One who redeems them is strong,

and he will plead their case against you.

ULB:

⁹ Do not speak in the hearing of a fool,

for he will despise the wisdom of your words.

¹⁰ Do not move an ancient boundary stone

or encroach on the fields of orphans,

¹¹ for their Redeemer is strong

and he will plead their case against you.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- word
- redeem, redemption, redeemer

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **in the hearing of a fool** - The abstract noun “hearing” can be translated as a verb. AT: “where a fool can hear you” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **ancient** - very old. Translate as in 22:28.
- **boundary stone** - This is a large stone to show where one person’s land ends and another person’s land begins. Translate as in 22:28.
- **encroach** - This means to slowly take or begin to use land (or some thing) that belongs to someone else.

- **orphans** - children whose parents are dead
- **their Redeemer** - Yahweh
- **he will plead their case against you** - The metaphor is of a lawyer defending the needy in front of a judge. AT: “he will defend the orphans against you” or “he will see that the orphans receive justice and punish you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:12**UDB:**

¹² Pay attention to what you are learning,
and listen to the words of knowledge.

ULB:

¹² Apply your heart to instruction
and your ears to words of knowledge.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)
- [word](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **Apply your heart to** - This is an idiom. Translate as in [22:17](#). AT: “Do your best to understand and remember” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **instruction** - Possible meanings are 1) “what people who know what is right and what is wrong tell you” or 2) “what people say and do when they correct you.”
- **and your ears** - The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “and apply your ears” or “and listen carefully” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **to words of knowledge** - “to me when I tell you what I know”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Do not refuse to discipline your children;

if you punish them, they will not die,

¹⁴ and if you beat them with the rod of discipline,

you may save their lives from death.

ULB:

¹³ Do not withhold instruction from a child,

for if you discipline him, he will not die.

¹⁴ It is you who must beat him with the rod

and save his soul from Sheol.

translationWords:

- discipline, self-discipline
- death, die, dead
- save, safe
- soul
- hades, sheol

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Do not withhold instruction from a child** - The abstract noun “instruction” can be translated as a verb. AT: “Do not neglect to instruct a child” or “Do not refuse to instruct a child” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **withhold** - refuse to give something that one knows another person needs
- **rod** - piece of wood
- **It is you who must beat him ... and save his soul** - “You are the one who must beat him ... and save his soul.” No one else will do it. The hearer is responsible to save the child’s soul from Sheol, and the way to save him is to beat him.
- **and save his soul from Sheol** - If the hearer beats his children with the rod, they will not die young because they have done foolish or evil things. The word “soul” is a metonym for the person. Sheol is the world of the dead; going to the world of the dead is a euphemism for dying. AT: “and you will keep him from the world of the dead” or “and you will keep him from dying” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ My son, if you have taken wisdom deep within yourself,

I will be very happy,

¹⁶ and I will be sincerely glad

when you say what is right.

ULB:

¹⁵ My son, if your heart is wise,

then my heart also will be glad;

¹⁶ my inmost being will rejoice

when your lips speak what is right.

translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [heart](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [rejoice](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **when your lips speak** - “Your lips” means the whole person. AT: “when you speak” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Do not envy sinful people;

but give Yahweh the respect he deserves, all day long.

¹⁸ If you respect him, you will have a life in the future,
and Yahweh will not cut off his promises for the future.

ULB:

¹⁷ Do not let your heart envy sinners,
but continue in the fear of Yahweh all the day.

¹⁸ Surely there is a future
and your hope will not be cut off.

translationWords:

- heart
- envy, covet
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hope
- cut off

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Do not let your heart envy sinners** - The word “heart” is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “Do not allow yourself to envy sinners” or “Make sure you do not envy sinners” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **your hope will not be cut off** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “God will not allow anyone to cut off your hope” or “God will keep the promises he made to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ My son, listen to me so you may become wise,

and think about the way you live your life.

²⁰ Do not associate with those who get drunk with wine,

or with those who eat far too much food,

²¹ because drunkards and gluttons will become poor;

and they will sleep so much that they will have nothing but rags to wear.

ULB:

¹⁹ Hear—you!—my son, and be wise

and direct your heart in the way.

²⁰ Do not associate with drunkards,

or with gluttonous eaters of meat,

²¹ for the drunkard and the glutton become poor

and slumber will clothe them with rags.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- wise, wisdom
- heart
- drunk, drunkard

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Hear—you!—my son** - “Listen carefully, my son.” The speaker speaks an extra word to make sure the hearer is paying attention.
- **direct your heart in the way** - Deciding to do what is right is spoken of as if one person were showing another person the correct path to follow. AT: “make sure you do what is wise” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **gluttonous eaters of meat** - Possible meanings are 1) “people who eat more meat than they need to” or 2) this is a synecdoche for “people who eat more food than they need to.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **slumber will clothe them with rags** - The word “slumber” is a hyperbole for a person spending too much time enjoying food and drink. This activity is spoken of as if it were a parent putting clothes on a child. AT: “because they spend so much time eating and drinking, they will do no work and so will become poor” (See: [Personification](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:22-23**UDB:**

²² Pay attention to your father who brought you into the world,

and do not hate your mother when she is old.

²³ When you study wisdom, think of it as buying truth, but never selling it;

and the same for wisdom, and with discipline, and also with understanding;

let it be as though you were buying them so you can keep them for the rest of your life.

ULB:

²² Listen to your father who begot you

and do not despise your mother when she is old.

²³ Buy the truth, but do not sell it;

buy wisdom, instruction, and understanding.

translationWords:

- true, truth, come true
- wise, wisdom
- discipline, self-discipline

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **do not despise** - This can be stated positively. “show respect for” (See: **Litotes**)
- **Buy the truth, but do not sell it; buy wisdom, instruction, and understanding** - Another possible meaning is “Buy the truth, and do not sell wisdom, instruction, or understanding.” The words “truth,” “wisdom,” “instruction,” and “understanding” are abstract nouns that are spoken of as if they were physical items that a person can buy and sell in a market. They can be translated as verbs. AT: “Do what you need to do so you can know what is true, so you can be wise, so you can learn how to act, and so you can tell good from bad; never think of anything else as more important than these things” (See: **Abstract Nouns** and **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ The father of a child who does what is right will be very happy;

any man who has a wise son will be very happy because of him.

²⁵ Make your father and mother proud,

and let your mother be glad.

ULB:

²⁴ The father of the righteous person will greatly rejoice,

and he who begets a wise child will be glad in him.

²⁵ Let your father and your mother be glad

and let her who bore you rejoice.

translationWords:

- rejoice
- wise, wisdom
- children, child

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **The father of the righteous person will greatly rejoice, and he who begets a wise child will be glad in him** - Another possible meaning is that “he that begets a wise child” explains who “the father of the righteous person” is. AT: “The father of the righteous person, he who begets a wise child, will greatly rejoice and will be glad in him.”
- **will be glad in him** - “will be glad because of him”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ My son, take what I say and put it deep within you,

and pay attention to the way that I live.

²⁷ A prostitute is like a very deep pit, that is easy to fall into, but difficult to get out;

another man's wife is a narrow pit; just as dangerous as a deep pit, but of a different kind.

²⁸ The immoral woman is waiting for you, waiting like a robber waits for his victim;

and they cause many men to become liars and traitors to those who love them.

ULB:

²⁶ My son, give me your heart

and let your eyes observe my ways.

²⁷ For a prostitute is a deep pit,

and an immoral woman is a narrow well.

²⁸ She lies in wait like a robber

and she increases the number of the treacherous among humanity.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- heart
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- pit

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **give me your heart** - The word “heart” is a metonym for what a person thinks and decides to do. Possible meanings are 1) “pay careful attention” or 2) “trust me completely.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

- **let your eyes observe** - The eyes are a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “observe” or “look carefully at” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **prostitute ... immoral woman** - There are two types of sexually immoral women. The “prostitute” is unmarried, “another man’s wife” is married. Together they form a merism for any kind of sexually immoral woman. (See: [Merism](#))
- **a prostitute is a deep pit** - The word “pit” is a metaphor for what happens to men who sleep with prostitutes. AT: “sleeping with a prostitute is like falling into a deep pit” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **prostitute** - Here the word refers to any unmarried woman who engages in sexual activity, not only those who do so for money.
- **deep pit ... narrow well** - These are two places easy to fall into and hard to get out of, the “pit” because it is “deep” and the “well” because it is “narrow.”
- **an immoral woman is a narrow well** - Doing evil for which one will be punished is spoken of as falling into a narrow place from which one cannot escape. AT: “Sleeping with another man’s wife is like falling into a narrow well” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **well** - a hole in the ground that people have dug to get to water
- **lies in wait** - stays hidden, ready to attack when a victim approaches
- **the treacherous** - This nominal adjective can be translated as an adjective or verb. AT: “treacherous people” or “those who harm others by deceiving them” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Who is it who had trouble? Who has sorrows? Who has conflicts and fights?

Who has quarreling? Who is wounded for no reason?

Whose eyes are always bloodshot because they drank too much or ate too much?

³⁰ It is those who drink too much wine
and those who drink the mixed wine.

ULB:

²⁹ Who has woe? Who has sorrow? Who has fights?

Who has complaining? Who has wounds for no reason?

Who has bloodshot eyes?

³⁰ Those who linger over wine,
those who try the mixed wine.

translationWords:

- woe
- wine, wineskin, new wine

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Who has woe? Who has sorrow? Who has fights? Who has complaining? Who has wounds for no reason? Who has bloodshot eyes?** - The writer uses these questions to prepare the reader for the point he is about to make about a particular type of person. He does not expect an answer to each question. Your language may have a different way of introducing a lesson. AT: “Listen to me while I tell you what kind of person has woe, sorrow, fights, complaining, wounds for no reason, and bloodshot eyes.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **bloodshot eyes** - “eyes red, like the color of blood”
- **Those who linger over wine, those who try the mixed wine** - These words answer the questions in verse 29 and describe people who drink too much wine.
- **linger over wine** - spend much time drinking wine and so drink much wine (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **the mixed wine** - Possible meanings are 1) different wines mixed together or 2) other drinks that are stronger than wine.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ Do not look with pleasure at red wine when it sparkles in the cup,
and it goes down the throat smoothly.

³² But, in the last, it bites you like a poisonous snake .

³³ It makes you see strange things,
and within you, you say perverse things when you are drunk.

ULB:

³¹ Do not look at the wine when it is red,
when it sparkles in the cup
and goes down smoothly.

³² In the last it bites like a serpent
and it stings like an adder.

³³ Your eyes will see strange things
and your heart will utter perverse things.

translationWords:

- wine, wineskin, new wine
- serpent, snake, viper
- heart

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **In the last** - “After you drink it”
- **it bites like a serpent ... it stings like an adder** - The word “it” refers to “the wine when it is red.” “Bites” and “stings” are metaphors for the way too much wine makes people feel. AT: “it makes you feel as bad as if a serpent had bitten you or an adder had stung you” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))
- **adder** - a type of poisonous snake
- **your heart will utter perverse things** - The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks and decides to do. AT: “you will think about and decide to do perverse things” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **perverse things** - things that God says are morally wrong and bad; things that are wicked

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 23:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ You will think you are on a ship that is tossing on the sea;

you will be like someone who is trying to sleep up on the rigging of the boat.

³⁵ You will say, "I think that someone struck me, but he did not hurt me;

They beat me, but I did not feel it.

When will I wake up

in order that I can drink some more wine?"

ULB:

³⁴ You will be as one who sleeps on the high seas

or lies on the top of a mast.

³⁵ "They hit me," you will say, "but I was not hurt.

They beat me, but I did not feel it.

When will I wake up? I will seek another drink."

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the "thirty sayings" (22:20). It is the continuation of the description of a drunk person.
- **lies on the top of a mast** - The place on the mast where the person lies can be made explicit. AT: "lies in the basket near the top of a mast" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **mast** - the long wooden pole to which are attached the sails of a sailing ship
- **They hit me, ... but I was not hurt. They beat me, but I did not feel it.** - Because the drunk person is not thinking clearly, he is imagining that people are hitting and beating him, yet he feels no pain and cannot remember anything.
- **When will I wake up?** - The drunk person is wondering when he will be sober again; when the effect of the wine will stop.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 23 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 23 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 24 continues the section beginning in the previous chapter and is mainly filled with short, individual proverbs.

The second half of this chapter finishes a section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Lazy Man Story

Unlike much of Proverbs, verse 30-34 tells a short story about a lazy man, which ends in a very memorable proverb.

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 24:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 24:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Do not want what evil people have;
do not desire them for friends,
² because they are plotting to do violence;
they talk about making trouble.

ULB:

24 ¹ Do not be envious of those who are evil,
nor desire to associate with them,
² because their hearts plot violence
and their lips talk about trouble.

translationWords:

- [envy, covet](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [heart](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **their hearts** - The words “their hearts” refer to the whole person. AT: “they” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **their lips** - The words “their lips” refer to the whole person. AT: “they” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **talk about trouble** - “talk about causing harm” or “talk about creating problems”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:3-4**UDB:**

³ It takes wisdom to build a house,

and by understanding the builder exercises his craft, and a house is made solid on its foundation.

⁴ It takes knowledge to fill the rooms of the house with all the beautiful and expensive decorations.

ULB:

³ Through wisdom a house is built and by understanding it is established.

⁴ By knowledge the rooms are filled with all precious and pleasant riches.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- house
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Through wisdom a house is built** - The abstract noun “wisdom” can be translated as an adjective. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “People need to be wise if they are to build a good house” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **by understanding it is established** - The abstract noun “understanding” can be translated as a verb. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “People need to understand what is morally good and what is morally bad if they are to establish a house” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **established** - made stable and strong. The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, and the house being physically stable and strong is a metaphor for a family that lives in peace. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **By knowledge the rooms are filled** - The abstract noun “knowledge” can be translated as a verb. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “People need to know what is precious and pleasant if they are to fill their rooms” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ A man who has wisdom has strength,

and a person with knowledge is mightier than the one who is strong,

⁶ for with wise guidance you can wage a war successfully,

and by the advice of many advisors there will be victory.

ULB:

⁵ A warrior of wisdom is strong,

and a man of knowledge increases his strength;

⁶ for by wise direction you can wage your war

and with many advisors there is victory.

translationWords:

- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **warrior of wisdom** - The abstract noun “wisdom” can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “wise warrior” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **a man of knowledge increases his strength** - The abstract nouns “knowledge” and “strength” can be translated as the verb “know” and the adjective “strong.” AT: “a man who knows many things is stronger because he knows these things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **by wise direction** - The abstract noun “direction” can be translated as a verb. AT: “if you have wise people telling you what to do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **wage** - “fight”
- **advisors** - those who tell government officials what those officials should do

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:7**UDB:**

⁷ Wisdom is something that a fool cannot understand;

at the gate where the elders gather, the fool has nothing to say.

ULB:

⁷ Wisdom is too high for a fool;

in the gate he does not open his mouth.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **too high for a fool** - This is an idiom. “too difficult for a fool to understand” (See: **Idiom**)
- **open his mouth** - The mouth is a metonym for the words that come from the mouth. AT: “speak” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ There is a man who does evil and makes plots—he is called the Master of Schemes.

⁹ A foolish plan is not only folly, it is sin;

when people tell the truth, they hate those who are conceited and mock everyone.

ULB:

⁸ There is one who plans to do evil—

people call him a master of schemes.

⁹ A foolish plan is sin

and men despise a mocker.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- lord, master, sir
- fool, foolish, folly
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- mock, ridicule, scoff at

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **a master of schemes** - one who is skillful at making evil plans. AT: “a mischievous person” or “a troublemaker”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ When trouble comes, and you are terrified like a coward,
then your strength is small.

ULB:

¹⁰ If you become weak with fear in the day of trouble,
then your strength is small.

translationWords:

- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **your strength is small** - This is an idiom. AT: “you have very little strength” or “you are certainly weak” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Rescue the ones who are being carried away to the slaughter;

they stagger and fall—hold them back from the one who would kill them.

¹² If you say, “I did not know that those people needed any help,” then think about this:

God knows why we do everything, so he also knows why you said those people needed no help.

God sees everything you do in this life, so he certainly understands why you said that about those people.

He will certainly pay you back—and everyone else, too—for the harm they have done.

ULB:

¹¹ Rescue those who are being taken away to death
and hold back those who are staggering to the slaughter.

¹² If you say, “Behold, we knew nothing about this,”
does not the one who weighs the heart understand what you are saying?
The one who guards your life, does he not know it?
Will God not give to each one what he deserves?

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **those who are being taken away** - These words can be translated in active form. AT: “those whom they are taking away,” where “they” could be anyone, but are probably government officials. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **taken away** - Another possible meaning is “dragged away.”
- **staggering** - walking unsteadily and almost falling. This word would also describe the way a person walks when he is being dragged away.
- **the slaughter** - The abstract noun “slaughter” can be translated as a verb. The writer speaks as if those who take them away think of them as no better than animals. If your language has a word for killing animals that would fit here, you might want to use it. AT: “where people will kill them as they would kill animals” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **If you say, “Behold, ... this,” does** - The writer is answering something that the reader may wrongly be thinking. AT: “You may say, ‘Behold, ... this,’ but does”
- **Behold, we** - “Listen to us! We” or “But we” or “We have done nothing wrong, because we”
- **does not the one who weighs the heart understand what you are saying?** - The writer assumes the readers know the answer and asks this for emphasis. AT: “the one who weighs the heart understands what you are saying.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **the one who** - The writer expects the reader to know that “the one” is Yahweh. AT: “Yahweh, who” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **weighs the heart** - The word “heart” is a metonym for what a person thinks and desires. The writer speaks as if what a person thinks and desires were a physical object that a person could weigh, and weighing an object is a metaphor for looking closely at something to see how good it is. AT: “knows how good what people really think and desire is” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **The one who guards your life, does he not know it?** - The writer assumes the readers know the answer and asks this for emphasis. AT: “The one who guards your life knows it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Will God not give to each one what he deserves?** - The writer assumes the readers know the answer and asks this for emphasis. AT: “God will give to each one what he deserves.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ My son, eat honey, because it tastes good;

the honeycomb is sweet.

¹⁴ Wisdom is like the honeycomb, it feeds your life, if you can find it.

If you can find it, you will have a future,

and you will come to the future with hope that will not be cut short.

ULB:

¹³ My son, eat honey because it is good,

because the drippings of the honeycomb are sweet to your taste.

¹⁴ Such is wisdom for your soul—

if you find it, there will be a future

and your hope will not be cut off.

translationWords:

- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [soul](#)
- [hope](#)
- [cut off](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **your hope will not be cut off** - Possible meanings are 1) this is a simple passive that can be translated as in active form. AT: “no one will take your hope away” or 2) this is litotes that can be translated in positive form. AT: “your hope will surely continue” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Do not be like wicked people who hide and wait to attack the home of those who do what is right.

Do not commit a violent attack on the place where the good man rests!

¹⁶ Even if good people fall down seven times,

they always get back up,

but when a disaster comes to the wicked,

they are ruined by it.

ULB:

¹⁵ Do not lie in wait like the wicked person who attacks the house of the righteous person.

Do not destroy his home!

¹⁶ For the righteous person falls down seven times and rises again,

but wicked people are brought down by calamity.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **Do not lie in wait** - The words “lie in wait” are an idiom. AT: “Do not hide and wait for the right time.” Translate “lie in wait” as in 1:11. (See: **Idiom**)
- **his home** - the home of the righteous person
- **rises** - “gets back on his feet” or “stands up”
- **wicked people are brought down by calamity** - The writer speaks as if “calamity” were a person who could do bad things to other people. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “God will use calamity to bring down the wicked people” (See: **Personification** and **Active or Passive**)
- **are brought down** - This is a metaphor of a person who was standing but someone has brought him down to the ground or made him fall. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **calamity** - times when bad things happen to people and their property

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ When your enemy falls, do not rejoice,

and do not be happy when he stumbles,

¹⁸ for Yahweh will see how you treat your enemy, and if he disapproves how you treat him,

Yahweh may turn his wrath from your enemy and put it on you.

ULB:

¹⁷ Do not celebrate when your enemy falls

and let not your heart be glad when he stumbles,

¹⁸ or Yahweh will see and disapprove

and turn away his wrath from him.

translationWords:

- adversary, enemy
- heart
- stumble
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **your enemy falls** - “something bad happens to your enemy”
- **let not your heart be glad** - This is a strong command. The word “heart” is a metonym for the person. AT: “do not allow yourself to be glad” or “stop yourself from being glad” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **turn away his wrath from him** - The words “turn away his wrath” are an idiom for no longer being angry. What Yahweh would do instead can be made explicit. AT: “stop being angry with him and be angry with you instead” (see UDB) (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Do not worry about those who do what is evil,
and do not be jealous of them,
²⁰ for there is no future for the wicked;
they are like a lamp whose light will soon be put out.

ULB:

¹⁹ Do not worry because of evildoers,
and do not envy wicked people,
²⁰ for the evil person has no future
and the lamp of wicked people will go out.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- envy, covet
- lamp

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” (22:20).
- **the lamp of wicked people will go out** - The lamp is used as a metaphor for life. The life of wicked people will end just as a lamp goes out. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ My son, give to Yahweh and give to the king the respect each of them deserves,
and do not associate with anyone who rebels against either Yahweh
or the king;

²² because disasters will suddenly come upon those rebels,
and no one knows how terrible the disasters will be that will come
from both Yahweh and from the king.

ULB:

²¹ Fear Yahweh, and fear the king, my son;
do not associate with those who rebel against them,
²² for suddenly their disaster will come
and who knows the extent of the destruction that will come from both of
them?

translationWords:

- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - These verses continue the “thirty sayings” ([22:20](#)).
- **Fear** - a deep respect and awe for a person in authority
- **who knows the extent of the destruction that will come from both of them?** - The writer asks this question to emphasize the disaster. AT: “no one knows the extent of the destruction that will come from both of them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **both of them** - these words refer to Yahweh and the king

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:23**UDB:**

²³ Here are more things that wise people have said:

It is wrong for judges to decide matters unfairly.

ULB:

²³ These also are sayings of the wise.

Partiality in judging a case at law is not good.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- partial, partiality
- judge, judgment
- law, principle

translationNotes:

- **These also are sayings of the wise** - This sentence starts a new collection of proverbs.
- **a case at law** - a situation that is brought before a judge in which someone is accused of breaking the law

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ If they say to people who are guilty, “You are innocent,”

they will be cursed by foreign peoples, and hated by nations.

²⁵ But if judges say that guilty people must be punished,

things will go well for those judges, and they will receive gifts of goodness.

ULB:

²⁴ Whoever says to the wicked person, “You are a righteous person,”

will be cursed by peoples and hated by nations.

²⁵ But those who discipline the wicked will have delight

and gifts of goodness will come to them.

translationWords:

- **guilt, guilty**
- **curse, cursed**
- **nation**
- **rebuke**
- **evil, wicked, wickedness**

translationNotes:

- **Whoever says to the wicked person, ... will be cursed by peoples and hated by nations** - The word “nations” is a metonym for the people who live in the nations. These words can be translated in active form. AT: “People will curse whoever says to the wicked person, ... , and the people of other nations will hate him”
- **the wicked person ... a righteous person** - Possible meanings are 1) people should never call any wicked person a righteous person or 2) no one should say of a person guilty of a crime that he is innocent. AT: “a person guilty of a crime ... innocent”
- **will have delight** - “will be very happy”
- **gifts of goodness will come to them** - Gifts are spoken of as if they were people who could move by themselves. The abstract noun “goodness” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “people will give them good gifts” (See: **Personification** and **Abstract Nouns**)
- **gifts of goodness** - “good things” or “blessings”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Answering honestly—that is the best thing a person can do.

²⁷ First, do the work that needs to be done outside,
and prepare your fields;
and after that, build your house.

ULB:

²⁶ The one who gives an honest answer
gives a kiss on the lips.

²⁷ Prepare your outdoor work,
and make everything ready for yourself in the field;
after that, build your house.

translationWords:

- [kiss](#)
- [house](#)

translationNotes:

- **gives a kiss on the lips** - A kiss was a sign of respect and devotion in that culture. AT: “shows true friendship” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ Do not give testimony against your neighbor if there is no reason for it,
and do not deceive people when you are telling what you know.

²⁹ Do not say, "I will do to him what he did to me;
I will pay him back for what he did to me."

ULB:

²⁸ Do not bear witness against your neighbor without cause
and do not deceive with your lips.

²⁹ Do not say, "I will do to him what he has done to me;
I will pay him back for what he has done."

translationWords:

- [witness, eyewitness](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)

translationNotes:

- **with your lips** - The lips are a metonym for the words a person speaks. AT: "by what you say" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **pay him back** - This is an idiom. "take revenge against him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ I walked by the field of a lazy man,
past the vineyard of a man who had no good judgment.
³¹ Thorns grew there and the stone wall had fallen down.

ULB:

³⁰ I went by the field of a lazy man,
past the vineyard of the man having no sense.
³¹ Thorns had grown up everywhere,
the ground was covered with nettles,
and its stone wall was broken down.

translationWords:

- [vineyard](#)

translationNotes:

- **Thorns** - useless plants with sharp spines
- **nettles** - plants that are covered with stinging leaves and hairs
- **was broken down** - “had fallen down”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 24:32-34**UDB:**

³² When I saw that, I thought about it, and I learned this:

³³ A little sleep, a little nap, a little folding of the hands to rest—and while you rest,

³⁴ poverty will come to you like a thief who steals from you,
and poverty will come like an armed soldier who attacks you.

ULB:

³² Then I saw and considered it;

I looked and received instruction.

³³ A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest—

³⁴ and poverty comes marching upon you,
and your needs like an armed soldier.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **received instruction** - “learned a lesson”
- **A little sleep ... to rest—and poverty comes** - You may need to fill in the omitted words. AT: “You may say to yourself, ‘A little sleep ... to rest’—but then poverty will come” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **poverty comes marching upon you** - Some translations read, “poverty comes upon you like a robber.” Poverty is spoken of as if it were a person or animal that can attack a lazy person. (See: [Personification](#))
- **your needs like an armed soldier** - Needs are spoken of as if they were a person who could attack the lazy person. AT: “your needs will come to you like an armed soldier” (See: [Simile](#) and [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 24 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 24 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 25 begins the second section of the book (Chapter 25-29) which is attributed to Solomon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 25:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 25:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Here are more wise sayings of Solomon that were written down by the men of Hezekiah, the king of Judah.

² God honors himself when he hides something so people cannot know it.

But it is to the honor of kings to search out the things that God has hidden.

³ What kings think is above the way peasants think; they are like the heavens, they are above us all;

and all kings have the same deep burdens that others cannot understand.

ULB:

25 ¹ These are more proverbs of Solomon, copied by the men of Hezekiah, king of Judah.

² It is the glory of God to conceal a matter,
but the glory of kings to search it out.

³ Like the heavens are for height and the earth is for depth,
so the heart of kings is unsearchable.

translationWords:

- proverb
- Solomon
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- glory, glorious
- God
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- heart

translationNotes:

- **to conceal a matter** - “to keep some things secret”
- **but the glory** - The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “but it is the glory” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

- **search it out** - “search that matter out” or “search for those things that God has concealed”
- **Like the heavens are for height and the earth is for depth, so the heart of kings is unsearchable** - The hearts of kings are compared to the size of the heavens and the earth. AT: “Just as no one can measure the height of the heavens or the depth of the earth, even so no one can understand the heart of kings” (See: [Simile](#))
- **heavens** - This refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Silver cannot be used by the metal worker,

unless the silver is heated and dross is removed from it;

⁵ just as the dross is removed, even so, if wicked men are removed from the king's court,

his throne will be more secure, and he will be able to do what is right.

ULB:

⁴ Remove the dross from the silver

and a metal worker can use the silver in his craft.

⁵ Even so, remove wicked people from the presence of the king and his throne will be established by doing what is right.

translationWords:

- [silver](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [king](#)
- [throne](#)

translationNotes:

- **dross** - the material in a metal that people do not want and they remove by heating the metal
- **his throne will be established by doing** - The throne is a metonym for the power to rule. These words can be translated in active form. AT: "the king will establish his throne by doing" or "he will have the power to rule because he does" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:6

UDB:

⁶ When you stand in front of a king, do not bring attention to yourself
and do not stand in the place set aside for those the king is honoring.

ULB:

⁶ Do not honor yourself in the king's presence
and do not stand in the place designated for great people.

translationWords:

- [honor, to honor](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ It is better if someone important invites you, saying, “Come up and sit closer to the king,”
 than to embarrass you in front of an important nobleman by making you move so that you now sit far away from the king.

When you witness something that gives you concern,

⁸ you should not quickly bring the matter to trial,
 unless you are very sure about it.

because your neighbor may have a good explanation for what you saw.

ULB:

⁷ It is better for him to say to you, “Come up here,”
 than for him to humiliate you before a nobleman.

What you have witnessed,

⁸ do not bring quickly to trial.

For what will you do in the end

when your neighbor puts you to shame?

translationWords:

- **humiliate, humiliation**
- **noble, nobleman**
- **witness, eyewitness**
- **trial**
- **neighbor**
- **shame, shameful, ashamed**

translationNotes:

- **It is better for him to say to you, “Come up here”** - Here “up” means to move to a place at the table that is closer to the king. It is a great honor for a person to sit closer to the king. AT: “It is better for someone to invite you to sit closer to the king” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **before a noble** - “in front of a nobleman”

- **For what will you do in the end when your neighbor puts you to shame?** - This question is asked to make the reader consider the possibility that he may have misunderstood the situation. The way in which the neighbor might put the reader to shame can be stated plainly. AT: “For you will not know what to do in the end when your neighbor puts you to shame.” or “For if your neighbor has an explanation, he will put you to shame, and you will have nothing to say to defend yourself.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:9-10**UDB:**

- ⁹ If you and your neighbor are having a disagreement,
settle it between yourselves, and do not tell others any secret you
have learned about;
- ¹⁰ for others might find out what you have done,
and you would be ashamed;
and from that time on, you will have a bad reputation.

ULB:

- ⁹ Argue your case between you and your neighbor himself
and do not disclose another's secret,
- ¹⁰ or else the one who hears you will bring shame upon you
and an evil report about you that cannot be silenced.

translationWords:

- [neighbor](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

translationNotes:

- **your case** - “your disagreement”
- **do not disclose another's secret** - “do not share your neighbor's secret with other people”
- **and an evil report about you that cannot be silenced** - Here “evil report” refers to harmful things that the person will tell others. The phrase “cannot be silenced” can be stated in active form. AT: “and you will not be able to stop him from telling other people harmful things about you” or “and he will tell people evil things about you and you will never have a good reputation again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Use the right words and a phrase put together to say exactly what you mean;

this is as delightful as seeing designs of gold in a silver bowl.

¹² When a wise person rebukes someone who is willing to listen to him,

it is as priceless as a gold ring or jewelry made of finest gold.

ULB:

¹¹ Apples of gold in settings of silver

is a word spoken in the right situation.

¹² A gold ring or jewelry made of fine gold

is a wise rebuke to a listening ear.

translationWords:

- word
- gold
- silver
- wise, wisdom
- rebuke

translationNotes:

- **Apples of gold in settings of silver is a word spoken in the right situation** - The goodness of “a word spoken at the right time” is spoken of as if it were the physical beauty of “apples of gold in settings of silver.” Most translations translate this metaphor as a simile and change the order of the phrases. AT: “A word spoken at the right time is beautiful like apples of gold in settings of silver” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Apples of gold in settings of silver** - The ancient Israelites did not know the apples that most people know today. Possible meanings are 1) “apples” should be translated as “design.” AT: “a golden design carved into a silver bowl” or 2) “apples” refers to another type of fruit with a golden color that someone has placed on a silver plate or bowl. AT: “Golden colored fruit placed in a silver bowl”
- **is a word spoken** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “is a message that someone speaks” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **A gold ring or jewelry made of fine gold is a wise rebuke to a listening ear** - The value and importance of “a wise rebuke” is spoken of as if it had the beauty and value of gold. Most translations translate this metaphor as a simile and change the order of the phrases. AT: “A wise rebuke to a listening ear is beautiful and valuable like a golden ring or golden jewelry” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **listening ear** - The ear is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “person who is willing to listen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ A messenger who is reliable and on time, gives delight to those who sent him,
to them he is like the cold of snow at harvest time, that refreshes
the ground.

¹⁴ When someone boasts about a gift he is going to give, but never gives it,
he is like the clouds and the wind that do not bring rain.

ULB:

¹³ Like the cold of snow at harvest time
is a faithful messenger for those who sent him;
he brings back the life of his masters.

¹⁴ Clouds and wind without rain
is the one who boasts about a gift he does not give.

translationWords:

- snow
- harvest
- time
- faithful, faithfulness
- messenger
- lord, master, sir
- boast, boastful

translationNotes:

- **Like the cold of snow at harvest time is a faithful messenger** - Here a faithful messenger is being compared to the cold of snow, because both are pleasant. (See: **Simile**)
- **the cold of snow** - Snow only fell on the tops of mountains, and the harvest took place in hot weather, so this is probably a metaphor for cool, fresh water from a clean stream. If your language has no word for snow, consider “cool, fresh, clean water.” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **snow** - white flakes of ice that fall from the sky like rain
- **brings back the life of his masters** - This means he makes his masters, who are weak and tired, to be strong and rested again.

- **Clouds and wind without rain is the one who boasts ... not give** - Most translations translate this metaphor as a simile and change the order of the phrases. Rain was important to the Israelites because only small amounts of it fell, so a cloud without rain was useless and brought disappointment to the Israelites. AT: “The one who boasts ... not give is like clouds and wind without rain” or “The one who boasts ... not give is useless and a disappointment, like clouds and wind without rain” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ With patient persuasion even a ruler's mind can be changed,
like the proverb that says, 'a soft tongue can break a bone.'

ULB:

¹⁵ With patience a ruler can be persuaded
and a soft tongue can break a bone.

translationWords:

- patient, patience
- ruler, rulers, rule
- tongue

translationNotes:

- **With patience a ruler can be persuaded** - These words can be translated in active form. AT: "Someone who is patient can persuade a ruler" or "Someone who is patient can speak to a ruler and change his mind" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a soft tongue can break a bone** - The word "tongue" is a metonym for the words the person speaks using the tongue. The word "bone" is a metaphor for strong opposition. AT: "gentle speech can overcome strong opposition" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ If you find some honey, eat just a little,

because if you eat too much, you could vomit it up.

¹⁷ Do not go to your neighbor's house too often;

he may get tired of you, and if you do not stop, he could even grow to hate you.

ULB:

¹⁶ If you find honey, eat just enough—

otherwise, having too much of it, you vomit it up.

¹⁷ Do not set your foot in your neighbor's house too often,

he may become tired of you and hate you.

translationWords:

- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - Verse 16 states a general principle, and verse 17 gives one specific example. The idea of eating too much honey and then vomiting it up is a metaphor for taking too much of any good thing and regretting it later. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ To falsely accuse others in court

is like attacking them with a club used in battle, or with a sword, or with sharp arrows.

¹⁹ Depending on an unreliable person during times of trouble

is like having a bad tooth or a foot that slips and makes you fall.

ULB:

¹⁸ A man who bears false witness against his neighbor

is like a club used in war, or a sword, or a sharp arrow.

¹⁹ An unfaithful man in whom you trust in a time of trouble

is like a bad tooth or a foot that slips.

translationWords:

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- neighbor
- sword
- bow and arrow
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- trouble, troubles, troubled

translationNotes:

- **A man who bears false witness against his neighbor is like a club used in war, or a sword, or a sharp arrow** - A false witness is compared to three weapons that can hurt or kill people. (See: [Simile](#))
- **An unfaithful man in whom you trust in a time of trouble is like a bad tooth or a foot that slips** - A foolish man is compared to a part of the body that causes trouble for a person. AT: "Trusting in an unfaithful man in time of trouble will bring you pain like a bad tooth or a foot that slips" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:20**UDB:**

²⁰ Singing a song to someone who is feeling sad,
it is as unhelpful as taking off a coat on a very cold day,
or pouring vinegar into a wound.

ULB:

²⁰ Like a person who takes off a garment in cold weather,
or like vinegar poured upon carbonate of soda,
is the one who sings songs to a heavy heart.

translationWords:

- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **carbonate of soda** - This is a kind of mineral that hisses and bubbles violently when it comes into contact with acids like vinegar. Many translations translate this phrase as “a wound.”
- **sings songs** - You may need to make explicit what kind of songs the singer sings. AT: “sings happy songs” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a heavy heart** - The heart is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “a sad person” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ If your enemies are hungry, give them something to eat;

if they are thirsty, give them something to drink;

²² that will be the equal to pouring coals of fire on his head, without doing him any harm,

and Yahweh will reward you for doing that.

ULB:

²¹ If your enemy is hungry, give him food to eat,
and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink,

²² for you will shovel coals of fire on his head
and Yahweh will reward you.

translationWords:

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **shovel coals of fire on his head** - This is an idiom. AT: “cause him to have a guilty conscience and be ashamed of what he has done” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:23-24**UDB:**

²³ When wind blows from the north, it will certainly rain;

it is just as certain that someone who tells secrets about others will make people angry.

²⁴ It is better to live alone in the corner of a housetop

than inside a house with a wife who always wants to argue with you.

ULB:

²³ As surely the north wind brings rain,
someone who tells secrets makes faces angry.

²⁴ It is better to live on a corner of the roof
than in a house shared with a quarreling wife.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **the north wind** - In Israel, wind from the north often brought rain. Translators are free to substitute different kinds of wind for the same effect, for example, “a cold wind.”
- **someone who tells secrets** - Some versions read “someone who is angry.”
- **makes faces angry** - The face is a metonym for the person. AT: “makes other people angry” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **a corner of the roof** - Houses in those days had flat roofs. Ancient Israelites spent much time on their roofs, where it was often cooler than inside the house, and sometimes people would build a shelter large enough for a person to sleep in on one corner of the roof. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a quarreling wife** - a wife who often argues or complains

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ When you receive news from a far away country,

that is like giving cold water to a person who is thirsty.

²⁶ A good person who falls before the wicked,

that is as bad as a spring that becomes muddied or a fountain that becomes polluted.

ULB:

²⁵ Like cold waters to one who is thirsty,

so is good news from a far country.

²⁶ Like a fouled spring or a ruined fountain

is a righteous person tottering before wicked people.

translationWords:

- water, waters
- fountain, spring
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **Like cold waters to one who is thirsty, so is good news from a far country** - Cold water is compared to good news that is both refreshing and delightful. (See: **Simile**)
- **Like a fouled spring or a ruined fountain is a righteous person tottering before wicked people** - One expects a spring or fountain to have clear water, just as one expects a righteous man to stand for what he believes. A polluted spring or fountain is compared to a righteous man who falls. (See: **Simile**)
- **tottering before wicked people** - Tottering is a metaphor for either 1) refusing to fight wicked people or 2) joining in their wickedness. AT: “who allows wicked people to do wickedness” or “who starts to do what wicked people do” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **tottering** - This is a metaphor for being unable to continue to do good. AT: “unable to stand” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **before wicked people** - Possible meanings are 1) “when wicked people attack him” or 2) “when wicked people urge him to do evil.” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 25:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ It is not good to eat too much honey;

that is like searching for more honor when you already have honor.

²⁸ A person who cannot control himself

is like a city with no way to keep out enemies; its walls have fallen down.

ULB:

²⁷ It is not good to eat too much honey;

that is like searching for honor after honor. [1]Modern versions have different interpretations of this difficult verse.

²⁸ A person without self-control

is like a city breached and without walls.

translationWords:

- honey, honeycomb
- honor, to honor
- self-control

translationNotes:

- **It is not good to eat too much honey; that is like searching for honor after honor.** - Both wanting others to honor you and eating honey are good, but you can eat too much honey, and you can try too hard to have people honor you. (See: **Simile**)
- **It is not good** - This can be stated positively. AT: "It is a bad thing" (See: **Litotes**)
- **that is like searching for honor after honor** - "that is like always thinking about how others should honor you." The meaning of the original language is uncertain. Some versions of the Bible translate this as "that is like speaking too many compliments to people."
- **A person without self-control is like a city breached and without walls.** - Both a person without self-control and a city without walls are weak and vulnerable. (See: **Simile**)
- **breached and without walls** - "whose walls an army has knocked down and destroyed"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 25 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 25 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 26 continues the second section of the book (Chapter 25-29) which is attributed to Solomon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. Wisdom and folly are particularly prominent in this chapter.(See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 26:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 26:1-2**UDB:**

¹ When it snows in the summer, or when it rains in the harvest,

that is what it is like when a fool gets honor—

honor for him comes at the wrong time, and the wrong place.

² A sparrow flies here and there fluttering around, and a swallow darts back and forth when it flies,

that is like someone speaking a curse against you—but it cannot land on you.

ULB:

26 ¹ Like snow in summer or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor.

² As the sparrow flutters and the swallow darts when they fly,

so an undeserved curse does not alight.

translationWords:

- harvest
- fool, foolish, folly
- honor, to honor
- curse, cursed

translationNotes:

- **Like snow in summer or rain in harvest** - Normally snow does not fall during the summer and rain does not fall during the harvest. This can be stated clearly. AT: “Just as it would be very strange to have snow in summer or rain during the harvest” (See: **Simile** and **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **so an undeserved curse does not alight** - A curse that does not harm a person is spoken of as if it were a bird that does not land. AT: “so an undeserved curse does not land on its mark” (See: **Simile**)
- **an undeserved curse** - This can be stated with an active form. AT: “a curse on a person who does not deserve it” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **alight** - land on someone or something

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:3-4**UDB:**

³ A horse needs a whip to make it move, and a donkey must have a bridle in its mouth, or it will not carry its load.

In the same way, a fool needs someone to beat him on his back to get him to do anything.

⁴ Do not reply to a fool when he is trying to draw you into his foolishness, or you will be just as much a fool as he is.

ULB:

³ A whip is for the horse, a bridle is for the donkey and a rod is for the back of fools.

⁴ Do not answer a fool according to his folly, or you will become like him.

translationWords:

- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [rod](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

translationNotes:

- **A whip is for the horse, a bridle is for the donkey and a rod is for the back of fools** - A whip, a bridle, and a rod are things that people use to make the horse, donkey, and fool do what they want.
- **a bridle is for the donkey** - A bridle is made of straps. People put it on a donkey's head and hold one of the straps to make the donkey go the way they want it to go.
- **a rod is for the back of fools** - In the Bible, people would hit their children or their slaves with a wooden rod in order to discipline them.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Give a fool an answer that will be just as foolish as his question,

and that may open his eyes so he can see that he is not as wise as he thinks.

⁶ If you entrust an important message to be delivered by a fool,

that would as foolish as cutting of your own feet, and then taking a drink of poison.

ULB:

⁵ Answer a fool and join in on his folly,

so he will not become wise in his own eyes.

⁶ Whoever sends a message by the hand of a fool

cuts off his own feet and drinks violence.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **Answer a fool and join in on his folly** - Joining in on a fool's folly when answering him represents answering him in a foolish way. AT: "Answer a fool according to his folly" or "Answer a fool foolishly"
- **so he will not become wise in his own eyes** - The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: "so that he will not become wise according to his judgement" or "so that he does not consider himself to be wise" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Whoever sends a message by the hand of a fool** - Here the hand represents the fool's responsibility to deliver the message. AT: "Whoever sends a fool to deliver a message" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **cuts off his own feet and drinks violence** - Cutting off one's own feet and drinking violence represents harming one's self. AT: "harms himself like a person who cuts off his own feet and drinks violence" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Hyperbole](#))
- **drinks violence** - Violence is spoken of as if it were a liquid that someone might drink. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ A lame man cannot use his legs; they hang down and are useless,

as useless as when fools are reciting proverbs to one another that they do not understand..

⁸ When you tie a stone into a sling so it cannot be thrown,

that is like one who gives honor to a fool,

for no matter how much you praise him,

it will never do him any good.

ULB:

⁷ Like the legs of a paralytic which hang down

is a proverb in the mouth of fools.

⁸ Like tying a stone in a sling

is giving honor to a fool.

translationWords:

- proverb
- stone, stoning
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **Like the legs ... is a proverb in the mouth of fools** - The phrases can be reordered. AT: “A proverb in the mouth of fools is like the legs of a paralytic which hang down” or ” A proverb in the mouth of fools is as useless as the legs of a paralytic which hang down” (See: **Simile**)
- **a paralytic** - a person who is unable to move or feel all or part of his body
- **in the mouth of fools** - “in the speech of fools” or “that fools say” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **tying a stone in a sling** - In order to throw a stone very far, people put it into a sling and swing the sling so that the stone will fly from it very quickly. The result of tying a stone in a sling can be stated clearly. AT: “tying a stone in a sling so that it cannot be thrown” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **giving honor to a fool** - “honoring a fool”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ When a drunk man picks up a bush full of thorns

and starts to swing it around at people,
that is as helpful as a fool reciting proverbs,
people stand back and try to get away from him.

¹⁰ An archer who aims and shoots arrows at people standing around him,
is as dangerous as one who hires a fool
or he takes so little care that he hires the next person who comes
along.

ULB:

⁹ Like a thorn that goes into the hand of a drunkard
is a proverb in the mouth of fools.

¹⁰ Like an archer who wounds all those around him
is one who hires a fool or hires anyone who passes by.

translationWords:

- drunk, drunkard
- proverb
- fool, foolish, folly
- archer

translationNotes:

- **Like a thorn ... is a proverb in the mouth of fools** - How the two are alike can be stated clearly. AT: "A proverb in the mouth of fools is as dangerous as a thorn that goes into the hand of a drunkard" (See: [Simile](#))
- **a thorn that goes into the hand of a drunkard** - Possible meanings are 1) if a drunk person holds a thornbush, a thorn will prick his hand, or 2) if a drunk person is angry, he will pick up a thornbush and swing it at people. For the second meaning, the word "thorn" represents a thornbush. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **in the mouth of fools** - "in the speech of fools" or "that fools say" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **hires a fool** - "gives a job to a fool"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ When you see a dog return to his vomit,

that is just like a fool who does the same foolish thing over and over again.

¹² Do you know someone who has this idea about himself—

he thinks he is a very wise person?

It is easier to teach a fool than him.

ULB:

¹¹ As a dog returns to his own vomit,

so is a fool who repeats his folly.

¹² Do you see someone who is wise in his own eyes?

There is more hope for a fool than for him.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- hope

translationNotes:

- **As a dog returns to his own vomit** - “As a dog eats its own vomit”
- **Do you see someone who is wise in his own eyes?** - This question is used to lead the reader to think about someone who is wise in his own eyes. The phrase “is wise in his own eyes” means “thinks he is wise,” and here it implies that the person is not truly wise. AT: “Consider the person who thinks he is wise but is not.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **There is more hope for a fool than for him** - “A fool can become wise more easily than he can”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The lazy person has many reasons for not working—

you might hear him say, “But there is a lion in the street!”

or “Oh, there is a lion in the market!”

¹⁴ When you see a door swing back and forth on its hinges,

that is just like one who is lazy, when he is lying on his bed, turning back and forth.

ULB:

¹³ The lazy person says, “There is a lion on the road!

There is a lion between the open places!”

¹⁴ As the door turns on its hinges,

so is the lazy person upon his bed.

translationWords:

- [lion](#)
- [turn, turn away, turn back](#)

translationNotes:

- **The lazy person says, “There is a lion ... between the open places!”** - The lazy person lies and says that he cannot go outside and work because there is a lion on the road or between the open places.
- **There is a lion on the road** - Translate this as in [22:13](#).
- **the open places** - This refers to the places in town where there is a lot of room for people to walk around or where people gather. AT: “the town plazas” or “the streets”
- **hinges** - metal pieces that attach a door to something and allow it to open and close
- **As the door turns on its hinges, so is the lazy person upon his bed** - Both the door and the lazy person move, but they do not go anywhere. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:15-16**UDB:**

- ¹⁵ One who is lazy might reach down with his hand to get some food,
but he does not have the energy to put the food into his mouth.
- ¹⁶ The one who is lazy considers himself to be very wise,
more wise than seven men who are known for their insight.

ULB:

- ¹⁵ The lazy person puts his hand into the dish
and yet he has no strength to lift it up to his mouth.
- ¹⁶ The lazy person is wiser in his own eyes
than seven men with discernment.

translationWords:

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [discern, discernment](#)

translationNotes:

- **puts his hand into the dish** - “puts his hand into the dish to get food” or “reaches for food”
- **he has no strength to lift it up to his mouth** - This shows how extremely lazy he is. He just leaves his hand near the food and does not eat the food. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **The lazy person is wiser in his own eyes than seven men with discernment** - The phrase “his own eyes” represents his thoughts. AT: “The lazy person thinks he is wiser than seven men who can respond sensibly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:17**UDB:**

¹⁷ Someone who walks by a dog lying on the ground, who then reaches down and pulls its ears;
 he is like someone who hears an argument as he is walking by,
 and he gets involved, and becomes angry
 and then he takes sides and joins in—
 even though he had nothing to do with it.

ULB:

¹⁷ Like one who takes hold of the ears of a dog,
 is a passerby who becomes angry at a dispute that is not his own.

translationWords:

- [angry, anger](#)

translationNotes:

- **Like one who takes hold of the ears of a dog, is a passerby who becomes angry at a dispute that is not his own** - This can be reordered. AT: “A passerby who becomes angry at some other people’s dispute is like a person who grabs hold of a dog’s ears” (See: [Simile](#))
- **Like one who takes hold of the ears of a dog** - The implied information is that the dog will get angry and bite the person. AT: “Like a person who angers a dog by grabbing its ears” or “Like a person who grabs a dog’s ears and is bitten by the dog” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **is a passerby who becomes angry at a dispute that is not his own** - The implied information is that the passerby will start arguing, and the people who were fighting will get angry with him and hurt him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:18-19**UDB:**

18-19 Who is like an insane person who shoots burning arrows in every direction?

One who lies to his neighbor!
He makes an excuse to his neighbor and tells him,
“I was only joking;”
but just like the madman’s arrows,
what he said has set everything on fire.

ULB:

¹⁸ Like a madman who shoots burning arrows,
¹⁹ is the one who deceives his neighbor
and says, “Was I not telling a joke?”

translationWords:

- [bow and arrow](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [neighbor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Like a madman ... is the one who deceives ... telling a joke?** - Both the madman and the deceiver hurt people but do not take responsibility for it.
- **Was I not telling a joke?** - The deceiver uses this question to imply that since he his joke was only for fun, he should not be blamed for any harm he has caused. AT: “I was only telling a joke.” or “Do not blame me. I was only telling a joke.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ The fire goes out when there is no more wood to burn;

and so arguments stop when no one is gossiping.

²¹ As charcoal can ignite into burning coal and a log of wood into a fire;

so the one who argues sets anger ablaze.

ULB:

²⁰ For lack of wood, the fire goes out;

and where there is no gossip quarreling ceases.

²¹ As charcoal is to burning coals and wood is to fire,

so is a quarrelsome person for kindling strife.

translationWords:

- [fire](#)
- [gossip](#)
- [strife](#)

translationNotes:

- **gossiper** - a person who gossips a lot
- **As charcoal is to burning coals and wood is to fire** - What charcoal does to coals and what wood does to fire can be stated clearly. AT: “As charcoal helps coals burn and as wood helps fire burn” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **kindling strife** - To kindle something means to set it on fire. Setting strife on fire is a metaphor for causing people to fight or argue. AT: “causing people to fight” or “causing people to argue” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:22-23**UDB:**

²² The gossip tells stories that are like sweet treats to eat;

people eat them like candy until they are filled.

²³ A shining glaze applied with great heat, covers the clay pot,
and that is like the fiery words that cover an evil heart.

ULB:

²² The words of a gossip are like delicious morsels;
they go down into the inner parts of the body.

²³ Like the glaze overlaying an earthen vessel
so are burning lips and an evil heart.

translationWords:

- word
- body
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- heart

translationNotes:

- **The words of a gossip are like delicious morsels** - This speaks of gossip being desirable to listen to as if it were delicious food to eat. AT: “The words of a gossip are desirable to listen to” or (See: [Simile](#))
- **they go down into the inner parts of the body** - This speaks of the words that a gossip says going into a person’s mind and affecting his thoughts as if they were food that was going into his stomach. This sentence is equivalent to [18:8](#). AT: “and they enter a person’s mind and affect his thoughts” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Like the glaze overlaying an earthen vessel so are burning lips and an evil heart** - This simile means that a person who says things to hide the evil in their heart are like a earthen vessel covered in glaze to make it look good. These phrases can be reordered. AT: “People who have burning lips and an evil heart are like an earthen vessel covered with glaze” (See: [Simile](#))
- **the glaze overlaying an earthen vessel** - “the shiny glaze that covers a clay pot.” A clay pot is cheap and common. So people covered it was a glaze to make it shiny and appear more expensive.

- **so are burning lips and an evil heart** - This represents a person who has burning lips and an evil heart. AT: “so is a person who has burning lips and an evil heart” or “so is a person who says nice things but whose heart is evil” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **burning lips** - The word “burning” is a metaphor for “strongly emotional” and the word “lips” is a metonym for “speech.” AT: “emotional speech” or “saying nice things” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **an evil heart** - The heart represents a person’s thoughts, attitudes, desires, or feelings. AT: “evil thoughts” or “evil desires” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ The one who is filled with hate, by the words he speaks, he hides his true feelings;

and he stores up more and more lies within himself.

²⁵ He may speak kind words, but you should not believe them,

because deep within him is everything that Yahweh despises.

²⁶ Even though he covers up his hatred by his lies,

everyone will realize how wicked he is.

ULB:

²⁴ One who hates others disguises his feelings with his lips

and he lays up deceit within himself.

²⁵ He will speak graciously, but do not believe him,

for there are seven abominations in his heart.

²⁶ Though his hatred is covered with deception,

his wickedness will be exposed in the assembly.

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- grace, gracious
- believe, believe in, belief
- abomination, abominable
- heart
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- assembly, assemble

translationNotes:

- **disguises his feelings with his lips** - Disguising his feelings represents keeping people from knowing what his feelings are. The phrase “his lips” is a metonym for what he says. AT: “hides his feelings with what he says” or “speaks in such a way that people cannot know his true feelings” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

- **he lays up deceit within himself** - Being deceitful is spoken of as if he were storing deceit within himself. Possible meanings are that “deceit” refers to lies. AT: “he likes his many lies” or 2) deceit refers secret plans to harm people. AT: “he secretly plans to harm people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but do not believe him** - “but do not believe what he says”
- **for there are seven abominations in his heart** - The number seven represents completeness. Possible meanings are 1) “abominations” refers to attitudes that God hates. AT: “for his heart is completely filled with hateful things” or 2) “abominations” refers to his hatred for people. AT: “for his heart is completely filled with hatred” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Though his hatred is covered with deception** - This can be stated actively. AT: “Though deception covers his hatred” or “Though he covers his hatred with deception” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Though his hatred is covered with deception** - Keeping people from knowing that he hates them is spoken of as covering his hatred. AT: “Though he lies to keep people from knowing that he hates them” or “Though he lies so that people will not know that he hates them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **his wickedness will be exposed in the assembly** - Being exposed represents being discovered or becoming known. AT: “his wickedness will become known in the assembly” or “the assembly will discover his wickedness” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **the assembly** - “the community of Israel”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 26:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ One who digs a pit will fall into it;

and a stone rolls back on the one who tried to push it up a hill.

²⁸ The one who lies hates the people he destroys;

just as much as the person who uses flattery causes terrible destruction.

ULB:

²⁷ Whoever digs a pit will fall into it

and the stone will roll back on the one who pushed it.

²⁸ A lying tongue hates the people it crushes

and a flattering mouth brings about ruin.

translationWords:

- pit
- stone, stoning
- tongue
- ruin, ruins

translationNotes:

- **Whoever digs a pit will fall into it** - It is implied that the person digs the pit as a trap so that someone will fall into it. AT: “Whoever digs a pit to trap someone will fall into it” or “If someone digs a pit in order to trap someone, the one who dug it will fall into it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the stone will roll back on the one who pushed it** - It is implied that the person pushed a large stone so that it would roll downhill and crush someone there. AT: “if someone pushed a stone so that it would roll downhill and crush someone, the stone will roll back on him instead” or “if someone made a stone roll so that it would hurt someone, the stone will crush him instead” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **A lying tongue hates the people it crushes** - The phrase “a lying tongue” represents a person who tells lies. Crushing people represents causing them trouble. AT: “A liar hates those he hurts by his lies” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

- **a flattering mouth brings about ruin** - The phrase “a flattering mouth” represents a person who flatters people. Possible meanings are 1) a person who flatters others causes trouble or 2) a person who flatters others ruins them (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **flattering** - praising someone in a manner that is not sincere, or praising someone about things that are not true

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 26 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 26 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 27 continues the second section of the book (Chapter 25-29) which is attributed to Solomon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 27:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 27:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Do not boast about what will happen tomorrow,

because you do not know what will come to you during that day.

² Do not praise yourself; let someone else praise you.

It is better for someone you do not know to praise you,
than for you to praise yourself.

ULB:

27 ¹ Do not boast about tomorrow,

for you do not know what a day may bring.

² Let someone else praise you and not your own mouth;
a stranger and not your own lips.

translationWords:

- boast, boastful
- praise

translationNotes:

- **Do not boast about tomorrow** - This is a warning not to brag about what you expect to happen tomorrow. This can be stated clearly. AT: “Do not speak proudly about your plans for tomorrow” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **what a day may bring** - Something happening on a certain day is spoken of as if the day were to bring that event. AT: “what will happen on a day” or “what will happen tomorrow” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **your own mouth ... your own lips** - These two phrases refer to the “mouth” and “lips” as speaking because those are parts of the body that are used for speaking. AT: “yourself ... yourself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **a stranger and not your own lips** - The missing words can be supplied from the phrase before this. AT: “let a stranger praise you and not your own lips” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:3-4**UDB:**

³ If you think about how heavy a stone can be, or how much sand can weigh—

then you will understand that the trouble a fool causes is harder to carry than both of those things.

⁴ If you think about how cruel can be people who rage at others, and how angry people can attack others like a flood of water,

then think about how jealous people are even worse;
no one can resist being harmed by a jealous person.

ULB:

³ Consider the heaviness of a stone and the weight of sand—
the provocation of a fool is heavier than both.

⁴ There is the cruelty of rage and the flood of anger,
but who is able to stand before jealousy?

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- rage
- angry, anger
- jealous, jealousy

translationNotes:

- **the provocation of a fool is heavier than both** - The difficulty of being patient with a fool who provokes you is spoken of as if that difficulty were heavy. AT: “the provocation of a fool is harder to tolerate than either of them” or “It is harder to be patient when a fool provokes you than it is to be patient while carrying them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the provocation of a fool** - “the trouble caused by a fool.” “Provocation” means actions or words that cause anger or irritation.
- **There is the cruelty of rage and the flood of anger, but who is able to stand before jealousy?** - The abstract nouns “rage”, “anger” and “jealousy” can be translated as adjectives. AT: “A raging person is cruel and an angry person is overwhelming, but who can stand before a jealous person?” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **cruelty** - “harshness”

- **the flood of anger** - “the destructiveness of anger.” Anger is spoken of here as if it were a powerful flood. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **but who is able to stand before jealousy?** - This question implies that no one can stand before jealousy. It can be reworded as a statement. AT: “but no one is able to stand before jealousy” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).
- **to stand before jealousy** - Here standing represents being strong and resisting being harmed by a jealous person who attacks. AT: “to resist a jealous person” or “to remain strong when a jealous person attacks him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ It is better to offer a rebuke out in the open, than to have a love that is hidden.

⁶ A wound from a friend is better than kisses from an enemy.

ULB:

⁵ Better is an open rebuke

than hidden love.

⁶ Faithful are the wounds caused by a friend,

but an enemy may kiss you profusely.

translationWords:

- rebuke
- love
- faithful, faithfulness
- adversary, enemy
- kiss

translationNotes:

- **Better is an open rebuke** - The abstract noun “rebuke” can be expressed with the verb “re-buke.” AT: “It is better to be openly rebuked” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **than hidden love** - “than love that is not openly shown.” The abstract noun “love” can be translated as a verbal phrase. AT: “than to be loved secretly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Faithful are the wounds caused by a friend** - “The wounds that a friend causes are trustworthy.” The word “wounds” here represents the pain and sadness that a person feels when a friend rebukes or corrects him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Faithful are the wounds caused by a friend** - The trustworthiness of a friend’s rebuke is spoken of as if the sadness that his rebuke causes is trustworthy. AT: “Though it causes sadness, a friend’s rebuke is trustworthy” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **but an enemy may kiss you profusely** - It can be stated clearly that the enemy’s kisses are not trustworthy. AT: “but the enemy’s many kisses are not trustworthy” or “but an enemy may try to deceive you by kissing you profusely” or (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **profusely** - “abundantly” or “too much”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ When a person is walking along and he has a full stomach, he may step on a honeycomb because he is not hungry;

but if he were very hungry, even bitter things would taste sweet to him.

⁸ When a man wanders away from his home,
he is acting like a bird that stays far from its nest.

ULB:

⁷ A person who has eaten to the full rejects even a honeycomb,
but to the hungry person, every bitter thing is sweet.

⁸ Like a bird that wanders from its nest
is a man who strays from where he lives.

translationWords:

- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **A person who has eaten to the full** - “A person who is satisfied” or “A person who has eaten enough to be full”
- **rejects even a honeycomb** - A honeycomb would normally be desirable, but not to the person who has already eaten enough to be satisfied.
- **every bitter thing is sweet** - “everything that is bitter tastes sweet”
- **Like a bird that wanders from its nest is a man who strays from where he lives** - The words “wanders” and “strays” mean the same thing in this verse. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The aroma of perfume and the scent of incense can help to make a person feel happy;
and we most appreciate friends who give us good advice.

¹⁰ Do not forget your friend or a friend of your father;
and when you have a problem and you need help,
do not go to your brother's home.

When there is trouble, a neighbor who lives close by
is better than a brother who lives far away.

ULB:

⁹ Perfume and incense make the heart rejoice,
but the sweetness of a friend comes from his sincere counsel. [1]Modern
versions have different interpretations of this difficult verse.

¹⁰ Do not forsake your friend and your friend's father,
and do not go to your brother's house on the day of your calamity.
Better is a neighbor who is nearby than a brother who is far away.

translationWords:

- incense
- heart
- rejoice
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- brother
- neighbor

translationNotes:

- **Perfume** - The word "perfume" here means a desirable oil or ointment.
- **make the heart rejoice** - Here "the heart" represents the feelings or emotions of a person. AT: "make a person feel joyful" or "make a person glad" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the sweetness of a friend comes from his sincere counsel** - Possible meanings are 1) "sweetness" represents kindness. AT: "we recognize our friend's kindness by his counsel" or 2) "sweetness" represents what we appreciate about a person. AT: "what we appreciate about a friend is his advice" (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **your brother's house** - Here the word "brother" is a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- **calamity** - extreme troubles and misfortune

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ My son, if you become wise, you will make me happy;

so I will be able to give an answer to anyone who argues against me.

¹² One who has good sense takes cover when he sees trouble coming,

but those who have no experience or knowledge rush ahead into danger.

ULB:

¹¹ Be wise, my son, and make my heart rejoice;

then I will give back an answer to the one who mocks me.

¹² A prudent man sees trouble and hides himself,

but the naive people go on and suffer because of it.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- heart
- rejoice
- prudent

translationNotes:

- **make my heart rejoice** - Here the “heart” represents the person’s feelings or emotions. AT: “make me feel joyful” or “make me glad” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **then I will give back an answer to the one who mocks me** - Here “answer” does not mean to answer a question. It means to respond or to reply to someone who is mocking. How this relates to the clause before it can be made clear. AT “then I will reply to the one who mocks me by telling him about you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **A prudent man sees trouble and hides himself, but the naive people go on and suffer because of it** - Translate this as you did a similar phrase in [22:3](#).
- **A prudent man** - “A man who is wise” or “A man who has good sense”
- **the naive people** - “the inexperienced and immature people”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Take a man's garment as security when he is guaranteeing a loan for a stranger.

Hold the garment in pledge to protect yourself from losing your money when he puts up security for an adulteress.

¹⁴ Whoever shouts out a blessing in a loud voice early in the morning, that blessing will be heard as if it were a curse.

ULB:

¹³ Take a garment of one who has put up security for a stranger, and hold it in pledge when he puts up security for an immoral woman.

¹⁴ Whoever gives his neighbor a blessing with a loud voice early in the morning, that blessing will be considered to be a curse!

translationWords:

- adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress
- neighbor
- bless, blessed, blessing
- curse, cursed

translationNotes:

- **Take a garment of one who has put up security for a stranger** - When lending money, a lender would take something from the borrower, such as a garment, as a guarantee of repayment. He would return it after the money was repaid. If the borrower was too poor, someone else could give something to the lender as a guarantee for him. See how you translated this in [20:16](#). AT: "Take a garment as security from the one who guarantees that what a stranger has borrowed will be paid back" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **who has put up security** - This means for someone to give something to a lender as a guarantee that what was borrowed will be paid. See how you translated this in [20:16](#). AT: "who has guaranteed that what has been borrowed will be paid back" or "who has promised to pay a loan" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **hold it in pledge** - To "hold something in pledge" means to hold on to something that someone has given as a pledge, or promise, that he will pay a debt. See how you translated this in [20:16](#). AT: "hold onto his coat as a guarantee of repayment" (See: [Idiom](#))

- **Whoever gives his neighbor a blessing** - “If anyone gives his neighbor a blessing”
- **that blessing will be considered to be a curse** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “the neighbor will consider that blessing to be a curse” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ A wife who continually argues with her husband is as annoying as

the constant dripping of water on a rainy day;

¹⁶ and stopping her from arguing would be as difficult as restraining the wind,

or trying to catch oil in one hand.

ULB:

¹⁵ A quarreling wife is like

the constant dripping on a rainy day;

¹⁶ restraining her is like restraining the wind,

or trying to catch oil in your right hand.

translationWords:

- oil

translationNotes:

- **quarreling** - This means making people angry with each other or causing strong disagreements between people.
- **the constant dripping** - The implied information is that it is rain that is constantly dripping. AT: “the constant dripping of rain” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **a rainy day** - “a day of continual rain”
- **restraining her is like restraining the wind, or trying to catch oil in your right hand** - The implied information is that it is as difficult or useless to try and restrain her as it is to try to restrain the wind or catch oil in your hand (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **restraining her** - “holding her back” or “keeping her under control.” The implied information is that it is trying to stop her from quarreling. AT: “restraining her from quarreling” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **restraining the wind** - “holding back the wind” or “keeping the wind under control”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Iron is used to sharpen an iron blade, just like a man makes his friend better.

¹⁸ The farmer who takes care of a fig tree will enjoy its fruit when it is ripe.

This is just like the one who protects his master, he will get honor from his master.

ULB:

¹⁷ Iron sharpens iron;

in the same way, a man sharpens his friend.

¹⁸ The one who tends a fig tree will eat its fruit,
and the one who protects his master will be honored.

translationWords:

- [fig](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Iron sharpens iron; in the same way, a man sharpens his friend.** - These two phrases are comparing how iron and a man can be improved. AT: “As iron can sharpen another piece of iron, so a man’s character is improved by contact with his friend” (See: [Simile](#))
- **tends** - “takes care of”
- **the one who protects his master will be honored** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “a master will honor the one who protects him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ When a person looks in the water, he sees his own face;

similarly when we look at what a person loves, we know what he is like deep inside.

²⁰ You know that the Place of the Dead and The Destroyer are never satisfied; and people, too, are never satisfied and always want more.

ULB:

¹⁹ Just as water reflects a person's face,
so a person's heart reflects the person.

²⁰ Just as Sheol and Abaddon are never satisfied,
so a man's eyes are never satisfied.

translationWords:

- [face](#)
- [heart](#)
- [hades, sheol](#)

translationNotes:

- **a person's heart** - Here this means a person's thoughts. AT: "what a person thinks" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Abaddon** - This is a name that means "destroyer." AT: "the Destroyer" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **satisfied** - "filled up"
- **a man's eyes** - Here "a man's eyes" means the desire of a man for what he sees. AT: "a man's desires" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Silver is refined in a crucible, and gold is put into a furnace to be made pure;

and how a person responds to the praise given to them
will tell you what kind of person he is.

²² Though you grind a fool as if you were grinding up grain,
you will not be able to take his foolishness out of him.

ULB:

²¹ A crucible is for silver and a furnace is for gold;
and a person is tested when he is praised.

²² Even if you crush a fool with the pestle—along with the grain—
yet his foolishness will not leave him.

translationWords:

- silver
- furnace
- gold
- test
- praise
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **A crucible is for silver and a furnace is for gold** - This refers to how gold and silver are refined. A metal is refined by heating it to a high temperature so that it melts and the impurities may be removed. See how you translated the very similar phrase in [17:3](#). AT: “A crucible is used to refine silver and a furnace is used to refine gold” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **crucible** - a container used for heating substances to very high temperatures (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **furnace** - an oven that can be made extremely hot (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **a person is tested when he is praised** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “when one praises a person, they are also testing that person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **Even if you crush a fool ... yet his foolishness will not leave him** - This means that even if a fool is made to suffer hardship or pain (being crushed is often a metaphor for suffering in Hebrew), he will remain foolish. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **pestle** - a hard tool with a rounded end, used for crushing things in a bowl (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:23-25**UDB:**

²³ A good shepherd will know the condition of all his sheep and he will check on them every day.

²⁴ Wealth does not last forever.

Does the crown of a king endure for all generations?

²⁵ The grass dies out and then the new growth starts to grow;

and on the mountains food for the cattle is stacked up in the barns.

ULB:

²³ Be sure you know the condition of your flocks

and be concerned about your herds,

²⁴ for wealth is not forever.

Does a crown endure for all generations?

²⁵ When the hay is gone and the new growth appears,

then the grass from the hills is gathered in for the flocks.

translationWords:

- flock, herd
- crown, to crown
- endure, endurance
- generation

translationNotes:

- **Be sure you know the condition of your flocks and be concerned about your herds** - These two phrases have basically the same meaning and are used together for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **flocks** - “flocks of sheep”
- **herds** - “herds of goats”
- **Does a crown endure for all generations?** - This question expects a negative answer to make the point that the reign of earthly rulers does not last forever. This can be expressed as a statement. AT: “A crown does not endure for all generations” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **a crown** - Here “crown” is a metonym for a king’s rule over his kingdom. AT: “a king’s rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **the new growth appears** - “the new sprouts appear” or “the new grass starts to grow”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 27:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ The lambs will give you warm clothing and the goats will give you enough to pay for the cost of the field.

²⁷ There will be milk from the goats that you can drink—that will be food for everyone who lives in your house—

and it is food to feed your servant girls, as well.

ULB:

²⁶ Those lambs will provide your clothing
and the goats will provide the price of the field.

²⁷ There will be goats' milk for your food—the food for your household—
and nourishment for your servant girls.

translationWords:

- lamb, Lamb of God
- goat, kid
- household
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **Connecting Statement:** - Verses 26 and 27 go together with verses 23 to 25 as one proverb.
- **The lambs will provide your clothing** - The implied information is that the wool (hair) from the lambs can be used to make clothing. AT: “The lambs’ wool will provide you with clothing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **the goats will provide the price of the field** - The implied information is that the money received by selling the goats will be enough to buy a field. AT: “selling your goats will provide the price of the field” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **for your household** - “for your whole family”
- **and nourishment for your servant girls** - The implied information is that there will also be enough goats’ milk to feed the servant girls. AT: “and there will be goat’s milk to nourish your servant girls” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **nourishment** - “food”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 27 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 27 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 28 continues the second section of the book (Chapter 25-29) which is attributed to Solomon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 28:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 28:1-2**UDB:**

¹ A wicked person runs away even when no one is coming after him,

but the one who does what is right is as brave as lions.

² The more sin there is in a country, the greater the number of rulers it will have;

but when there is a ruler who has understanding and knowledge, the country can last a long time.

ULB:

28 ¹ The wicked people run away when no one chases them,

but righteous people are as bold as a young lion.

² Because of the transgression of a land, it has many rulers,

but with a man of understanding and knowledge, it will last a long time.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- bold, boldly, boldness
- lion
- transgress, transgression
- ruler, rulers, rule
- know, knowledge, make known

translationNotes:

- **Because of the transgression of a land** - The abstract noun “transgression” can be translated as a verb. AT: “Because of how a land transgresses” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the transgression of a land** - This is a metonym for the sins of the people living in a land. AT: “the transgression of the people of a land” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **with a man of understanding and knowledge** - The implied information is that this man is a ruler or leader. The abstract nouns “understanding” and “knowledge” can be translated as verbs. AT: “with a man who understands and knows how to rule” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:3-4**UDB:**

³ When a poor person oppresses other poor people,

it is like a hard rain that destroys the crops and leaves no food for anyone to eat.

⁴ Those who reject the law are the same people who speak well of those who are wicked;

but those who obey the law fight against the wicked.

ULB:

³ A poor person who oppresses other poor people is like a beating rain that leaves no food.

⁴ Those who forsake the law praise wicked people, but those who keep the law fight against them.

translationWords:

- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- law, principle
- praise
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **oppresses** - “severely mistreats”
- **like a beating rain that leaves no food** - The poor man who oppresses other poor people is compared to a rain that falls so hard that it leaves no crop to harvest. (See: **Simile**)
- **beating rain** - This is a metaphor for a rain coming down hard enough to cause crops to be driven down. AT: “damaging rain” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **forsake the law** - “forsake God’s law”
- **those who keep the law** - To “keep the law” means to do what God’s law requires. AT: “those who obey God’s law” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **fight against them** - “struggle against them.” This means to strongly oppose or resist them. (See: **Metaphor**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ As difficult as it is for evil people to understand what is just,

even so those who want to find Yahweh understand everything that is important.

⁶ It is better to be honest and poor,

than to be dishonest in all you do, and to be rich.

ULB:

⁵ Evil men do not understand justice,

but those who seek Yahweh understand everything.

⁶ It is better for a poor person who walks in his integrity,

than for a rich person who is crooked in his ways.

translationWords:

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- just, justice, justly
- Yahweh
- walk
- integrity

translationNotes:

- **Evil men** - Here “men” means people in general. AT: “People who do evil things” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))
- **do not understand justice** - The abstract noun “justice” can be expressed as an adjective. AT: “do not understand what is just” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **those who seek Yahweh** - Those who want to know Yahweh and please him are spoken of as if they are literally seeking to find Yahweh. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **understand everything** - The implied information is that those who seek Yahweh understand all about justice. AT: “completely understand what is just” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **It is better for a poor person ... than for a rich person** - “It is better to be a poor person ... than it is to be a rich person”

- **walks in his integrity** - This represents a person living a life of integrity. The abstract noun “integrity” can be expressed as an adverb. AT: “walks honestly” or “lives honestly” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **who is crooked in his ways** - Rich people who are dishonest are spoken of as if they walk on crooked or twisted paths. AT: “who is not honest in what he does” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The one who obeys the law is a child who has understanding of the ways of wisdom;

but if children go around with friends who are only interested in eating too much, they put their father to shame.

⁸ The person who becomes rich by charging a high rate of interest ,
he does not know that he is gathering his money, and it will be given to someone who helps the poor and is kind to them.

ULB:

⁷ He who keeps the law is a son who has understanding,
but one who is a companion of gluttons shames his father.

⁸ The one who makes his fortune by charging too much interest
gathers his wealth for another who will have pity on poor people.

translationWords:

- law, principle
- understand, understanding
- companion
- shame, shameful, ashamed

translationNotes:

- **He who keeps the law** - To “keep the law” means to do what God’s law requires. AT: “He who obeys God’s law” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **a son who has understanding** - The abstract noun “understanding” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “a son who understands” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **gluttons** - “people who eat too much.” A “glutton” is a person who often eats and drinks excessively.
- **shames his father** - “puts his father to shame” or “dishonors his father”
- **makes his fortune** - “increases his wealth”
- **charging too much interest** - “charging extra money to borrow”
- **interest** - money paid by a borrower for the use of someone else’s money
- **gathers his wealth** - “brings his wealth together”
- **for another** - “for another person”
- **pity** - a strong feeling of sadness or sympathy for someone

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ If you refuse to hear what the law says to you about how you should live;
 then Yahweh is offended by your prayers.

¹⁰ If someone tricks an honest person into doing that is bad,
 the one who did that will fall into his own trap,
 but those who have tried to right will received many good things.

ULB:

⁹ If one turns away his ear from hearing the law,
 even his prayer is detestable.

¹⁰ Whoever misleads the upright into an evil way
 will fall into his own pit,
 but the blameless will have a good inheritance.

translationWords:

- law, principle
- pray, prayer
- upright, uprightness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- pit
- blameless
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

translationNotes:

- **If one** - “If a person”
- **turns away his ear from hearing the law** - This represents the whole person turning away from and rejecting God’s law. AT: “turns away from hearing and obeying the law” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **even his prayer is detestable** - “even his prayer is offensive to God.” This can be written in active form. AT: “God detests even his prayer” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **detestable** - Translate this as you did in **3:32**.
- **Whoever misleads the upright into an evil way** - This is a metaphor for leading upright people in an evil direction. AT: “Whoever causes the upright to go in an evil direction” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **Whoever misleads ... evil way will fall** - “If anyone misleads ... evil way, he will fall”
- **the upright** - This refers to upright persons in general. AT: “upright persons” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **will fall into his own pit** - “will fall into the trap that he has dug.” This is a metaphor for ending up in the same bad place as others had been led toward. AT: “will end up in the same evil place toward which he guided other people” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the blameless** - This refers to blameless persons in general. AT: “blameless persons” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **will have a good inheritance** - “will inherit what is good”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ A rich person can think of himself as being wise,

but someone who is poor but who has good sense will be able to tell if the rich man is really wise.

¹² When those who do what is right have a victory, it is a time to celebrate,

but when those who are wicked rise up in victory, people run and hide.

ULB:

¹¹ The rich person may be wise in his own eyes,

but a poor person who has understanding will find him out.

¹² When there is victory for righteous people, there is great glory,

but when the wicked arise, people hide themselves.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- glory, glorious
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **be wise in his own eyes** - The phrase “his own eyes” represents his thoughts. AT: “be wise in his own thoughts” or “think he is wise” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **who has understanding** - The abstract noun “understanding” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “who understands” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **will find him out** - This is an idiom that means the poor person will be able to determine whether or not the rich person is really wise. AT: “will see his true nature” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **When there is victory for righteous people** - “When righteous people succeed” or “When righteous people triumph”
- **when the wicked arise** - This is an idiom that means when the wicked gain power or start to rule. AT: “when the wicked rise to power” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the wicked** - This refers to wicked people in general. AT: “wicked people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

- **people hide themselves** - “people go into hiding.” How people respond when the wicked rise is spoken of as if the people hide from those in power, although they would not actually be hidden. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The one who tries to cover up his sins will be found out,

but Yahweh will forgive those who tell their sins to him, and they turn away from doing them.

¹⁴ How fortunate are those who always honor Yahweh;

but those who refuse to listen to him, who do not want to learn from him, will fall into trouble.

ULB:

¹³ The one who hides his sins will not prosper,

but the one who confesses them and forsakes them will be shown mercy.

¹⁴ The one who always lives with reverence is blessed,

but whoever hardens his heart will fall into trouble.

translationWords:

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- confess, confession
- forsake, forsaken, forsook
- mercy, merciful
- life, live, living, alive
- reverence
- heart
- trouble, troubles, troubled

translationNotes:

- **hides his sins** - “covers his sins.” This is the opposite of confessing and forsaking sins, and is spoken of as covering sins rather than bringing them into the open (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **prosper** - “succeed” or “advance”
- **the one who confesses them and forsakes them will be shown mercy** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will show mercy to the one who confesses and forsakes them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **The one who always lives with reverence is blessed** - This can be expressed in active form. AT: “God will bless the one who always lives with reverence” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **lives with reverence** - The abstract noun “reverence” can be expressed as an adjective. AT: “lives a reverent life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **reverence** - This refers to deeply respecting Yahweh and showing that respect by obeying him.
- **whoever hardens his heart** - “the one who hardens his heart”
- **hardens his heart** - This is an idiom that means to be stubborn or unwilling to obey God. AT: “refuses to obey God” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **will fall into trouble** - This represents ending up in misery and distress. AT: “will end up in trouble” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ You know what a roaring lion or a charging bear is like;

they are just like the wicked ruler who is tearing apart poor people.

¹⁶ A king who does not have good sense thinks he is wise when he is cruel and he takes everything away from his people.

but a person who hates getting anything by breaking the law, will live a long life.

ULB:

¹⁵ Like a roaring lion or a charging bear
is a wicked ruler over poor people.

¹⁶ The ruler who lacks understanding is a cruel oppressor,
but the one who hates dishonesty will prolong his days.

translationWords:

- lion
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **Like a roaring lion or a charging bear is a wicked ruler over poor people** - Poor people who are helpless against an evil ruler are compared to people who have a lion roaring at them or a bear attacking them. (See: [Simile](#))
- **a charging bear** - A bear is a large, furry, dangerous animal that walks on four legs and has sharp claws and teeth. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **The ruler who lacks understanding** - The abstract noun “understanding” can be translated as a verb. AT: “The ruler who does not understand” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **oppressor** - a person who treats people harshly and makes their lives very difficult
- **the one who hates dishonesty** - The abstract noun “dishonesty” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the one who hates being dishonest” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **prolong his days** - Possible meanings are 1) this is an idiom that means his living for more time. AT: “live longer” or 2) this is an idiom that means extending the length of his reign. AT: “rule for a longer time” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ If a person is guilty of murdering another

he will live like a fugitive until he dies;
and no one will help him.

¹⁸ When a person lives his life and is blameless, Yahweh will keep him safe;
but one who lives by his lies will be suddenly ruined.

ULB:

¹⁷ If a man is guilty because he has shed someone's blood,
he will be a fugitive until death
and no one will help him.

¹⁸ Whoever walks with integrity will be kept safe,
but the one whose way is crooked will suddenly fall.

translationWords:

- **guilt, guilty**
- **death, die, dead**
- **walk**
- **integrity**

translationNotes:

- **he has shed someone's blood** - Here "blood" represents a person's life. To "shed blood" means to murder someone. AT: "he has killed someone" or "he has murdered someone" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **fugitive** - a person who is running away to avoid being captured
- **until death** - "until he dies." This means for the rest of his life. AT: "all of his life" (See: **Idiom**)
- **Whoever walks with integrity will be kept safe** - This can be expressed in active form. AT: "God will keep safe anyone who walks with integrity" (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **Whoever** - "Anyone who"
- **walks with integrity** - This represents a person living a life of integrity. The abstract noun "integrity" can be expressed as an adverb. AT: "walks honestly" or "lives honestly" (See: **Metaphor** and **Abstract Nouns**)

- **the one whose way is crooked** - A dishonest person is spoken of as if he walks on crooked or twisted paths. AT: “the one who does not live honestly” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **will suddenly fall** - What will happen to a dishonest person is spoken of as if he suddenly fell down. AT: “will suddenly be ruined” or “will suddenly perish” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ A farmer who works his field will have plenty of food to eat;

but anyone who gives his time to worthless dreams, will be very poor.

²⁰ Yahweh will give good things to a faithful person;

but he will certainly punish those who become rich quickly.

ULB:

¹⁹ The one who works his land will have plenty of food,

but whoever follows worthless pursuits will have plenty of poverty.

²⁰ A faithful man will have great blessings,

but the one who gets rich quickly will not go unpunished.

translationWords:

- works, deeds, work, acts
- worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
- faithful, faithfulness
- bless, blessed, blessing
- punish, punishment

translationNotes:

- **works his land** - This means to till, sow, and care for his crops.
- **whoever** - “anyone who”
- **follows worthless pursuits** - “chases after worthless projects.” The person who is busy doing things that do not produce anything is spoken of as chasing after useless things. (See: **Idiom**)
- **will have plenty of poverty** - The person following worthless pursuits is spoken of as getting the opposite of plenty of food. The abstract noun “poverty” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “will be very poor” (See: **Irony** and **Abstract Nouns**)
- **the one who gets rich quickly will not go unpunished** - The double negative “will not go unpunished” is used for emphasis. This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will certainly punish the one who gets rich quickly” (See: **Litotes** and **Active or Passive**)
- **the one who gets rich quickly** - The implied information is that this person gains wealth by unfaithful or dishonest means. AT: “the one who tries to get rich quickly” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:21-22**UDB:**

- ²¹ It is bad to give a favor to one person and not to another;
 some people will do what is wrong just to get a piece of bread.
- ²² A man who hates to spend his money will run to more,
 but he does not know that poverty is coming to him.

ULB:

- ²¹ It is not good to show partiality,
 but for a piece of bread a man will do wrong.
- ²² A stingy man hurries after riches,
 but he does not know that poverty will come upon him.

translationWords:

- [good, goodness](#)
- [partial, partiality](#)
- [bread](#)

translationNotes:

- **for a piece of bread a man will do wrong** - A small bribe is spoken of in an exaggerated way here as just a piece of bread. AT: “a man will sin for very little gain” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **do wrong** - “sin”
- **A stingy man** - “A selfish man.” This is a person who does not like to share his possessions or spend money.
- **hurries after riches** - The stingy man is spoken of as if he was chasing after wealth. AT: “is greedy for riches” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **poverty will come upon him** - The result of being stingy is spoken of as if poverty was overtaking the stingy person. The abstract noun “poverty” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “he will suddenly become poor” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:23-24**UDB:**

²³ The one who rebukes a person will later be appreciated more
than the one who says nice things just to flatter him.

²⁴ Anyone who steals things from his father or his mother
and says “That is not sinful,”
he is friend of the one who destroys.

ULB:

²³ Whoever disciplines someone,
afterward will find more favor from him
than from the one who flatters him with his tongue.

²⁴ Whoever robs his father and his mother and says, “That is no sin,”
he is the companion of the one who destroys.

translationWords:

- rebuke
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- tongue
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- companion

translationNotes:

- **Whoever disciplines someone, afterward will find more favor from him than from the one who flatters him with his tongue** - This can be stated in active form, with the abstract noun “favor” being expressed as a verb. AT: “A person will favor the one who disciplines him more than he favors the person who flatters him with his tongue” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **Whoever disciplines** - “If a person disciplines”
- **flatters him with his tongue** - The tongue here represents speaking. AT: “flatters him with words” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **flatters** - praises someone in a manner that is not sincere, or praises someone about things that are not true

- **Whoever robs** - “The one who robs”
- **and says, “That is no sin,”** - This can be expressed as an indirect quotation. AT: “and says that it is not a sin,” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))
- **the companion of** - Possible meanings are: 1) “the friend of” or 2) an idiom that means having the same character as. AT: “the same kind of person as” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ A greedy person stirs up arguments between people;

but the one who trusts in Yahweh will do well.

²⁶ One who depends on himself is a fool,

those who make wise decisions escape danger.

ULB:

²⁵ A greedy man stirs up conflict,

but the one who trusts in Yahweh will prosper.

²⁶ One who trusts in his own heart is a fool,

but whoever walks in wisdom will keep away from danger.

translationWords:

- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- Yahweh
- heart
- fool, foolish, folly
- walk
- wise, wisdom

translationNotes:

- **A greedy man** - a person who selfishly wants more things, money or food than what he needs
- **stirs up conflict** - The action of the greedy man is spoken of as if he were stirring up or awakening conflict. AT: “causes conflict” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **One who trusts in his own heart** - Depending on one’s self is spoken of as trusting in one’s own heart. AT: “The person who relies on himself” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **whoever** - “any person who”
- **walks in wisdom** - Possible meanings are 1) this is an idiom that means to live wisely. AT: “lives wisely” or 2) this is an idiom that means to follow the teachings of wise people. AT: “follows wise teachings” (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 28:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ One who gives to help the poor, will not lack anything,

but many curses will come to whoever turns away and ignores them.

²⁸ When wicked people get power, men and women hide;

but when the wicked die, there will be more and more of those who do what is right.

ULB:

²⁷ The one who gives to the poor will lack nothing,

but whoever closes his eyes to them will receive many curses.

²⁸ When wicked people rise, men hide themselves,

but when wicked people perish, righteous people will increase.

translationWords:

- receive
- curse, cursed
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- raise, rise, risen, arise, arose
- perish, perishing, perishable

translationNotes:

- **The one** - "The person"
- **the poor** - This refers to poor people in general. AT: "poor people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))
- **lack nothing** - This double negative is used for emphasis. AT: "have everything they need" (See: [Litotes](#))
- **whoever closes his eyes to them will receive many curses** - This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) they will receive many curses from the poor. AT: "the poor will give many curses to whoever closes his eyes to them" or 2) they will receive many curses from people in general. AT: "people will give many curses to whoever closes his eyes to the poor" or 3) they will receive many curses from God. AT: "God will give many curses to whoever closes his eyes to the poor" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **whoever** - "anyone who"

- **closes his eyes to** - Closing the eyes represents not responding to the needs of the poor. AT: “ignores” or “chooses not to help” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **When wicked people rise** - This is an idiom that means when wicked people gain power or start to rule. AT: “When wicked people rise to power” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **men hide themselves** - “people go into hiding.” How people respond when wicked people rise is spoken of as if the people hide from those in power, although they would not actually be hidden. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Reflexive Pronouns](#))
- **perish** - Possible meanings are 1) “go away” or 2) “fall from power” or 3) “are destroyed.”
- **increase** - Possible meanings are 1) “multiply” or 2) “rise to power.”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 28 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 28 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 29 concludes the second section of the book (Chapter 25-29) which is attributed to Solomon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 29:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 29:1-2**UDB:**

- ¹ When you rebuke a person who has rejected your words and who refused to listen to you,
 he will be crushed to the point that he cannot be healed.
- ² When people live the right way, they become more numerous,
 but when a wicked ruler starts to govern, the people groan.

ULB:

- 29 ¹ A person who has received many rebukes but who stiffens his neck
 will be broken in a moment beyond healing.
- ² When righteous people increase, the people rejoice,
 but when a wicked person is the ruler, the people sigh.

translationWords:

- rebuke
- heal, cure
- rejoice
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **stiffens his neck** - “resists the rebukes” (See: **Idiom**)
- **will be broken in a moment** - This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will suddenly break him” (See: **Active or Passive**)
- **beyond healing** - “and no one will be able to heal him.” Sickness is a metaphor for any kind of bad situation. AT: “and no one will be able to help him” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **the people sigh** - The people let out long, loud breaths that show that they are weary and sad. AT: “the people will be weary and sad” (See: **Metonymy**)

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:3-4**UDB:**

³ A son who desires to learn about wisdom makes his father very happy;

but the son who is a companion of prostitutes will lose all his money

⁴ When a king rules with honest rules and good laws, he causes his nation to be strong,

but anyone who asks for bribes ruins his nation.

ULB:

³ Whoever loves wisdom makes his father rejoice,

but he who keeps company with prostitutes destroys his wealth.

⁴ The king establishes the land by justice,

but the one who demands bribes tears it down.

translationWords:

- love
- wise, wisdom
- rejoice
- prostitute, harlot, whore
- king
- just, justice, justly
- bribe

translationNotes:

- **by justice** - The abstract noun “justice” can be translated as a noun phrase. AT: “by doing what is just” or “by making just laws” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:5-6**UDB:**

- ⁵ One who praises his neighbor to get something from him,
is like the one who listens for the sound of his footsteps,
so he can catch him in a net.
- ⁶ A bad person sets a trap with his sin; then he falls into it;
but one who does right is full of songs and joy.

ULB:

- ⁵ A man who flatters his neighbor
is spreading a net for his feet.
- ⁶ In the sin of an evil person is a trap,
but the righteous person sings and rejoices.

translationWords:

- [neighbor](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [rejoice](#)

translationNotes:

- **flatters his neighbor** - knowingly tells his neighbor things that are not true so that the neighbor will do what the speaker wants him to do
- **spreading a net for his feet** - The writer compares the flattery of a person to setting that person up to being caught in a trap. AT: “setting a trap to catch that person” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **In the sin of an evil person is a trap** - When an evil person sins, it is as if he is stepping into a trap. He desires to do evil to other people, but God will use what he does to punish him. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The one who does right stands up for the poor and defends them;

but wicked people do not see the importance of standing up for the poor.

⁸ People who sneer and mock others are like those who set a city on fire;

but those who help people get rid of their anger are wise.

ULB:

⁷ The righteous person pleads the cause of poor people;

the wicked person does not understand such knowledge.

⁸ Mockers set a city on fire,

but those who are wise turn away wrath.

translationWords:

- plead, pleading, plea
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- know, knowledge, make known
- mock, ridicule, scoff at
- wise, wisdom
- turn, turn away, turn back
- wrath, fury

translationNotes:

- **set a city on fire** - “persuade the people of a city to cause trouble” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **turn away wrath** - make angry people become peaceful (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ If a wise person has any conflict with a foolish person,

the foolish person screams at him and then laughs at him, and it never ends.

¹⁰ A murderer hates him who does everything right;

and they seek to kill the one who has a good reputation.

ULB:

⁹ When a wise person has an argument with a fool,

he rages and laughs, and there will be no rest.

¹⁰ The bloodthirsty hate the one who is blameless

and seek the life of the upright.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- fool, foolish, folly
- rest
- blameless
- life, live, living, alive
- upright, uprightness

translationNotes:

- **has an argument with** - Another possible meaning is “goes to court against.”
- **he rages and laughs** - The fool becomes very angry and tries to keep the wise person from speaking or the court judge from judging.
- **rages** - This means to be loud and excited and to move with powerful movements like a strong storm. This is a negative word.
- **there will be no rest** - “they will not be able to settle the problem”
- **seek the life of** - This idiom means to “want to kill.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 29 General Notes
- **Proverbs 29 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 29:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ A fool shows all his anger,

but a person who is wise holds his anger, and he knows how to calm himself down.

¹² If a ruler believes the lies that are told to him,

he teaches all his officials to be wicked.

ULB:

¹¹ A fool reveals all his anger,

but a wise man holds it back and calms himself down.

¹² If a ruler pays attention to lies,

all his officials will be wicked.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- wise, wisdom
- ruler, rulers, rule
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **pays attention** - “listens.” Translate this as you did in [17:4](#).
- **all his officials will be wicked** - The actions of the ruler are spoken of by stating the result they will cause. AT: “it is as if he is teaching his officials to be wicked” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ What do a poor person and one who takes advantage of people have in common?

Yahweh gives life to both of them.

¹⁴ If a king judges the poor by listening to the truth,
he will build a kingdom that will continue forever.

ULB:

¹³ The poor person and the oppressor are similar,
for Yahweh gives light to the eyes of them both.

¹⁴ If a king judges the poor by the truth,
his throne will be established forever.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [light](#)
- [king](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [true, truth, come true](#)
- [throne](#)
- [forever](#)

translationNotes:

- **oppressor** - a person who treats people harshly and makes their lives very difficult
- **Yahweh gives light to the eyes of them both** - This idiom means “Yahweh makes both of them alive.” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **his throne** - The throne is a metonym for the kingdom he rules from his throne. AT: “his kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ If a child is punished,

the gift of wisdom is given to him;

but when a child is out of control,

this brings shame to his mother.

¹⁶ When wicked people have authority, lawbreaking is common;

but those who do what is right will see the day

when the wicked will lose their power.

ULB:

¹⁵ The rod and reproof give wisdom,

but a child freed from discipline puts his mother to shame.

¹⁶ When wicked people are in power, transgression increases,

but righteous people will see the downfall of those wicked people.

translationWords:

- rod
- wise, wisdom
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- transgress, transgression

translationNotes:

- **The rod and reproof give wisdom** - The writer speaks as if a rod and reproof were people who could give wisdom as a physical gift. AT: “If a parent uses the rod on his child and reproves him, the child will become wise” or “If parents discipline their child and tell him when he has done wrong, the child will learn to live wisely” (See: **Personification**)
- **The rod** - Parents in Israel used wooden rods as instruments to discipline children by striking them. AT: “discipline” (See: **Metonymy**)
- **reproof** - When a person gives reproof to another person, or reproves that person, he tells that person that he does not approve of what that other person is doing.
- **transgression increases** - The abstract noun “transgression” can be translated as a verb. AT: “more people will transgress and their sins will become worse” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)

- **the downfall of those wicked people** - The abstract noun “downfall” can be translated with the verb “fall,” which is a metaphor for losing the power to rule. AT: “those wicked people fall” or “those wicked people lose their power to rule” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Discipline your child and he will help you and serve you;
you will truly rejoice over him.

¹⁸ When no prophet receives any vision from Yahweh, the people go out of control,

but those who obey the law are fortunate.

ULB:

¹⁷ Discipline your son and he will give you rest;
he will bring delights into your life.

¹⁸ Where there is no prophetic vision the people run wild,
but the one who keeps the law is blessed.

translationWords:

- discipline, self-discipline
- rest
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- vision
- law, principle

translationNotes:

- **the one who keeps the law is blessed** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “God will bless the one who keeps the law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Talk to a slave as much as you want,

but though he understands what you are saying, they have learned not to give you an answer.

²⁰ Do you see someone who is quick to speak, quick to give an opinion?

Yahweh can give a fool more help in the future easier than he can help him who is quick to speak.

ULB:

¹⁹ A slave will not be corrected by words,

for though he understands, there will be no response.

²⁰ See a man who is hasty in his words?

There is more hope for a fool than for him.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [hope](#)
- [fool, foolish, folly](#)

translationNotes:

- **A slave will not be corrected by words** - This can be translated in active form. "You will not be able to correct a slave simply by talking to him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **See a man who is hasty in his words?** - The writer is using a question to get the reader's attention. AT: "You should notice what happens to a man who is hasty in his words." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ If a slave is excused from his labor

and treated better than other slaves by his master

from the time he is young;

but when he is grown,

that slave will give trouble to his master.

²² A person who cannot control his anger stirs up many quarrels

and uses his rage to rule over others, and so he commits many sins.

ULB:

²¹ One who pampers his slave from youth,

at the end of it there will be trouble.

²² An angry person stirs up strife

and a master of rage commits many sins.

translationWords:

- servant, slave, slavery
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- angry, anger
- strife
- lord, master, sir
- rage
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

translationNotes:

- **who pampers his slave** - “who allows his slave to avoid work and who treats his slave better than he treats other slaves” (see UDB)
- **at the end of it** - “at the end of the slave’s youth” or “when the slave is grown”
- **there will be trouble** - These words translate a Hebrew word whose meaning no one knows for sure. Some understand it to mean that the slave will be weak, others that the slave will rule the household. Either way, the reader needs to understand that as surely as a man must discipline his son (21:17), he must discipline his slave.

- **stirs up strife** - Causing people to argue more is spoken of as if it were stirring up or awakening arguments. AT: “causes people to argue more” or “causes people to argue and fight.” Similar words appear in [15:18](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **a master of rage** - This idiom means “a person who becomes angry easily.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Any person who is proud will be humbled;

but the one who is humbled will be given honor.

²⁴ A person who helps a thief, hates himself;

he overhears the curse, but he does not say anything about it.

ULB:

²³ A person's pride brings him low,

but one who has a humble spirit will be given honor.

²⁴ One who shares with a thief hates his own life;

he hears the curse and says nothing.

translationWords:

- proud, pride, prideful
- humble, humility
- spirit, spiritual
- honor, to honor
- thief, thieves, robber
- curse, cursed

translationNotes:

- **one who has a humble spirit will be given honor** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "men will give honor to a person who has a humble spirit" or "a person who has a humble spirit will receive honor from men" or "Yahweh will cause men to honor a person who has a humble spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **hates his own life** - "becomes his own enemy"
- **he hears the curse and says nothing** - Possible meanings are 1) people have put the "one who shares with a thief" under oath to tell the truth about what he knows about what the thief stole, and he knows he will be punished if he tells the truth. AT: "he does not dare to testify under oath" or 2) people do not know who the thief is but they call on God to curse the thief, and the "one who shares" is afraid to confess and so come out from under the curse because he is afraid of the thief. AT: "he says nothing even after people have cursed him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ When one is afraid of what people can do,
 it is like setting a trap for himself.
 but whoever trusts in Yahweh is safe.

²⁶ Many people want to come before a ruler to get help from him,
 but Yahweh is the only one who gives him true justice.

ULB:

²⁵ The fear of man makes a snare,
 but the one who trusts in Yahweh will be protected.
²⁶ Many are those who seek the face of the ruler,
 but from Yahweh is justice for a person.

translationWords:

- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- Yahweh
- face
- ruler, rulers, rule
- just, justice, justly

translationNotes:

- **The fear of man makes a snare** - Being afraid of what other people might do is spoken of as stepping into a trap. AT: “Anyone who is afraid of what other people might do to him is like a person who has become snared in a trap” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a snare** - a trap that catches animals with ropes
- **the one who trusts in Yahweh will be protected** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will protect the one who trusts in him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Many are those who seek the face of the ruler** - The word “face” is a metonym for the ruler listening to people telling him what they want him to do and then doing it. AT: “Many people want their ruler to pay attention to them” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **from Yahweh is justice for a person** - It is Yahweh, not human rulers, who will see that people treat a person justly. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 29:27**UDB:**

²⁷ Those who do what is right detest a person who treats others in an unfair way;
just as the wicked hate those who live good lives.

ULB:

²⁷ An unjust man is an abomination to righteous people,
but the one whose way is upright is detestable to the wicked person.

translationWords:

- unjust, unjustly, injustice
- abomination, abominable
- evil, wicked, wickedness

translationNotes:

- **detestable** - a person who should be hated. Translate this as you did in [3:32](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 29 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 29 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 30 is a chapter in Proverbs attributed to Agur, who is a person otherwise unknown.

Special concepts in this chapter

Agur

His full title is Agur, Son of Jakeh. Agur comes from a Hebrew word that means “gatherer” and so some scholars believe this is not a real name but possibly a way of referring to Solomon as a gatherer of proverbs. However, it is still prudent to simply use this as a name.

Three thing and four

From verses 15 through 32, the author uses a specific technique to explain some things. He says there are three things and even four and lists items that exemplify a feature like small and yet wise. The numbering is not meant to be so literal but as a memory device that introduces the items. (See: [wise, wisdom](#))

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [fool, foolish, folly, evil, wicked, wickedness](#) and [righteous, righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 30:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 30:1-3**UDB:**

¹ These are sayings containing wisdom, the sayings of Agur son of Jakeh.

Agur wrote them for Ithiel, yes, to Ithiel and to Ucal.

² I am more like an animal than any human being!

I lack the understanding that a human being has!

³ I have not learned about wisdom;

I do not know Yahweh, the Holy One.

ULB:

30 ¹ The sayings of Agur son of Jakeh—an oracle:

This man declared to Ithiel, to Ithiel and Ucal: [1]Some versions have *This man declared, “I am weary, O God, I am weary. I am unable to do anything.”*

² Surely I am more like an animal than any human
and I do not have the understanding of a human being.

³ I have not learned wisdom,
nor do I have knowledge of the Holy One.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- declare, declaration
- understand, understanding
- wise, wisdom
- know, knowledge, make known
- Holy One

translationNotes:

- **Agur ... Jakeh ... Ithiel ... Ucal** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Agur son of Jakeh** - This is the literal son of Jakeh, not a grandchild.
- **oracle** - a message from God
- **to Ithiel, to Ithiel and Ucal** - “to Ithiel—that is, to Ithiel and Ucal”
- **Surely** - “Certainly” or “There is no doubt that”

- **I do not have the understanding of a human being** - The abstract noun “understanding” can be translated as a verb. AT: “I do not understand anything the way human beings are supposed to understand them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **nor do I have knowledge of the Holy One** - The abstract noun “knowledge” can be translated as a verb. AT: “nor do I really know anything about the Holy One” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:4**UDB:**

⁴ Who has ever gone up to heaven and come back down again?

Who can catch the wind in his hand?

Who can gather up the waters in an overcoat?

Who set the limits to the size of the earth?

What is his name? And what is the name of his son?

Do you know?

ULB:

⁴ Who has gone up to heaven and come down?

Who has gathered up the wind in the hollow of his hands?

Who has gathered up the waters in a cloak?

Who has established all the ends of the earth?

What is his name, and what is the name of his son? Surely you know!

translationWords:

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- water, waters
- earth, earthly
- name

translationNotes:

- **Who has ... down? Who has ... hands? Who has ... cloak? Who has ... earth?** - The writer asks these questions to get the reader thinking about how much greater Yahweh is than people. AT: “No person has ever ... down. No person has ever ... hands. No person has ever ... cloak. No person has ever ... earth.” or “Who has ... down? Who has ... hands? Who has ... cloak? Who has ... earth? No one has ever done any of these things.” (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **heaven** - where God lives
- **gathered up the wind in the hollow of his hands** - The writer speaks of the wind as if it were something that a person could catch and hold in his hand. AT: “has caught the wind in his hands” (See: **Metaphor**)

- **the hollow of his hands** - the way his hands are shaped when he is scooping up, for example, water or sand. “his cupped hands”
- **gathered up** - brought small scattered objects into a pile so they can be lifted
- **has established all the ends of the earth** - “has set up the limits for where the earth ends” or “has marked the boundaries for the ends of the earth”
- **What is his name, and what is the name of his son?** - The writer uses these questions to command the reader to give an answer. AT: “Tell me his name and the name of his son, if you know them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Surely you know!** - The writer uses irony to show that neither he nor the reader know any person who can do what the “who” in the earlier questions can do. AT: “I do not think you really know anyone who can do those things.” (See: [Irony](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Every word of God is proven by a test that it is true;

he is like a shield that protects those who run to him.

⁶ Be careful not to add to Yahweh's words more than he has said;

if you do that, he will correct you and he will prove that you lied about what he said.

ULB:

⁵ Every word of God is tested;

he is a shield to those who take refuge in him.

⁶ Do not add to his words,

or he will discipline you,

and you will be proved to be a liar.

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- test
- shield
- refuge, shelter
- rebuke

translationNotes:

- **is tested** - Words are spoken of as if they were metals that need someone to clean the bad parts out of them. AT: "is like a precious metal from which someone has removed all the useless material" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **he is a shield to those who take refuge in him** - The word "shield" is a metaphor for something that protects a person. AT: "he protects those who come and ask him to protect them" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **add to his words** - say more than he has said
- **you will be proved to be** - This can be translated in active form. AT: "he will prove that you are" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ I ask Yahweh for two things,

and that he give them to me before I die.

⁸ Put vain pride and lies far away from me;

and let me neither have poverty or riches,

just give me the food I need every day. ⁹ For if I have too much money,

it is possible that I will deny my God and say, “Who is Yahweh?”

Or it is possible that I will become so poor that I steal from others and bring disgrace on the name of my God.

ULB:

⁷ Two things I ask of you,

do not withhold them from me before I die:

⁸ Put vanity and lies far away from me.

Give me neither poverty nor riches,

just give me the food I need.

⁹ For if I have too much, I might deny you and say, “Who is Yahweh?”

Or if I become poor,

I might steal and profane the name of my God.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- Yahweh
- profane
- name
- God

translationNotes:

- **Put vanity and lies far away from me** - Possible meanings are 1) “Do not allow people to speak vanity and lies to me” or 2) “Do not allow me to speak vanity and lies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

- **vanity** - false, useless words
- **Give me neither poverty nor riches** - The writer speaks as if “poverty” and “riches”—abstract nouns that can be translated as adjectives—were physical objects that someone could give to another. AT: “Do not allow me to be either very poor or very rich” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **if I have too much, I might deny you and say** - This describes a hypothetical situation that has not happened but is possible if the writer becomes rich. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **if I become poor, I might steal and profane** - This describes a hypothetical situation that has not happened but is possible if the writer becomes poor. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))
- **I might steal and profane the name of my God** - “I might make people who know that I have stolen things think that there is no God” or “I might harm God’s reputation by stealing”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Do not speak badly about a slave when he is standing before his master;

if you do, he will curse you, and you will be responsible; you brought it on yourself.

ULB:

¹⁰ Do not slander a slave before his master,
or he will curse you and you will be held guilty.

translationWords:

- [slander, slanderer](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)
- [curse, cursed](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

translationNotes:

- **slander** - speak falsely about another person with the desire to harm him
- **he will curse** - “the servant will curse”
- **you will be held guilty** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “people will hold you guilty” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ There are many people who curse their fathers

and they do not praise their mothers or thank them;

¹² those people think everything they do should not be criticized,

but really they have never been cleansed from their filth.

ULB:

¹¹ There is a generation that curses their father

and does not bless their mother.

¹² There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,

and yet they are not washed of their filth.

translationWords:

- generation
- curse, cursed
- bless, blessed, blessing
- pure, purify, purification

translationNotes:

- **a generation that curses ... and does not bless ... a generation that is** - “a generation of people who curse ... and do not bless ... a generation of people that are”
- **generation** - type or class or group
- **is pure in their own eyes** - The phrase “in their own eyes” is a metonym for their opinion. AT: “believes they are pure” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **they are not washed of their filth** - The words “washed” and “filth” speak of God forgiving people who sin as if he were washing physical filth off of the people. This can be translated in active form. AT: “God has not forgiven them of their sins” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **filth** - This should be translated with a polite term that includes human or animal vomit and waste.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ These people show how proud they are in their eyes;

they make people look at them and they show their pride in their faces!

¹⁴ These people use their mouths to speak the most hurtful words, like they are cutting and tearing people apart;

it is as if they are eating up the poor people from the earth,
and swallowing up the needy from humanity.

ULB:

¹³ There is a generation whose eyes are raised up,
and how high are their eyelids lifted up!

¹⁴ There is a generation whose teeth are swords,
and their jawbones are like knives,
so they may devour the poor from the earth and the needy from among
humanity.

translationWords:

- generation
- haughty
- sword
- devour
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **eyes are raised up ... their eyelids lifted up** - These two metonyms refer to people who think that they are better than other people. Their eyes show that they are proud, and the way they look at others shows that they think they are better than those other people. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **There is a generation whose teeth are swords, and their jawbones are like knives, so they may devour the poor ... and the needy** - The people of the generation who speak very harmful things is spoken of as if they were wild animals with teeth and jawbones made of swords and knives, and they eat the poor and needy. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **jawbones** - the bones of the face where teeth grow

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ There are leeches that suck blood, imagine they had two daughters;

they say, "Give to us! Give to us!

There are four things that are never satisfied—

they always want more :

¹⁶ The grave, the place of the dead;

the womb of a woman that never conceived a child;

soil that badly needs to be watered;

and a fire that burns hot and it never says, "The fire is hot enough!"

¹⁷ The one who dishonors his father,

and who disrespects and disobeys his mother.

such a person would be killed and have his eyes pecked out by crows,

and would be devoured by the vultures.

ULB:

¹⁵ The leech has two daughters: "Give and give" they cry.

There are three things that are never satisfied,

four that never say, "Enough":

¹⁶ Sheol; the barren womb;

land that is never satisfied with water;

and the fire that never says, "Enough!"

¹⁷ The eye that mocks a father

and scorns obedience to a mother,

his eyes will be pecked out by the ravens of the valley,

and he will be eaten by the vultures.

translationWords:

- **hades, sheol**
- **barren**

- [womb](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)

translationNotes:

- **The leech has two daughters** - This is an example of something that always wants more. AT: “Greed has two daughters” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **leech** - a type of worm that attaches itself to the skin and sucks blood
- **“Give and give” they cry** - Another possible meaning is “and they are both named Give Me.”
- **There are three things that are never satisfied, four that never say, “Enough”** - This use of the numbers “three” and “four” together here is likely a poetic device. AT: “There are four things that are never satisfied, who never say, ‘Enough’ ” (See: [Poetry](#))
- **are never satisfied** - This can be stated positively. AT: “always want more” (See: [Litotes](#))
- **land that is never satisfied with water** - Land that is no longer producing food because there has been no rain is spoken of as if it were a person who does not have enough water to drink. (See: [Personification](#))
- **scorns obedience to a mother** - The word “obedience”—an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb—is a metonym for the mother herself. AT: “considers his mother worthless and will not obey her” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **his eyes ... the vultures** - The writer says that the person will die by giving two pictures of what happens to people who die away from where people live.
- **his eyes will be pecked out by the ravens of the valley** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “the ravens of the valley will peck out his eyes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **ravens** - large, shiny, black birds that eat plants and dead animals
- **he will be eaten by the vultures** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “the vultures will eat him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **vultures** - any one of several large birds that eat dead animals and have small, featherless heads

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ There are three wonderful things I can mention;

no, there are four that are too amazing and I cannot understand them.

¹⁹ How eagles fly in the sky;

how snakes move over a big rock,

how ships can sail on the seas,

and how a man is able to win the love of a woman.

ULB:

¹⁸ There are three things that are too wonderful for me,
four that I do not understand:

¹⁹ the way of an eagle in the sky;

the way of a snake on a rock;

the way of a ship in the heart of the sea;

and the way of a man with a young woman.

translationWords:

- eagle
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

translationNotes:

- **There are three things that are ... four that I do not understand:** - The use of the numbers “three” and “four” here is likely a poetic device. AT: “There are some things that are too wonderful for me that I do not understand—four of them are:”
- **in the heart of the sea** - The “heart” refers to the middle. AT: “in the middle of the sea” or “on the open sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:20**UDB:**

²⁰ This is what a woman is like who is not faithful to her husband:

she eats and then wipes her mouth,
and she says, “There is nothing wrong in what I have done.”

ULB:

²⁰ This is the way of an adulteress:
she eats and she wipes her mouth
and says, “I have done nothing wrong.”

translationWords:

- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress](#)

translationNotes:

- **she eats and she wipes her mouth** - This seems to be both a euphemism and a metaphor for committing adultery and then taking a bath. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ There are four things that make the earth tremble:

²² the earth trembles with a slave becomes a king;

the earth trembles when fool has eaten his food and is filled;

²³ the earth trembles when a woman who is hated by all, gets married,

and the earth trembles, when the maid becomes the wife of her master.

ULB:

²¹ Under three things the earth trembles,

and under four it cannot bear up:

²² a slave when he becomes king;

a fool when he is filled with food;

²³ a hated woman when she marries;

and a maid when she takes the place of her mistress.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- endure, endurance
- servant, slave, slavery
- king
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **Under three things the earth trembles, and under four it cannot bear up** - The use of the numbers “three” and “four” here is likely a poetic device. “There are some things that make the earth tremble, that it cannot endure. Four of these are:”
- **a fool when he is filled with food** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “a fool who has had enough to eat” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a hated woman when she marries** - That is, people rightly hated her before she married; once she marries, she will be worse than she was before she married. This can be translated in active form. AT: “a woman whom good people have hated when she marries” or “an outcast woman when she marries” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **takes the place of her mistress** - rules the household

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ There are four creatures on the earth that are small, but they are very wise.

²⁵ Ants are not strong,

but they store up food during the summer in order to have it during the winter.

²⁶ Rock badgers also are not strong,

but they make their homes among the rocks.

ULB:

²⁴ Four things on earth are small

and yet they are very wise:

²⁵ the ants are creatures that are not strong,

but they prepare their food in the summer;

²⁶ the rock badgers are not mighty creatures,

but they make their homes in the rocks.

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- wise, wisdom
- creature
- mighty, might

translationNotes:

- **rock badgers** - an animal with small, rounded ears, short legs, and no tail

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Locusts do not have a king,

but they march in rank like soldiers in the army.

²⁸ Lizards are very small and you can hold them in your hand,

but they get inside kings' palaces.

ULB:

²⁷ Locusts have no king,

but all of them march in rank.

²⁸ As for the lizard, you can hold it in your two hands,

yet they are found in kings' palaces.

translationWords:

- locust
- king
- palace

translationNotes:

- **lizard** - a small reptile that has four legs, a long, slender body, and a tail

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ There are four animals that walk with great pride and they are very impressive as they walk.

³⁰ Lions, which are the strongest among wild animals
and are not afraid of any of them.

³¹ Strutting roosters, and male goats,
and kings who stand with their soldiers beside them.

ULB:

²⁹ There are three things that are stately in their stride
and four that are stately in how they walk:

³⁰ a lion, strongest among wild animals—
it does not turn away from anything;

³¹ a strutting rooster; a goat;
and a king whose soldiers are beside him.

translationWords:

- [lion](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **There are three things that are ... four that are stately in how they walk** - The use of the numbers “three” and “four” here is likely a poetic device. AT: “There are some things that walk stately. Four of these are:”
- **stately** - majestic or dignified, like a king
- **strutting rooster** - an adult male chicken that walks proudly

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 30:32-33**UDB:**

³² If you have acted foolishly, exalting yourself,

or if you been planning to do something evil,
put your hand over your mouth! Stop it!

³³ Just as when you churn milk, and it produces butter,

even so, if you hit someone hard on his nose, the result is that his
nose will bleed;

and, in the same way, when people are angry, they will argue and
fight.

ULB:

³² If you have been foolish, exalting yourself,

or if you have been devising evil—
put your hand over your mouth.

³³ As churning milk makes butter

and as one's nose will produce blood if it is twisted,
so deeds done in anger produce conflict.

translationWords:

- fool, foolish, folly
- exalt, exaltation
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- angry, anger

translationNotes:

- **churning** - strongly stirring
- **butter** - Animal milk that someone has stirred and made thick.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 30 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 30 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapter 31 begins with 9 verses from King Lemuel. The last portion of this chapter is a poem about a godly wife. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#))

King Lemuel

This person is unknown in Scripture, other than here. It is important to recognize that the words in this chapter are words of his mother addressed to him. They are formed like advice of a mother to her son.

Special concepts in this chapter

An Acrostic Poem

Verse 10 through 31 is tightly formed as a poem in the original language. There are 22 lines in the Hebrew language that each begin with a successive letter of the alphabet. However, each language will have a different set of letters. Therefore, it is important to realize this was a single composition with a single theme of a noble or godly wife.

Themes

There are individual proverbs that run along common themes, often including contrasting elements: wise/foolish, money, lazy/diligent, truth telling, wicked/righteous, sluggard, pride/humility, integrity/crookedness. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#), [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Links:

- [Proverbs 31:01 Notes](#)

Proverbs 31:1-3**UDB:**

¹ These are sayings of King Lemuel—an oracle his mother taught him.

² She says: You are my son; I carried you in my womb;
you are the son, I made promises to Yahweh for you.

³ Do not give your strength to women;
and do not tell what your plans are, to the women who destroy
kings.

ULB:

31 ¹ The words of King Lemuel—an oracle his mother taught him.

² What, my son? What is it, son of my womb?

What do you want, son of my vows?

³ Do not give your strength to women,
or your ways to those who destroy kings.

translationWords:

- king
- womb
- vow

translationNotes:

- **King Lemuel** - This is the name of a king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **oracle** - message from God. Translate as in [30:1](#).
- **What, my son? What is it, son of my womb? What do you want, son of my vows?** - Possible meanings of the rhetorical question “What” are 1) “What are you doing?” or “You should not be doing what you are doing” or 2) “What shall I tell you?” or “Listen to what I am telling you” or 3) “Do not do the things I am about to warn you against.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **my son ... son of my womb ... son of my vows** - The speaker wants the hearer to notice carefully and to respect the one who is talking to him.
- **son of my womb** - The womb is a synecdoche for the person. It is best to use a polite term for the body part in which babies grow before they are born.

- **son of my vows** - The “vows” could be 1) the mother’s marriage vows or 2) a vow after she married that if God allowed her to have a child she would dedicate him to God.
- **Do not give your strength to women** - “Do not work hard trying to have sex with women,” either outside of marriage or with concubines.
- **or your ways to those who destroy kings** - “or allow those who destroy kings to advise you”
- **your ways** - Possible meanings are 1) “the way you live your life” or 2) “the work you do”
- **those who destroy kings** - probably the immoral “women” to whom he is not to give his strength

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Lemuel, kings should be careful about drinking wine;

and a king should never ask, “Where is the strong drink?”

⁵ They could drink but then they might forget that they made a decree of the king,

and tear down the rights of those who have been taken advantage of.

ULB:

⁴ It is not for kings, Lemuel, it is not for kings to drink wine, nor for rulers to ask, “Where is the strong drink?”

⁵ Lest they forget what has been decreed, and pervert the rights of all the afflicted.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [strong drink](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)

translationNotes:

- **Lemuel** - This is the name of a man. Translate as in [31:1](#).
- **what has been decreed** - This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “what God has decreed” or 2) “what the kings themselves have decreed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **pervert** - “change” or “twist” or “deny”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Give strong drink to those who are dying

and to those who are grieving their loss. ⁷ One who drinks will forget he is poor,
and he will not remember his trouble.

ULB:

⁶ Give strong drink to a person who is perishing
and wine to those in bitter distress.

⁷ He will drink and he will forget his poverty
and he will not remember his trouble.

translationWords:

- [strong drink](#)
- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)

translationNotes:

- **and wine** - The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “and give wine” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **in bitter distress** - “who’s souls are bitter” or “who are in misery”
- **his poverty** - The abstract noun “poverty” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “how poor he is” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **his trouble** - The abstract noun “trouble” can be translated as a clause. AT: “the bad things that are happening to him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Speak for those who cannot speak for themselves,

 speak for those who are approaching death.

⁹ Speak out and render judgment according to what is right;

 and plead for justice to come in the cases of the poor and the needy.

ULB:

⁸ Speak for those who cannot speak,

 for the causes of all who are perishing.

⁹ Speak out and judge by the measure of what is right

 and plead the cause of poor and needy people.

translationWords:

- [perish, perishing, perishable](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [plead, pleading, plea](#)

translationNotes:

- **Speak for those who cannot speak** - Speaking is a metonym for using words to defend innocent people. AT: “Defend those who cannot defend themselves” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **for the causes of all who are perishing** - The cause is a metonym for the person whose cause it is. AT: “so that people will treat all who are perishing justly” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for the causes** - The ellipsis can be filled in. AT: “speak for the causes” or “speak out for” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **poor and needy people** - These two words have basically the same meaning and are used together for emphasis. AT: “people who are poor and cannot get the things that they need” (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Who can find a wife who is good at many things?

Her value is much more than the jewels she could wear.

¹¹ Her husband completely trusts her,
and because of her, he will never be poor.

¹² She does good things for him and not evil,
all the days of her life.

ULB:

¹⁰ Who can find a capable wife?

Her value is far more than jewels.

¹¹ The heart of her husband trusts in her,
and he will never be poor.

¹² She does good things for him and not evil
all the days of her life.

translationWords:

- heart
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **Who can find a capable wife?** - The writer asks a question to show that he is beginning a new section. AT: “Not many men can find a capable wife.” or “Not many men can find a wife who is able to do many things well.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **Her value is far more than jewels** - “She is more precious than jewels”
- **he will never be poor** - This litotes can be stated positively. AT: “he will always have what he needs” (See: [Litotes](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ She finds wool and flax in the market,

and she enjoys spinning it to make yarn and fabric.

¹⁴ She is like the merchant ships

because she brings her food to her home from far away.

¹⁵ She gets up before dawn to prepare food for her family,

and she gives each servant girl her duties for the day.

ULB:

¹³ She selects wool and flax,

and works with the delight of her hands.

¹⁴ She is like the merchant ships;

she brings her food from far away.

¹⁵ She rises while it is night

and gives food to her household,

and she distributes the work for her female servants.

translationWords:

- household
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **wool** - sheep's hair that is used to make cloth
- **flax** - a plant whose fiber is used to make linen
- **with the delight of her hands** - Possible meanings are that the word "delight" describes 1) how she feels as she works, "gladly with her hands," or 2) how she feels about the wool and flax, "with her hands on things that she enjoys working with"
- **merchant** - someone who buys and sells
- **distributes the work for her female servants** - "tells her female servants what work each of them is to do that day"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ She goes out and considers what field she will buy, and she buys it.

With the money she has made in other ventures,
she plants a vineyard.

¹⁷ She prepares herself with her strength,
and her arms are strong, able to do hard work.

ULB:

¹⁶ She considers a field and buys it,
with the fruit of her hands she plants a vineyard.

¹⁷ She dresses herself with strength
and makes her arms strong.

translationWords:

- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [vineyard](#)

translationNotes:

- **the fruit of her hands** - The money she has earned from the work she did with wool and flax ([31:13](#)) is spoken of as if it were fruit growing off a tree. The hands are a synecdoche for the person. AT: “the money she has earned” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **She dresses herself with strength** - Putting on clothes is a metonym for preparing for work. AT: “She prepares herself for hard physical work” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **and makes her arms strong** - “and she strengthens her arms by doing her work”

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ She knows when she is getting a good profit from her business.

She keeps a lamp burning all night long.

¹⁹ She holds the spindle,

and then she spins the thread that she will use.

ULB:

¹⁸ She perceives what will make a good profit for her;

all night long her lamp is not extinguished.

¹⁹ She puts her hands on the spindle,

and she holds the twisting thread.

translationWords:

- [profit, profitable](#)
- [lamp](#)

translationNotes:

- **perceives** - sees by looking carefully
- **all night long her lamp is not extinguished** - This refers to her working long into the night while it is dark. This is an exaggeration: she does not work the entire night, from dusk to dawn. AT: "She burns a lamp through the night as she works" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **spindle** - a thin rod or stick with pointed ends that is used in making thread

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ She gives an outstretched hand to help the poor.

²¹ She is not worried about the snow,
for everyone in her house have the best winter coats.

ULB:

²⁰ She reaches out with her hand to poor people;
she reaches out with her hands to needy people.

²¹ She is not afraid of the snow for her household,
for all her household are clothed in scarlet.

translationWords:

- snow
- household
- clothe, clothed

translationNotes:

- **reaches out with her hand to poor** - The hand is a metonym for the help the woman uses her hand to give. AT: “helps poor” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **reaches out with her hands to** - These words translate the same words translated “puts her hands on” in [31:19](#).
- **are clothed in scarlet** - Here “scarlet” does not refer to the color of the cloth, but that the clothing is expensive and warm. AT: “have expensive, warm clothing” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **scarlet** - The color red, but with a hint of orange.

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:22-23**UDB:**

²² She makes covers for the beds.

She wears fine purple linen clothes—the color of royalty.

²³ Her husband is well known at the city gates,
and there at the gates he sits with the other leaders of the town.

ULB:

²² She makes coverings for her bed,
and she wears clothes of fine purple linen.

²³ Her husband is known at the gates,
when he sits with the elders of the land.

translationWords:

- [purple](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [elder](#)

translationNotes:

- **linen** - cloth made of flax yarn
- **Her husband is known** - This can be translated in active form. The verb “know” is a metonym for respect. AT: “People respect her husband” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **when he sits with the elders of the land** - to make laws and settle arguments

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ She makes linen garments and she sells them.

She sells sashes to shop owners.

²⁵ She is strong in her character and respected,
and she laughs at what will happen in the future.

ULB:

²⁴ She makes linen garments and sells them,
and she supplies sashes to the merchants.

²⁵ She is clothed with strength and honor,
and she laughs at the time to come.

translationWords:

- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **linen** - cloth made from flax yarn
- **sashes** - long pieces of cloth worn around the waist or over one shoulder
- **She is clothed with strength and honor** - This can be translated in active form. The abstract nouns “strength” and “honor” can be translated by an adjective and a verb, respectively. AT: “Everyone can see that she is strong, and so they honor her” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **laughs at the time to come** - This is probably an exaggeration. AT: “is not afraid of what will happen in the future” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ When she speaks, she says what is wise,

and she lives by the law of kindness.

²⁷ She watches over everything that is done in her household,

and nothing in her actions would be anything like laziness.

ULB:

²⁶ She opens her mouth with wisdom

and the law of kindness is on her tongue.

²⁷ She watches over the ways of her household

and does not eat the bread of idleness.

translationWords:

- wise, wisdom
- law, principle
- household

translationNotes:

- **opens her mouth with wisdom** - The act of opening her mouth is a metonym for speaking. The abstract noun “wisdom” can be translated as an adverb or an adjective. AT: “she speaks wisely” or “she speaks wise words” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))
- **the law of kindness is on her tongue** - The phrase “on her tongue” refers to her speaking, as the tongue is part of the mouth. The phrase “the law of kindness” refers to her teaching people to be kind. AT: “she teaches people to be kind” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **watches over the ways of her household** - The word “ways” refers to the way people live. AT: “makes sure her whole family lives in a way that pleases God” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **does not eat the bread of idleness** - To “eat the bread of” something means to do something. AT: “she is not idle” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **idleness** - doing nothing and being lazy

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)

- Proverbs 31 General Notes
- **Proverbs 31 Translation Questions**

Proverbs 31:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ Her children speak highly of her;

her husband also praises her.

²⁹ He says to her, "There are many women who do admirable things,
but you surpass them all!"

ULB:

²⁸ Her children rise up and call her blessed,
and her husband praises her, saying,

²⁹ "Many women have done well,
but you surpassed them all."

translationWords:

- [praise](#)

translationNotes:

- **rise up and** - Possible meanings are 1) literally "stand up and" or 2) as a metonym, "actively." (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **call her blessed** - saying that good things have happened to her because she has done good things. This can be translated as a direct quote. AT: "congratulate her" or "say, 'Yay, Mom!'" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))
- **surpassed** - "have done better than"

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

Proverbs 31:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Elegance can deceive

and make you think more highly of a person than you should;
and beauty has no lasting value.

But a woman who honors Yahweh will be praised for the person she is. ³¹ Give her what she has earned,

and her works will praise her among the leaders of the town.

ULB:

³⁰ Elegance is deceptive, beauty is vain,

but a woman who fears Yahweh, she will be praised.

³¹ Give her the fruit of her hands

and let her works praise her in the gates.

translationWords:

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- vain, vanity
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- praise
- fruit, fruitful
- works, deeds, work, acts
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **Elegance is deceptive** - The abstract noun “elegance” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “A gracious woman can deceive people” or “A woman with good manners could really be evil” Translate this as in **11:16**. (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **beauty is vain** - The abstract noun “beauty” can be translated as an adjective. AT: “a woman who is beautiful now will not always be beautiful” (See: **Abstract Nouns**)
- **she will be praised** - This can be translated in active form. AT: “people will praise her” (See: **Active or Passive**)

- **the fruit of her hands** - The money she has earned from the work she did with wool and flax (31:13) is spoken of as if it were fruit growing off a tree. The hands are a synecdoche for the person. AT: “the money she has earned” Translate as in 31:16. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **let her works praise her in the gates** - She will be praised for her works, not by her works. Those “in the gates” are the important people of the city who conduct business and legal affairs near the gates of the city. AT: “may the important people of the city praise her because of the works she has done” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Proverbs](#)
- [Proverbs 31 General Notes](#)
- [Proverbs 31 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

Proverbs 1

Q? Who was the author of these proverbs?

A. Solomon, king of Israel, was the author of these proverbs. [1:1]

Q? How do these proverbs teach people to live?

A. These proverbs teaches people to live by doing what is right, just, and fair. [1:3]

Q? What can the wise receive by listening to these proverbs?

A. The wise can increase their learning by listening to these proverbs. [1:5]

Q? What is the beginning of knowledge?

A. The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge. [1:7]

Q? To whose instruction should a son listen?

A. A son should listen to instruction from his father and mother. [1:8]

Q? What should a son do if sinners try to entice him with sin?

A. A son should refuse to follow those who try to entice him with sin. [1:10]

Q? With what do those who are sinning plan to fill their houses?

A. Those who are sinning plan to fill their houses with what they steal from others. [1:13]

Q? What do those who are sinning hurry to do?

A. Those who are sinning hurry to shed blood. [1:16]

Q? What does unjust gain do to those who hold on to it?

A. Unjust gain takes away the lives of those who hold on to it. [1:19]

Q? Who cries aloud in the streets, open places, and city gates?

A. Wisdom cries aloud in the streets, open places, and city gates. [1:20-21]

Q? What did those who lacked wisdom do when Wisdom called out to them?

A. Those who lacked wisdom refused to listen and did not pay attention when Wisdom called out to them. [1:24-25]

Q? What will Wisdom do when calamity comes on those who lacked wisdom?

A. Wisdom will laugh when calamity comes on those who lacked wisdom. [1:26]

Q? What will Wisdom do when those who lacked wisdom call upon her?

A. Wisdom will not answer when those who lacked wisdom call upon her. [1:28]

Q? With what will those who lacked wisdom be filled?

A. Those who lacked wisdom will be filled with the fruit of their schemes. [1:31]

Q? How will those live who listen to Wisdom?

A. Those who listen to wisdom will live in safety. [1:33]

Proverbs 2

Q? What does Wisdom want her son to treasure?

A. Wisdom wants her son to treasure her commandments. [2:1]

Q? How should the son seek and search for understanding?

A. The son should seek understanding as silver, and search for it as a hidden treasure. [2:3-4]

Q? If the son seeks and searches for understanding, what will he find?

A. The son will find the knowledge of God. [2:5]

Q? What is Yahweh for those who walk in integrity?

A. Yahweh is a shield for those who walk in integrity. [2:7]

Q? When wisdom comes into the son's heart, what will he understand?

A. The son will understand righteousness, justice, equity, and every good path. [2:9]

Q? From what will discretion and understanding rescue the son?

A. Discretion and understanding will rescue the son from the way of evil and from those who walk in the ways of darkness. [2:11-13]

Q? How do those who walk in the ways of darkness hide their tracks?

A. Those who walk in the ways of darkness hide their tracks using deception. [2:15]

Q? What does the immoral woman forsake and forget?

A. The immoral woman forsakes the companion of her youth, and forgets the covenant of her God. [2:17]

Q? To where do the immoral woman's tracks lead?

A. The immoral woman's tracks lead to those in the grave. [2:18]

Q? In whose ways should the son walk?

A. The son should walk in the way of good people and those who do right. [2:20]

Q? What will happen to those who do right?

A. Those who do right will make a home in the land. [2:21]

Q? What will happen to those who are wicked?

A. Those who are wicked will be cut off from the land. [2:22]

Proverbs 3

Q? What will Wisdom's commands and teachings add to her son?

A. Wisdom's commands and teachings will add years of life and peace to her son. [3:1-2]

Q? Where must covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness be written?

A. Covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness must be written on the tablet of the heart. [3:3]

Q? On what must the son not lean?

A. The son must not lean on (rely on) his own understanding. [3:5]

Q? How must the son not see himself?

A. The son must not see himself as wise. [3:7]

Q? What must the son do with his wealth?

A. The son must honor Yahweh with his wealth. [3:9]

Q? Who does Yahweh discipline?

A. Yahweh disciplines those he loves. [3:12]

Q? Wisdom is better than what?

A. Wisdom is better than silver and gold. [3:14]

Q? What are all the paths of wisdom?

A. All the paths of wisdom are peace. [3:17]

Q? What did Yahweh do by wisdom?

A. By wisdom, Yahweh founded the earth. [3:19]

Q? What will be life to the son's soul?

A. Sound judgment and discernment will be life to the son's soul. [3:21-22]

Q? If the son walks in wisdom, what will happen when he lies down?

A. When he lies down, he will not be afraid and his sleep will be sweet. [3:24]

Q? Of what should the son not be afraid?

A. The son should not be afraid of sudden terror or devastation. [3:25]

Q? What should the son do for those who deserve it?

A. The son should not withhold good from those who deserve it. [3:27]

Q? What should the son not do to his neighbor?

A. The son should not make a plan to harm his neighbor. [3:29]

Q? Who is wicked to Yahweh?

A. The lying person is wicked to Yahweh. [3:32]

Q? What does Yahweh do to the mockers?

A. Yahweh mocks the mockers. [3:34]

Q? What do the wise inherit?

A. The wise inherit honor. [3:35]

Proverbs 4

Q? What should the sons not forget?

A. The sons should not forget their father's instruction. [4:1-2]

Q? How did the father tell the son he would live?

A. The father told the son he would live by keeping the father's commands. [4:4]

Q? What will wisdom do for the son if the son does not abandon her, but loves her?

A. Wisdom will watch over him and keep him safe. [4:6]

Q? What will wisdom do for the son if the son cherishes and embraces her?

A. Wisdom will exalt him, honor him, put a wreath on his head, and give him a beautiful crown. [4:8-9]

Q? Down what kind of path does the father lead the son?

A. The father leads the son down the straight path. [4:11]

Q? On to what must the son hold, for it is his life?

A. The son must hold on to discipline, for it is his life. [4:13]

Q? What path must the son avoid?

A. The son must avoid the path of the wicked. [4:14-15]

Q? What must the wicked do before they can sleep?

A. The wicked must do evil before they can sleep. [4:16]

Q? What is the path of the righteous like?

A. The path of the righteous is like a first light that grows brighter. [4:18]

Q? What is the path of the wicked like?

A. The path of the wicked is like darkness. [4:19]

Q? Why must the son guard his heart with all diligence?

A. The son must guard his heart with all diligence for from it flow the springs of life. [4:23]

Q? What kind of speech and talk must the son put away?

A. The son must put away crooked speech and corrupt talk. [4:24]

Q? Where must the son fix his gaze?

A. The son must fix his gaze straight before him. [4:25]

Proverbs 5

Q? What will the son learn if he listens carefully to understanding?

A. The son will learn about discretion if he listens carefully to understanding. [5:1]

Q? In the end, what is an adulteress like?

A. In the end, an adulteress is bitter as wormwood. [5:4]

Q? To where do an adulteress' feet go?

A. An adulteress' feet go down to death, all the way to Sheol. [5:5]

Q? What path should wise sons take regarding an adulteress and her house?

A. Wise sons should take a path far from an adulteress and not near her house. [5:8]

Q? What will the sons give away if they become involved with an adulteress?

A. If they become involved with an adulteress, the sons will give away their honor and years of their lives. [5:9]

Q? What will happen at the end of their lives if the sons become involved with an adulteress?

A. If they become involved with an adulteress, their flesh and body will waste away. [5:11]

Q? What regret will the sons speak at the end of their lives if they become involved with an adulteress?

A. If they become involved with an adulteress, they will say at the end of their lives that they regret having hated discipline and having rejected correction. [5:12]

Q? From where should the sons drink?

A. The sons should drink water from their own cistern and from their own well. [5:15]

Q? With whom should the sons rejoice?

A. The sons should rejoice with the wife of their youth. [5:18]

Q? With what should the sons be captivated?

A. The sons should be captivated by the love of the wife of their youth. [5:19]

Q? What does Yahweh see?

A. Yahweh sees everything a person does. [5:21]

Q? What will seize and hold tight the wicked person?

A. His sin will seize and hold the wicked person. [5:22]

Proverbs 6

Q? How could the son lay a trap for himself?

A. The son could lay a trap for himself by giving his promise for a loan of someone he does not know. [6:1-2]

Q? What must the son do to save himself?

A. To save himself the son must go to his neighbor and beg to be released from his promise. [6:3]

Q? What should a lazy person study?

A. A lazy person should study the ant. [6:6]

Q? What does the ant do in the summer?

A. In the summer, the ant prepares and stores its food. [6:8]

Q? What will happen to the lazy person who does not rise from his slumber?

A. Poverty will come on the lazy person who does not rise from his slumber. [6:11]

Q? By what does a wicked man live?

A. A wicked man lives by the crookedness of his speech. [6:12]

Q? What will happen to the wicked man because of his evil plots?

A. Disaster will overtake the wicked man in an instant. [6:15]

Q? How many things does Yahweh hate and how many things are disgusting to him?

A. There are six things that Yahweh hates, seven that are disgusting to him. [6:16]

Q? What kind of feet does Yahweh hate?

A. Yahweh hates the feet that quickly run to do evil. [6:18]

Q? What kind of witness does Yahweh hate?

A. Yahweh hates the witness who speaks out lies. [6:19]

Q? What are “the commands” and “the teaching” likened to?

A. The commands are likened to a lamp and the teachings are likened to a light. [6:23]

Q? What can sleeping with the wife of another cost the son?

A. Sleeping with the wife of another can cost the son his very life. [6:26]

Q? Why might people not despise a thief if he steals?

A. People might not despise a thief if he steals in order to satisfy his need when he is hungry. [6:30]

Q? Who does one who commits adultery destroy?

A. One who commits adultery destroys himself. [6:32]

Q? What will the one who takes revenge against adultery not accept?

A. The one who takes revenge against adultery will not accept compensation. [6:35]

Proverbs 7

Q? What must the son keep and store up in order to live?

A. The son must keep and store up his father's commands and instruction. [7:1-2]

Q? From who does wisdom and understanding keep the son?

A. Wisdom and understanding keep the son from the seductive woman. [7:4-5]

Q? What did Solomon see as he looked out through the lattice?

A. Solomon saw many untaught young men and among them a young man who had no sense. [7:6-7]

Q? How was the woman that the young man met dressed?

A. The woman was dressed like a prostitute. [7:10]

Q? What does the woman do at every corner?

A. The woman lies in wait at every corner. [7:12]

Q? What had the woman made earlier in the day?

A. Earlier in the day, the woman had made her peace offering. [7:14]

Q? What had the woman been eagerly seeking?

A. The woman had been eagerly seeking the face of the young man. [7:15]

Q? What does the woman invite the young man to do?

A. The woman invites the young man to go with her to her bed until morning. [7:16-18]

Q? Where is the woman's husband?

A. The woman's husband is away on a long journey. [7:19]

Q? In what way does the young man walk after the woman?

A. The young man walks after the woman like an ox to the slaughter or like a deer caught in a trap. [7:22]

Q? What will the young man's actions cost him?

A. The young man's actions will cost him his life. [7:23]

Q? What wise instruction is the young man given about the woman?

A. The young man is wisely instructed to not go astray into her path. [7:25]

Q? On what road is the woman's house?

A. The woman's house is on the road to Sheol. [7:27]

Proverbs 8

Q? Who calls out beside the entrance to the city?

A. Wisdom calls out beside the entrance to the city. [8:1-3]

Q? To whom does Wisdom call?

A. Wisdom calls to the children of mankind. [8:4]

Q? What kinds of things does Wisdom speak?

A. Wisdom speaks of noble things and of what is trustworthy. [8:6-7]

Q? What is Wisdom more valuable than?

A. Wisdom is more valuable than jewels. [8:11]

Q? What do those who fear Yahweh hate?

A. Those who fear Yahweh hate evil, pride, arrogance, and perverted speech. [8:13]

Q? How do kings and princes who have Wisdom govern?

A. Kings and princes who have Wisdom govern justly. [8:15-16]

Q? What is the fruit of Wisdom better than?

A. The fruit of Wisdom is better than gold and silver. [8:19]

Q? What will Wisdom give to those who love her?

A. Wisdom will give an inheritance to those who love her. [8:21]

Q? When was Wisdom set up?

A. Wisdom was set up from ages long ago, from the first. [8:23]

Q? Where was Wisdom when Yahweh made the earth and heavens?

A. Wisdom was there when Yahweh made the earth and heavens. [8:26-27]

Q? What was Wisdom doing beside Yahweh when Yahweh made everything?

A. Wisdom was beside Yahweh as a master craftsman when Yahweh made everything. [8:30]

Q? What was Wisdom's delight?

A. Wisdom's delight was mankind. [8:31]

Q? What does one who finds Wisdom also find?

A. One who finds Wisdom also finds life and the favor of Yahweh. [8:35]

Q? What does one who fails to find Wisdom also find?

A. One who fails to find Wisdom also finds death. [8:36]

Proverbs 9

Q? What has Wisdom built?

A. Wisdom has built her own house. [9:1]

Q? Who are the invitations that Wisdom sends out directed to?

A. The invitations Wisdom sends out are directed to the untaught, to those who have no sense. [9:3-4]

Q? What does Wisdom say the untaught should leave behind?

A. Wisdom says the untaught should leave behind their untaught ways. [9:6]

Q? What happens to one who reproves a mocker?

A. One who reproves a mocker invites abuse and will be hurt and hated. [9:7-8]

Q? What happens to one who instructs a wise man?

A. One who instructs a wise man is loved. [9:8]

Q? What is the beginning of wisdom?

A. The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of wisdom. [9:10]

Q? What is understanding?

A. The knowledge of the Holy One is understanding. [9:10]

Q? What are the characteristics of a foolish woman?

A. A foolish woman is noisy, untaught, and knows nothing. [9:13]

Q? How can stolen and secret things initially be to the one who gets them?

A. Stolen and secret things can initially be sweet and pleasant to the one who gets them. [9:17]

Q? Who are in the foolish woman's house?

A. The dead in the depths of Sheol are in the woman's house. [9:18]

Proverbs 10

Q? How does a father react to a wise child?

A. A wise child makes his father rejoice. [10:1]

Q? What does Yahweh do to the cravings of the wicked?

A. Yahweh frustrates the cravings of the wicked. [10:3]

Q? What is the result of a lazy hand?

A. A lazy hand causes a person to be poor. [10:4]

Q? What do those who do what is right receive from God?

A. Those who do what is right receive gifts from God. [10:6]

Q? What will happen to a talkative fool?

A. A talkative fool will come to ruin. [10:8]

Q? What does love cover?

A. Love covers over all offenses. [10:12]

Q? What is found on the lips of a discerning person?

A. Wisdom is found on the lips of a discerning person. [10:13]

Q? What happens to the one who rejects reproof?

A. The one who rejects reproof is led astray. [10:17]

Q? What is not lacking when there are many words?

A. Transgression (sin) is not lacking when there are many words. [10:19]

Q? What do the good gifts of Yahweh bring?

A. The good gifts of Yahweh bring wealth. [10:22]

Q? What are the wicked like?

A. The wicked are like a storm that passes by and is no more. [10:25]

Q? What is like smoke in the eyes?

A. The sluggard is like smoke in the eyes to those who send him. [10:26]

Q? What will the years of the wicked be?

A. The years of the wicked will be short. [10:27]

Q? Who does the way of Yahweh protect?

A. The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity. [10:29]

Q? What comes out of the mouth of those doing right?

A. Out of the mouth of those doing right comes the fruit of wisdom. [10:31]

Proverbs 11

Q? What comes before disgrace?

A. Pride comes before disgrace. [11:2]

Q? What is valuable on the day of wrath?

A. Having done right is valuable on the day of wrath. [11:4]

Q? What traps the treacherous (wicked)?

A. The treacherous are trapped by their cravings. [11:6]

Q? What keeps a person away from trouble?

A. Doing what is right keeps a person away from trouble. [11:8]

Q? How does the godless person destroy his neighbor?

A. The godless person destroys his neighbor with his mouth. [11:9]

Q? What does a faithful person do instead of slandering?

A. A faithful person keeps a matter covered instead of slandering. [11:13]

Q? What should a person not do for a stranger because it will bring harm to himself?

A. A person should not guarantee a loan for a stranger. [11:15]

Q? How does a wicked person get his wages?

A. A wicked person lies to get his wages. [11:18]

Q? In whom does Yahweh delight?

A. Yahweh delights in those whose ways are blameless. [11:20]

Q? Of what can everyone be sure?

A. Everyone can be sure that the wicked will not go unpunished. [11:21]

Q? What happens to the one who sows seed?

A. The one who sows seeds will accumulate even more. [11:24]

Q? What does the one who gives water to others receive?

A. The one who gives water to others receives water for himself. [11:25]

Q? What happens to the one who trusts in his riches?

A. The one who trusts in his riches will fall. [11:28]

Q? Who are like a tree of life?

A. Those who do right are like a tree of life. [11:30]

Q? Who will receive what they deserve?

A. Those who do right, and much more the wicked and the sinner will receive what they deserve. [11:31]

Proverbs 12

Q? What does a stupid person hate?

A. A stupid person hates correction. [12:1]

Q? Who does Yahweh condemn?

A. Yahweh condemns a man who makes evil plans. [12:2]

Q? What is a husband's crown?

A. A worthy wife is a husband's crown. [12:4]

Q? What kind of advice do the wicked give?

A. The wicked give deceitful advice. [12:5]

Q? What happens to the house of those who do right?

A. The house of those who do right will stand. [12:7]

Q? Who cares about the needs of his animal?

A. The one who does right cares about the needs of his animal. [12:10]

Q? What traps an evil person?

A. An evil person is trapped by his wicked talk. [12:13]

Q? How does the way of a fool look in his own eyes?

A. The way of a fool is right in his own eyes. [12:15]

Q? What are words spoken rashly like?

A. Words spoken rashly are like the thrusts of a sword. [12:18]

Q? What is in the heart of those who plan to do evil?

A. Deceit is in the heart of those who plan to do evil. [12:20]

Q? What does Yahweh hate?

A. Yahweh hates lying lips. [12:22]

Q? To what will the lazy be subject?

A. The lazy will be subject to forced labor. [12:24]

Q? Where does the way of the wicked lead them?

A. The way of the wicked leads them astray. [12:26]

Q? What do those who walk in the right way find?

A. Those who walk in the right way find life. [12:28]

Proverbs 13

Q? What does a wise son hear?

A. A wise son hears his father's instruction. [13:1]

Q? How does a person protect his life?

A. A person protects his life by guarding his mouth. [13:3]

Q? Who craves, but gets nothing?

A. The lazy craves, but gets nothing. [13:4]

Q? How are some truly wealthy?

A. Some are truly wealthy by giving everything away. [13:7]

Q? What kind of threat will a poor person never receive?

A. A poor person will never receive a ransom threat. [13:8]

Q? What does pride breed?

A. Pride breeds only conflict. [13:10]

Q? How does wealth dwindle away?

A. Wealth dwindles away when there is too much vanity. [13:11]

Q? What is a fountain of life?

A. The teaching of the wise is a fountain of life. [13:14]

Q? Out of what do the wise act in every decision?

A. The wise act out of knowledge in every decision. [13:16]

Q? What will come to him who learns from correction?

A. Honor will come to him who learns from correction. [13:18]

Q? With whom should a person walk in order to be wise?

A. In order to be wise, a person should walk with wise people. [13:20]

Q? For whom is a sinner's wealth stored up?

A. A sinner's wealth is stored up for the one who does right. [13:22]

Q? How does a parent show love for his child?

A. A parent shows love for his child by being careful to discipline him. [13:24]

Q? In what condition is the stomach of the wicked?

A. The stomach of the wicked is always hungry. [13:25]

Proverbs 14

Q? What does a wise woman do?

A. A wise woman builds her house. [14:1]

Q? Who despises Yahweh?

A. The one who is dishonest in his ways despises Yahweh. [14:2]

Q? What does a faithful witness not do?

A. A faithful witness does not lie. [14:5]

Q? What will not be found on the lips of a foolish person?

A. Knowledge will not be found on the lips of a foolish person. [14:7]

Q? What will happen to the house of the wicked?

A. The house of the wicked will be destroyed. [14:11]

Q? What will happen to the tent of the upright?

A. The tent of the upright will flourish. [14:11]

Q? What will someone who is not faithful get?

A. Someone who is not faithful will get what his ways deserve. [14:14]

Q? What does a fool do when he is warned?

A. A fool confidently dismisses a warning. [14:16]

Q? What does someone who is quick to become angry do?

A. Someone who is quick to become angry does foolish things. [14:17]

Q? To whom will the evil bow down?

A. The evil will bow down before those who are good. [14:19]

Q? What do those receive who plan to do good?

A. Those who plan to do good receive covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness. [14:22]

Q? What comes with all hard work?

A. With all hard work comes a profit. [14:23]

Q? What is a fountain of life?

A. The fear of Yahweh is a fountain of life. [14:27]

Q? Who exalts folly?

A. The quick to get angry exalts folly. [14:29]

Q? Who curses his Maker by his actions?

A. The one who oppresses the poor curses his Maker. [14:31]

Q? What exalts a nation?

A. Doing what is right exalts a nation. [14:34]

Proverbs 15

Q? What turns away wrath?

A. A gentle answer turns away wrath. [15:1]

Q? Over whom does Yahweh watch?

A. Yahweh watches over the evil and the good. [15:3]

Q? What is a fool's attitude toward his father's discipline?

A. A fool has contempt for his father's discipline. [15:5]

Q? What kind of sacrifice does Yahweh hate?

A. Yahweh hates the sacrifice of the wicked. [15:8]

Q? What awaits anyone who forsakes the way?

A. Harsh discipline awaits anyone who forsakes the way. [15:10]

Q? What makes the face cheerful?

A. A joyful heart makes the face cheerful. [15:13]

Q? What is better than great treasure with confusion?

A. A little with the fear of Yahweh is better than great treasure with confusion. [15:16]

Q? What kind of person quiets a quarrel?

A. A person who is slow to anger quiets a quarrel. [15:18]

Q? What does a wise son bring to his father?

A. A wise son brings joy to his father. [15:20]

Q? What causes plans to succeed?

A. Numerous advisers cause plans to succeed. [15:22]

Q? What does Yahweh tear down?

A. Yahweh tears down the legacy of the proud. [15:25]

Q? What does the one who does right do before answering?

A. The one who does right ponders before answering. [15:28]

Q? What does the wise person do when someone corrects him?

A. The wise person pays attention when someone corrects him. [15:31]

Q? What comes before honor?

A. Humility comes before honor. [15:33]

Proverbs 16

Q? How do all of a person's ways appear to himself?

A. All of a person's ways are pure in his own eyes. [16:2]

Q? For what has Yahweh made everything?

A. Yahweh has made everything for its purpose. [16:4]

Q? By what is iniquity (sin) forgiven?

A. By covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness iniquity (sin) forgiven. [16:6]

Q? Once a person plans out his way, what does Yahweh do?

A. Once a person plans out his way, Yahweh directs his steps. [16:9]

Q? How is a throne established?

A. A throne is established by doing what is right. [16:12]

Q? What is a messenger of death?

A. A king's wrath is a messenger of death. [16:14]

Q? What should be chosen more than gold and silver?

A. Wisdom and understanding should be chosen more than gold and silver. [16:16]

Q? What comes before a downfall?

A. A haughty spirit comes before a downfall. [16:18]

Q? How does a person find what is good in what they are taught?

A. A person who contemplates what he is taught finds what is good. [16:20]

Q? What does the heart of the wise do for his mouth?

A. The heart of the wise gives insight to his mouth. [16:23]

Q? Even though a way may seem right to a man, where can it lead?

A. Even though a way may seem right to a man, it may lead to death. [16:25]

Q? What separates close friends?

A. Gossip separates close friends. [16:28]

Q? What is the one who winks the eye doing?

A. The one who winks the eye is plotting evil things. [16:30]

Q? What is a crown of glory?

A. Gray hair is a crown of glory. [16:31]

Q? Who is stronger than one who conquers a city?

A. One who rules his spirit is stronger than one who conquers a city. [16:32]

Q? How is the decision of the lots made?

A. The decision of the lots is made by Yahweh. [16:33]

Proverbs 17

Q? What does a wise servant do with a shameful son?

A. A wise servant rules over a shameful son. [17:2]

Q? To whom does a liar pay attention?

A. A liar pays attention to those who say evil things. [17:4]

Q? What happens to those who rejoice at misfortune?

A. Those who rejoice at misfortune will not go unpunished. [17:5]

Q? How is a bribe like a magic stone?

A. A bribe is like a magic stone because the one who gives it succeeds wherever he turns. [17:8]

Q? Even what fails to deeply affect a fool?

A. Even a hundred blows fail to deeply affect a fool. [17:10]

Q? What is worse than meeting a bear robbed of her cubs?

A. Meeting a fool in his foolishness is worse than meeting a bear robbed of her cubs. [17:12]

Q? What should a person do before a dispute breaks out?

A. A person should walk away before a dispute breaks out. [17:14]

Q? What kind of people are an wicked to Yahweh?

A. A person who acquits the wicked or condemns those who do right is wicked to Yahweh. [17:15]

Q? What does a man having no sense do?

A. A man having no sense makes binding promises for his neighbor's debts. [17:18]

Q? What causes a person to fall into calamity?

A. An evil tongue causes a person to fall into calamity. [17:20]

Q? What is good medicine?

A. A cheerful heart is good medicine. [17:22]

Q? What is a foolish son to his father and mother?

A. A foolish son is a grief to his father and bitterness to his mother. [17:25]

Q? How can a fool be considered wise?

A. A fool can be considered wise if he keeps silent. [17:28]

Proverbs 18

Q? In what does a fool not find pleasure?

A. A fool finds no pleasure in understanding. [18:2]

Q? What comes with a wicked person?

A. Contempt, shame, and reproach come with a wicked person. [18:3]

Q? What do a fool's lips bring him?

A. A fool's lips bring him conflict. [18:6]

Q? What are like delicious morsels?

A. The words of a gossip are like delicious morsels. [18:8]

Q? What is a strong tower?

A. The name of Yahweh is a strong tower. [18:10]

Q? What is the attitude of a person before his downfall?

A. Before his downfall, a person's heart is proud. [18:12]

Q? What is something very difficult to bear?

A. A broken spirit is something very difficult to bear. [18:14]

Q? Who seems right at first?

A. The first to plead his case seems right. [18:17]

Q? What is harder to win than a strong city?

A. An offended brother is harder to win than a strong city. [18:19]

Q? What are in the power of the tongue?

A. Death and life are in the power of the tongue. [18:21]

Q? How does a rich person answer others?

A. A rich person answers others harshly. [18:23]

Proverbs 19

Q? What must a person have in addition to desire?

A. A person must have knowledge in addition to desire. [19:2]

Q? What will happen to a person who is a false witness?

A. A false witness will not go unpunished. [19:5]

Q? What happens when a poor man calls out to his friends?

A. When a poor man calls out to his friends, they are gone. [19:7]

Q? What does a person do who loves his own soul?

A. A person who loves his own soul gets wisdom. [19:8]

Q? What does a person with discretion do when offended?

A. A person with discretion overlooks an offense. [19:11]

Q? What is like a constant dripping of water?

A. A quarreling wife is like a constant dripping of water. [19:13]

Q? From where does a prudent wife come?

A. A prudent (wise) wife is from Yahweh. [19:14]

Q? How does a person lend to Yahweh?

A. One who is kind to the poor lends to Yahweh. [19:17]

Q? Who will have to be rescued a second time?

A. A hot-tempered (angry) person will have to be rescued a second time. [19:19]

Q? How can a person become wise by the end of his life?

A. A person can become wise by the end of his life by listening to advice and accepting instruction. [19:20]

Q? What leads people to life?

A. Honor for Yahweh leads people to life. [19:23]

Q? What is a sluggard unable to do?

A. A sluggard is unable to even bring his hand up from the dish to his mouth. [19:24]

Q? What does a child bring who robs his father and chases his mother away?

A. A child who robs his father and chases his mother away brings shame and reproach. [19:26]

Q? What makes justice a mockery?

A. A corrupt witness makes justice a mockery. [19:28]

Proverbs 20

Q? What happens to someone who angers the king?

A. Someone who angers the king forfeits his life. [20:2]

Q? Into what does every fool jump?

A. Every fool jumps into an argument. [20:3]

Q? What kind of person is difficult to find?

A. A faithful person is difficult to find. [20:6]

Q? What is something that no one can say about himself?

A. No one can say about himself, "I have kept my heart clean; I am free from sin." [20:9]

Q? By what is even a youth known?

A. Even a youth is known by his actions. [20:11]

Q? Loving what brings a person to poverty?

A. Loving sleep brings a person to poverty. [20:13]

Q? What are like a precious jewel?

A. Lips of knowledge are like a precious jewel. [20:15]

Q? What does bread gained by deceit taste like afterward?

A. Bread gained by deceit tastes like gravel afterward. [20:17]

Q? What happens to a person who curses his father or mother?

A. A person who curses his father or mother will have his lamp snuffed out. [20:20]

Q? Instead of trying to pay someone back for a wrong, what should a person do?

A. Instead of trying to pay someone back, a person should wait for Yahweh to rescue him. [20:22]

Q? What is it a snare to do rashly?

A. It is a snare to make a vow rashly. [20:25]

Q? What preserves the king?

A. Covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness preserve the king. [20:28]

Q? What is the glory of young men?

A. The glory of young men is their strength. [20:29]

Proverbs 21

Q? What does Yahweh direct wherever he pleases?

A. Yahweh directs a king's heart wherever he pleases. [21:1]

Q? What is more acceptable to Yahweh than sacrifice?

A. To do what is right and just is more acceptable to Yahweh than sacrifice. [21:3]

Q? What happens to someone who acquires riches by a lying tongue?

A. Someone who acquires riches by a lying tongue is killed by that snare. [21:6]

Q? Why are the wicked swept away?

A. The wicked are swept away because they refuse to do what is just. [21:7]

Q? What is not seen in the eyes of the wicked?

A. Kindness is not seen in the eyes of the wicked. [21:10]

Q? Who learns wisdom when a mocker is punished?

A. The untaught learn wisdom when a mocker is punished. [21:11]

Q? What does a secret gift accomplish?

A. A secret gift appeases anger. [21:14]

Q? Where does one who wanders from understanding rest?

A. One who wanders from understanding rests in the assembly of the dead. [21:16]

Q? Where is it better to live than with a complaining wife?

A. It is better to live in the desert than with a complaining wife. [21:19]

Q? What is a wise man able to bring down?

A. A wise man is able to bring down the stronghold of the city of the mighty. [21:22]

Q? What is the name for a proud and haughty person?

A. A proud and haughty person is called a “mocker.” [21:24]

Q? What kind of sacrifice is detestable?

A. The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable. [21:27]

Q? What cannot stand against Yahweh?

A. No wisdom, understanding, or advice can stand against Yahweh. [21:30]

Q? Who gives the victory in the day of battle?

A. Yahweh gives the victory in the day of battle. [21:31]

Proverbs 22

Q? What do the rich and poor have in common?

A. Yahweh is the maker of both the rich and poor. [22:2]

Q? For what is the reward riches, honor, and life?

A. For humility and fear of Yahweh the reward is riches, honor, and life. [22:4]

Q? If a child is taught the way he should go, what will he not do when he grows old?

A. If a child is taught the way he should go, he will not turn away from that instruction when he grows old. [22:6]

Q? What is the relationship between the one who borrows and the one who lends?

A. The one who borrows is a slave to the one who lends. [22:7]

Q? What will cease if the mocker is driven away?

A. Strife, disputes, and insults will cease if the mocker is driven away. [22:10]

Q? What excuse does a lazy person use?

A. A lazy person says there is a lion in the streets as an excuse. [22:13]

Q? What do those who fall for an adulteress stir up?

A. Those who fall for an adulteress stir up Yahweh's anger against them. [22:14]

Q? What drives foolishness from a child?

A. The rod of discipline drives foolishness from a child. [22:15]

Q? In whom should a person trust?

A. A person should trust in Yahweh. [22:19]

Q? What must not be done to the poor and needy?

A. The poor and needy must not be robbed or crushed. [22:22]

Q? What will Yahweh do to those who rob the poor?

A. Yahweh will rob the life of those who rob the poor. [22:23]

Q? Why must a person not make a friend of someone ruled by anger?

A. A person must not make a friend of someone ruled by anger because the person will learn his ways and be entangled in a snare. [22:25]

Q? What could a person lose if they cannot pay their debts?

A. A person could lose their bed if they cannot pay their debts. [22:27]

Q? What must not be removed?

A. The ancient boundary stone set by the fathers must not be removed. [22:28]

Proverbs 23

Q? When should a person observe carefully what is before him?

A. When a person sits to eat with a ruler, he should carefully observe what is before him. [23:1]

Q? A wise person knows when to stop doing what?

A. A wise person knows when to stop working too hard to try to become rich. [23:4]

Q? What happens when a person lights his eyes upon money?

A. When a person lights his eyes upon money, it is gone. [23:5]

Q? Why is the heart of an evil man not with you when he invites you to eat and drink?

A. The heart of an evil man is not with you because he counts the price of the food. [23:7]

Q? How does a fool react to wise words?

A. A fool despises wise words. [23:9]

Q? Who will plead the cause of orphans?

A. Their strong Redeemer will plead the cause of orphans. [23:11]

Q? What should not be withheld from a child?

A. Discipline should not be withheld from a child. [23:13]

Q? What makes the inmost being of a father rejoice?

A. When his son speaks what is right, the inmost being of a father rejoices. [23:16]

Q? With whom should a person not associate?

A. A person should not associate with drunkards or gluttonous eaters. [23:20]

Q? What should a person buy?

A. A person should buy truth, wisdom, discipline, and understanding. [23:23]

Q? What should a son give to his father?

A. A son should give his father his heart. [23:26]

Q? What does another's man's wife increase among humanity?

A. Another man's wife increases the number of traitors among humanity. [23:28]

Q? Who has woe and fights?

A. The one who lingers over wine has woe and fights. [23:29-30]

Q? What do the eyes of one who looks at the wine when it is red see?

A. One who looks at the wine when it is red sees strange things. [23:33]

Q? What does the drunkard say he will do when he wakes up?

A. The drunkard says he will seek another drink when he wakes up. [23:35]

Proverbs 24

Q? Of whom should a person not be envious?

A. A person should not be envious of those who are evil. [24:1]

Q? By what is a house established?

A. By understanding a house is established. [24:3]

Q? What is better than a person who is strong?

A. A person who has knowledge is better than a person who is strong. [24:5]

Q? What do people call a person who plans to do evil?

A. People call a person who plans to do evil a master of schemes. [24:8]

Q? How is a person's strength shown to be small?

A. When a person shows his cowardice in the day of trouble, he shows his strength to be small. [24:10]

Q? What does God give each person?

A. God gives each person what he deserves. [24:12]

Q? What do the wicked lie in wait to do?

A. The wicked lie in wait to attack the house of those who do right. [24:15]

Q? What will Yahweh do if a person celebrates when his enemy falls?

A. Yahweh will see and disapprove, and turn away his wrath from the enemy. [24:17-18]

Q? What happens to the lamp of the wicked?

A. The lamp of the wicked goes out. [24:20]

Q? With whom should a person not associate?

A. A person should not associate with those who rebel against the king. [24:21]

Q? What will happen to the one who says to the guilty, "You are in the right."?

A. That person will be cursed by peoples and hated by nations. [24:24]

Q? What is like a kiss on the lips?

A. An honest answer is like a kiss on the lips. [24:26]

Q? What should a person not say about his neighbor?

A. A person should not say that he will pay back his neighbor for what he has done. [24:29]

Q? What did the field of the lazy man look like?

A. In the lazy man's field, the thorns grew up, the ground had nettles, and the wall was broken down. [24:30-31]

Q? What comes upon the lazy man like a robber?

A. Poverty comes upon the lazy man like a robber. [24:34]

Proverbs 25

Q? Who was the author of this proverb?

A. King Solomon was the author of this proverb. [25:1]

Q? What is it the glory of God to do?

A. It is the glory of God to conceal a matter. [25:2]

Q? How is the throne of the king established?

A. By removing the wicked from the presence of the king, the throne of the king is established. [25:5]

Q? What is better than standing in the place designated for the great?

A. Waiting for the king to say to you, "Come up here," is better than standing in the place designated for the great. [25:7]

Q? If you have witnessed something concerning your neighbor, why should you not be quick to bring it to trial?

A. You should not be quick to bring it to trial because your neighbor may put you to shame. [25:7-8]

Q? What does a faithful messenger do for his masters?

A. A faithful messenger refreshes the soul of his masters. [25:13]

Q? With what can a ruler be persuaded?

A. With patience a ruler can be persuaded. [25:15]

Q? How could your neighbor become tired of you?

A. Your neighbor could become tired of you if you set your foot in his house too often. [25:17]

Q? What is like a foot that slips?

A. An unfaithful man in whom you trust is like a foot that slips. [25:19]

Q? What should you do for your enemy?

A. You should give your enemy food to eat and water to drink. [25:21]

Q? What will Yahweh do for the one who gives his enemy food and drink?

A. Yahweh will reward the one who gives his enemy food and drink. [25:22]

Proverbs 26

Q? What does not alight on a person?

A. An undeserved curse does not alight on a person. [26:2]

Q? What will a person become if he joins in the folly of a fool?

A. A person who joins in the folly of a fool will become a fool. [26:4]

Q? What is like cutting off one's own feet?

A. Sending a message by the hand of a fool is like cutting off one's own feet. [26:6]

Q? One who hires a fool is like what?

A. One who hires a fool is like an archer who wounds everybody. [26:10]

Q? Why is a fool like a dog who returns to his vomit?

A. A fool is like a dog who returns to his vomit because a fool repeats his folly. [26:11]

Q? What is a door turning on its hinges like?

A. A door turning on its hinges is like a lazy person upon his bed. [26:14]

Q? How does a lazy person appear in his own eyes?

A. A lazy person appears wiser than seven men with discernment in his own eyes. [26:16]

Q? What does a person say after deceiving his neighbor?

A. A person says, "Was I not telling a joke?" after deceiving his neighbor. [26:19]

Q? What does a quarrelsome person kindle?

A. A quarrelsome person kindles strife. [26:21]

Q? How does a person disguise the fact that he hates others?

A. A person who hates others disguises it with his lips. [26:24]

Q? What happens to the person who digs a pit?

A. The person who digs a pit will fall into it. [26:27]

Q? What does a flattering mouth bring about?

A. A flattering mouth brings about ruin. [26:28]

Proverbs 27

Q? Why should a person not boast about tomorrow?

A. A person should not boast about tomorrow because he does not know what a day may bring. [27:1]

Q? What is heavier than the weight of sand?

A. The provocation of a fool is heavier than the weight of sand. [27:3]

Q? What may an enemy do to deceive you?

A. An enemy may kiss you profusely to deceive you. [27:6]

Q? To whom is every bitter thing sweet?

A. To the hungry person, every bitter thing is sweet. [27:7]

Q? What is better than a brother who is far away?

A. A neighbor is better than a brother who is far away. [27:10]

Q? What does a prudent man do when he sees trouble?

A. A prudent man hides himself when he sees trouble. [27:12]

Q? When is a blessing given with a loud voice considered to be a curse?

A. Early in the morning, a blessing given with a loud voice is considered to be a curse. [27:14]

Q? What is like restraining the wind?

A. Restraining a quarreling wife is like restraining the wind. [27:15-16]

Q? What is like iron which sharpens iron?

A. A man who sharpens his friend is like iron which sharpens iron. [27:17]

Q? What are never satisfied, just like Abaddon?

A. A man's eyes are never satisfied, just like Abaddon. [27:20]

Q? Even what will not remove foolishness from a fool?

A. Even crushing a fool will not remove foolishness from a fool. [27:22]

Q? How long does wealth last?

A. Wealth does not last forever. [27:24]

Q? What do lambs provide for a household?

A. Lambs provide clothing for a household. [27:26]

Proverbs 28

Q? Who runs away even when no one is chasing them?

A. The wicked run away even when no one is chasing them. [28:1]

Q? Who are praised by those who forsake the law?

A. The wicked are praised by those who forsake the law. [28:4]

Q? Which is more important, money or integrity?

A. Integrity is more important than money. [28:6]

Q? What happens to the wealth of someone who becomes rich by charging too much interest?

A. His wealth is given to another who will have pity on the poor. [28:8]

Q? Who will fall into his own pit?

A. A person who misleads the upright into an evil way will fall into his own pit. [28:10]

Q? How do the people react when the wicked arise?

A. The people hide themselves when the wicked arise. [28:12]

Q? How can a sinner receive mercy?

A. A sinner who confesses and forsakes his sin will receive mercy. [28:13]

Q? How can a ruler's days be prolonged?

A. A ruler can prolong his days if he hates dishonesty. [28:16]

Q? What can make a person a fugitive until death?

A. Shedding someone's blood can make a person a fugitive until death. [28:17]

Q? How can a person have plenty of poverty?

A. If a person follows worthless pursuits, he will have plenty of poverty. [28:19]

Q? How does a stingy man pursue riches?

A. A stingy man hurries after riches. [28:22]

Q? What is the result of trusting in Yahweh?

A. The one who trusts in Yahweh will prosper. [28:25]

Q? What will a person who closes his eyes to the poor receive?

A. A person who closes his eyes to the poor will receive many curses. [28:27]

Proverbs 29

Q? What happens to a person who stiffens his neck after many rebukes?

A. A person who stiffens his neck after many rebukes will be broken beyond healing. [29:1]

Q? What destroys a person's wealth?

A. Keeping company with prostitutes destroys a person's wealth. [29:3]

Q? What causes an evil person to be caught in a trap?

A. His own sin causes an evil person to be caught in a trap. [29:6]

Q? What kind of person turns away wrath?

A. A wise person turns away wrath. [29:8]

Q? Who do the bloodthirsty seek to kill?

A. The bloodthirsty seek to kill the upright. [29:10]

Q? What does a wise man do with his anger?

A. A wise man holds back his anger and calms himself down. [29:11]

Q? How can a king establish his throne forever?

A. A king can establish his throne forever by judging the poor by the truth. [29:14]

Q? What is the result of disciplining a child?

A. A disciplined child will give the parents rest. [29:17]

Q? If the people do not keep the law, what do they do?

A. If the people do not keep the law, they run wild. [29:18]

Q? What is worse than being a fool?

A. Being a man who is hasty in his words is worse than being a fool. [29:20]

Q? What kind of person is given honor?

A. A person with a humble spirit is given honor. [29:23]

Q? What does Yahweh do for the one who trusts in him?

A. Yahweh protects the one who trusts in him. [29:25]

Q? Who is an abomination to those who do right?

A. An unjust man is an abomination to those who do right. [29:27]

Proverbs 30

Q? Whose sayings are written in this proverb?

A. The sayings of Agur the son of Jakeh are written in this proverb. [30:1]

Q? What has the author not learned?

A. The author has not learned wisdom. [30:3]

Q? What will happen to someone who adds to God's words?

A. God will rebuke someone who adds to God's words. [30:6]

Q? How wealthy does the author wish to be?

A. The author wishes to have neither poverty nor riches. [30:8]

Q? What is the author afraid he would do if he were rich?

A. The author is afraid he would deny Yahweh if he were rich. [30:9]

Q? Who is not washed of their filth?

A. A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother is not washed of their filth. [30:11-12]

Q? What does the haughty generation do to the poor?

A. The haughty generation devours the poor. [30:14]

Q? What are four things that never say “enough”?

A. Four things that never say “enough” are sheol, the barren womb, land thirsty for water, and fire. [30:15-16]

Q? What is the second thing that the author does not understand because it is too wonderful?

A. The author does not understand the way of a snake on a rock. [30:19]

Q? What is the first thing that the author says causes the earth to tremble?

A. The first thing that causes the earth to tremble is a slave when he becomes king. [30:22]

Q? What does the author find amazing about locusts?

A. The author finds locusts amazing because they have no king, but all of them march in rank. [30:27]

Q? What does not turn away from anything?

A. The lion does not turn away from anything. [30:30]

Q? What should a person do who has been devising evil?

A. A person who has been devising evil should put his hand over his mouth. [30:32]

Q? What does anger produce?

A. Anger produces conflict. [30:33]

Proverbs 31

Q? Who wrote this proverb?

A. King Lemuel wrote this proverb. [31:1]

Q? To whom should the king not give his ways?

A. He should not give his ways to those who destroy kings. [31:3]

Q? What do rulers forget when they have strong drink?

A. Rulers forget what has been decreed when they have strong drink. [31:5]

Q? What do those in bitter distress forget when they have strong drink?

A. Those in bitter distress forget their trouble when they have strong drink. [31:7]

Q? Whose cause should the king plead?

A. The king should please the cause of the poor and needy. [31:9]

Q? What is more valuable than jewels?

A. A capable wife is more valuable than jewels. [31:10]

Q? What does the capable wife do all the days of her life?

A. She does good for her husband and not evil all the days of her life. [31:12]

Q? When does the capable wife arise?

A. She arises while it is night. [31:15]

Q? With what does the capable wife dress herself?

A. She dresses herself with strength. [31:17]

Q? To whom does the capable wife reach out?

A. She reaches out to the poor and needy. [31:20]

Q? Where does the capable wife's husband sit?

A. Her husband sits with the elders at the gates. [31:23]

Q? What is on the capable wife's tongue?

A. The law of kindness is on the capable wife's tongue. [31:26]

Q? What do the children of the capable wife call her?

A. Her children call her blessed. [31:28]

Q? What kind of woman will be praised?

A. A woman who fears Yahweh will be praised. [31:30]

translationWords

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include: lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by, “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “is an abomination to” could include: “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as, “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [Daniel](#), [desecrate](#), [desolate](#), [desolation](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that involves a married person having sexual relations with someone who is not his spouse. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or the person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as, “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [covenant](#), [fornication](#), [sexual immorality](#), , [have sex with](#), [have relations with](#), [sleep with](#), [lovemaking](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [13-06]”Do not commit **adultery**.”
- [28-02] Do not commit **adultery**.
- [34-07]”The religious leader prayed like this, “Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.””

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like, “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as, “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.” physical
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as, “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See: [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#), [suffering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

age**Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include, “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as, “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase, “at a very old age” could be translated as, “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase, “this present evil age” means, “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this such as, “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

arrogant**Definition:**

The term “arrogant” means to be proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- To be arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: [acknowledge](#), [boast](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

astray, go astray, led astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as, “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as, “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

atonement, atone**Definition:**

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserved because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include, “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

barren**Definition:**

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

Waiting

beg, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-04]** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **[29-08]** ”The king called the servant and said, ”You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **[32-07]** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **[32-10]** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **[35-11]** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **[44-01]** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

believe, believe in, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as, “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-04] Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- [04-08] Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- [11-06] But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- [37-05] Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”

biblical time: day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: [day of the Lord](#), [day of Yahweh](#), [judgment day](#), [last day](#), [last days](#), [latter days](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

blameless

Definition:

The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-07]** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **[01-15]** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **[01-16]** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **[04-04]** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **[04-07]** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **[07-03]** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bold, boldly, boldness

Definition:

These terms all refer to having courage and confidence to speak the truth and do the right thing even when it is difficult or dangerous.

- A “bold” person is not afraid to say and do what is good and right, including defending people who are being mistreated. This could be translated as “courageous” or “fearless.”
- In the New Testament, the disciples continued to “boldly” preach about Christ in public places, in spite of the danger of being put in jail or killed. This could be translated as “confidently” or “with strong courage” or “courageously.”
- The “boldness” of these early disciples in speaking the good news of Christ’s redeeming death on the cross resulted in the gospel being spread throughout Israel and nearby countries and finally, to the rest of the world. “Boldness” could also be translated as “confident courage.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

breathe, breath

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as, “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include, “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as, “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as, “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as, “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bribe**Definition:**

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray](#), [prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

cast out, drive out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#), [casting lots](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

clean, cleanse

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clothe, clothed**Definition:**

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

companion

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with.”

Bible References:

Waiting

compassion, compassionate**Definition:**

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

Waiting

condemn, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [believer](#), [bold](#), [boldly](#), [boldness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [hope](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- Job 04:4-6
- Philippians 01:25-27
- [Proverbs 14:26-27](#)
- Romans 05:1-2

contempt, contemptible

Facts:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term corruption could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor**Definition:**

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cow, calf, bull, cattle**Definition:**

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something, or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase, “Let all creation rejoice” means, “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as, “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as, “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as, “God, who created you.”

(See: [God](#), [good news](#), [gospel](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

Waiting

creature**Definition:**

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as, “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cry, cry out

Definition:

The terms “cry” or cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [plead](#), [pleading](#), [plea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

curse, cursed

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- [02-11] “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- [04-04] “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- [39-07] Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- [50-16] Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression, “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term, “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms, “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as, “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as, “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated by “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See: [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish review}}

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

delight

Definition:

A “delight” is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “take joy in” or “be happy about” it.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- If a person’s delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
- The expression, “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means, “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as, “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as, “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

detestable, detest

Facts:

The term “detestable” describes something that should be disliked and rejected. To “detest” something means to strongly dislike it.

- Often the Bible talks about detesting evil. This means to hate evil and reject it.
- God used the word “detestable” to describe the evil practices of those who worshiped false gods.
- The Israelites were commanded to “detest” the sinful, immoral acts that some of the neighboring people groups practiced.
- God called all wrong sexual acts “detestable.”
- Divination, sorcery, and child sacrifice were all “detestable” to God.
- The term “detest” could be translated as, “strongly reject” or “hate” or “regard as very evil.”
- The term “detestable” could also be translated as “horribly evil” or “disgusting” or “deserving rejection.”
- When applied to the righteous being “detestable to” the wicked, this could be translated as “considered very undesirable to” or “distasteful to” or “rejected by.”
- God told the Israelites to “detest” certain kinds of animals that God had declared to be “unclean” and not suitable for food. This could also be translated as “strongly dislike” or “reject” or “regard as unacceptable.”

(See also: [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

devastate, devastation**Definition:**

The term “devastated” or “devastation” refers to having one’s property or land ruined or destroyed. It also often includes destroying or capturing the people living on that land.

- This refers to a very severe and complete destruction.
- For example, the city of Sodom was devastated by God as punishment for the sins of the people living there.
- The term “devastation” can also include causing great emotional grief resulting from the punishment or destruction.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “devastate” could be translated as “completely destroy” or “completely ruin.”
- Depending on the context, “devastation” could be translated as “complete destruction” or “total ruin” or “overwhelming grief” or “disaster.”

Bible References:

Waiting

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

discern, discernment

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as, “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

discipline, self-discipline

Definition:

The term “discipline” refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

- Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
- Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
- Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God’s will.
- Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one’s own life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discipline” could be translated as, “train and instruct” or “morally guide” or “punish for wrongdoing.”
- The noun, “discipline” could be translated as “moral training” or “punishment” or “moral correction” or “moral guidance and instruction.”

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include, “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to envy someone to the point of strongly desiring to have something that person has.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even, someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exalt, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means, “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include, “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14-12] Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15-13] The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17-09] David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- [18-04] God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon’s death.
- [35-12]”The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’
- [49-17] But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- [50-04] If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:

The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God, which is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as, “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [testify](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

family

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” refers to doing something to benefit someone who is regarded positively. Something that is “favorable” is positive, approving, or beneficial.

- The term “favoritism” means to act favorably toward some people but not others. Often favoritism is The term “favoritism” means acting favorably toward some people, but not others. shown toward people who are rich or are considered
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” means that someone is approved of by someone else.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as, “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

“find favor” “increased in favor” “won the favor of”

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

Waiting

fire**Definition:**

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as, “cause you to experience suffering in order to purify you.”

(See also: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “first fruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “first fruits” of all believers in him who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “first fruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd**Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sexual immorality

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterer](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [harlot](#), [unfaithful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

forsake, forsaken, forsook**Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, it means they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, it means he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used as past tense as in “he has forsaken you” or to refer to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- The project language may find it more clear to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text is talking about forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

Waiting

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “founded” means to be built on or based on something. A foundation is the base on which something is built.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fountain, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions and thoughts. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces,” that is, children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural
- , “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression, “fruit of the land” could also be translated as, “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as, “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression, “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a women gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elisabeth says to Mary, “blessed is the fruit of your womb” she means, “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression, “fruit of the vine” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”

- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as, “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression, “fruitful labor” could be translated as, “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in you.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#)[Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

furnace**Facts:**

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as, “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - A sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from the herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of their tendency to wander away from the one taking care of them.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second live goat and send it into the desert as a symbol of the animal bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [herd](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “the godly” could be translated as, “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: **Nominal Adjectives**)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase, “in a godly manner” could be translated as, “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include, “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also **honor, to honor, obey, obedient, obedience, righteous, righteousness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness, unrighteous, unrighteousness**)

Bible References:

Waiting

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

gossip

Definition:

The term “gossip” refers to talking to people about someone else’s personal affairs, usually in a negative and unproductive way. Often what is talked about has not been confirmed as true.

- The Bible says that spreading negative information about people is wrong. Gossip and slander are examples of this kind of negative speech.
- Gossip is harmful to the person being spoken about because it often hurts someone’s relationships with other people.

(See also: [slander](#), [slanderer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

governor, govern, proconsul, government**Definition:**

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. The word “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage people.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” is made up of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for king or emperor, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [province](#), [provincial](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

grace, gracious**Definition:**

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include, “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression, “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as, “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

Waiting

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- The heads of grain are the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

guilt offering

Definition:

The guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required the Israelites to make if they had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespecting God or damaging another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and paying a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

hades, sheol

Definition:

The terms “hades” and “sheol” are used in the Bible to refer to death and the place where the souls of people go when they die. Their meanings are similar.

- The Hebrew term “sheol” is often used in the Old Testament to refer generally to the place of death.
- In the New Testament, the Greek term “hades” refers to a place for the souls of people who rebelled against God. These souls are referred to as going “down” to hades. This is sometimes contrasted to going “up” to heaven, where the souls of people who believe in Jesus live.
- The term “hades” is coupled with the term “death” in the book of Revelation. In the end times, both death and hades will be thrown into the Lake of Fire, which is hell.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term “sheol” could be translated as “place of the dead” or “place for dead souls.” Some translations translate this as “the pit” or “death,” depending on the context.
- The New Testament term “hades” could also be translated as “place for unbelieving dead souls” or “place of torment for the dead” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
- Some translations keep the word “sheol” or “hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to the term to explain it, for example, “sheol, place where dead people are” or “hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#), [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

haughty

Definition:

The term “haughty” means to be prideful or arrogant. It refers to someone who thinks too highly of himself.

- Often this term describes the pride of a person who persists in sinning against God.
- Usually a person who is haughty boasts about himself.
- A haughty person is foolish, not wise.
- This term could also be translated as “proud” or “arrogant” or “self-centered.”
- The figurative expression “haughty eyes” could also be translated as, “proud way of looking” or “looking at others as less important” or “proud person who looks down on others.”

(See also: [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases such as leprosy do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19-14] One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- [21-10] He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- [26-06] Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- [26-08] They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- [32-14] She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- [44-03] Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- [49-02]] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Holy One

Definition:

The term “Holy One” is a title in the Bible that almost always refers to God.

- In the Old Testament, this title often occurs in the phrase “Holy One of Israel.”
- In the New Testament, Jesus is also referred to as the “Holy One.”
- The term “holy one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to an angel.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal term is, “the Holy” (with “One” being implied.) Many languages (like English) will translate this with the implied noun included (such as “One” or “God”).
- This term could also be translated as, “God, who is holy” or “the Set Apart One.”
- The phrase, “the Holy One of Israel” could be translated as, “the Holy God whom Israel worships” or “Holy One who rules Israel.”
- It is best to translate this term using the same word or phrase that is used to translate “holy.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

Honey is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever the bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [mule](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

humble, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand our weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- If a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as, “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[34-10]** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

humiliate, humiliation

Facts:

The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced. This is usually done publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”

- When God humbles someone it means that he causes a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different than humiliating someone which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include, “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”

(See also: [disgrace](#), [disgraceful](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [transgress](#), [transgression](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as, “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression, “innocent blood” could be translated as, “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as, “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as, “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not accepting the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said, “I have betrayed innocent blood” he was saying, “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus, “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as, “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08-06] After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.

- **[40-04]** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **[40-08]** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God."
-

instruct, instruction

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [teach](#), [teaching](#), [teacher](#), [taught](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

integrity

Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as, “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: [Daniel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include, “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as, “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#), [covet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: **rejoice**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

kiss**Definition:**

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression "to kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

Waiting

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to the young of a sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “the young of a sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [05-07] As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- [11-02] God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- [24-06] The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- [45-08] He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.

- **[48-08]** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **[48-09]** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term, “law of Moses” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law, principle](#) , [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light,” and there is no darkness in him.
- Light and darkness are completely opposite. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he is “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world, by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression, “the likeness of” could be translated as, “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression, “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as, “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [perish](#), [perishing](#), [perishable](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a kind of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies in a swarm which is very destructive, eating all vegetation in its path.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts are referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: [Elizabeth](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” which some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, it involves actions that show that someone is thinking of what will cause the other person to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- It can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

4. In the figurative expression, “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God’s choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn’t given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”

- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [save](#), [safe](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-02] The law expert replied that God’s law says, ”**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33-08]”The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36-05] As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, ”This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39-10]”Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47-01] She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48-01] When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49-03] He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49-04] He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49-07] Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49-09] But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49-13] God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

lust

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually refers to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term is used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could also be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or “to strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase “to lust after” could also be translated as “to wrongly desire” or “to think immorally about” or “to immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mock, ridicule, scoff at

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-12] Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- [39-05] The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- [39-12] The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- [40-04] Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- [40-05] The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

noble, nobleman

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a higher political or social class.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer” or “man of noble birth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen

Definition:

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [endurance](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

peace offering

Facts:

A “peace offering” was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the “thanksgiving offering” or “fellowship offering.”

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal’s blood on the altar, and burning the animal’s fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fellowship](#), [fellowship offering](#), [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-02]** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **[21-02]** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **[42-08]** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **[42-10]** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **[48-11]** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **[50-03]** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

perish, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

perverse, perversely, pervert

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include, “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “perverse speech” could be translated as, “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pig, swine, pork

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

Waiting

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- “To pledge” could be translate as, “to formally commit to” or “to strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prince, princess

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as, “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See: [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profane

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb “to profane” could be translated as “to treat as unholy” or “to be irreverent toward” or “to dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [be defiled](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

profit, profitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

refers to something good that is gained. Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

Waiting

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [sexual immorality](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression, “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as, “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as, “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as, “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression, “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as, “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-02]** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **[34-10]** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include, “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

prudent

Facts:

The term “prudent” describes a person who thinks carefully about his actions and makes wise decisions.

- Often “prudence” refers to the ability to make wise decisions about practical, physical matters, such as in managing money or property.
- Although “prudence” and “wisdom” are similar in meaning, often “wisdom” is more general and focuses on spiritual or moral matters.
- Depending on the context, “prudent” could also be translated as, “shrewd” or “careful” or “wise.”

(See also: [shrewd](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ephod](#), [Philippi](#), [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rage**Facts:**

Rage is excessive anger which is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit acts and say things which are destructive.
- The term “to rage” can also refer to powerful movements, such as a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- The “nations rage” refers to ungodly people who disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#), [self-control](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

raise, rise, risen, arise, arose**Definition:****raise, raise up**

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase, “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase, “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose” and “arose” are used for expressing past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as, “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen”!

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” can be translated as “to lift up” or “to make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as, “to cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead,” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as, “provide” or “appoint” or “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [exalt](#), [exaltation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-14] The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- [41-05] "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- [43-07] "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- [44-05] "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- [44-08] Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- [48-04] This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- [49-02] He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- [49-12] You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

ransom**Definition:**

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, “to ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to ransom” could also be translated as, “to pay to release” or “to pay a price to free” or “to buy back” someone.
- The phrase “to pay a ransom” could be translated as “to pay the price (of freedom)” or “to pay the penalty (to free people)” or “to make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms “ransom” and “redemption” have the same meaning but are sometimes used slightly differently in English. Other languages may have only one term they will use to translate this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reap, reaper**Definition:**

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”). (See link to “harvest” page for more translation suggestions.)

(See also: [good news](#), [gospel](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rebuke

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and to treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” can be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression, “you will receive power” could be translated as, “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could also be translated as, “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “God healed him so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [save](#), [safe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21-13] The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- [45-05] As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- [49-06] He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- [49-10] When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- [49-13] God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

reconcile, reconciliation

Definition:

The terms “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “making peace” between people who were formerly enemies with each other.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could also be translated as, “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

redeem, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

The terms “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buying back something that was previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full payment for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words, “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may only use one term to translate both these terms.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), [ransom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

refuge, shelter

Definition:

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “shelter” refers to a physical structure that protects from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term, “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to certain cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could run to for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because they were in his house.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as, “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “ ”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or “take shelter” or “take refuge” could be translated as, “find a place of safety” or “put oneself in a protected place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reproach

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” can also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as, “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [rebuke](#), [shame](#), [shameful](#), [ashamed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rest**Definition:**

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reverence**Definition:**

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because of doing something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement, “the reward of the wicked.” In this context, “reward” refers to punishment or negative consequences from sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#), [punishment](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [03-02] But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- [04-08] God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- [17-02] David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- [23-01] Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- [50-10] Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that is used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms, “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod is also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruin, ruins**Definition:**

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

run, running

Definition:

Literally the term “run” refers to moving very quickly on foot, usually at a much faster pace than walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- “run in such a way as to win the prize” – refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands.
- “run after other gods” – means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- “I run to you to hide me” – means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

Other figurative meanings of “run”:

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.”
- The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated as “its border is next to” or “it borders.”
- Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.”
- The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [turn](#), [turn away](#), [turn back](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- [05-06] "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- [05-09] God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- [17-06] David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- [48-06] Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- [48-08] But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- [49-11] Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

save, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” it means that through Jesus’ death on the cross, God has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include, “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression, “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-08] Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- [11-02] God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- [12-05] Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- [12-13] The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- [16-17] This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- [44-08] “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- [47-11] The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”

- [49-12] Good works cannot **save** you.
- [49-13] God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

seek, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seize**Definition:**

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

self-control

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and which moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous, but they deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before that they had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Eden](#), [garden of Eden](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [offspring](#), [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- [19-10] Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- [29-03] "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- [35-06] "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- [47-04] The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- [50-04] Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- To “sleep with” someone is a common way of referring to having sexual relations. The past tense is, “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book, “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This is related to the expression, “make love to.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions of this term in different contexts, depending on whether it is talking about a husband and wife, or whether it is about some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include, “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as, “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See: [sexual immorality](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shield

Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

slander, slanderer

Definition:

To slander means to say negative, defaming things about another person.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- Some of the words translated as “slander” mean: “speak against” or “spread an evil report” or “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

slaughter

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it.

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter where 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies. because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression, “the slaughter was very great” could also be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include, “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [slay](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snare, trap

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. In the Bible, these terms are also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” has a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together in order to catch an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- When used figuratively, being caught in a trap or snare is compared to how a person can suddenly become ensnared in a sin in the same way that an animal gets captured by a physical snare or trap.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), [freedom](#), [liberty](#), , [prey](#), [to prey on](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

soul

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means, “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as, “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for translating the terms “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase, “dividing soul and spirit” could mean, “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively as in, “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result. And if a person does good to others, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term “sow” could also be translated as “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include, “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words depending on what is being planted.
- The expression, “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as, “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [reap](#), [reaper](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning**Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strife**Definition:**

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements and hurt feelings between people.
- Strife sometimes implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

(See also: [angry](#), [anger](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strong drink**Definition:**

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone a process of fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine is the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as, “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Nazirite](#), [Nazirite vow](#), [vow](#), [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [stumbling block](#), [stone of stumbling](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

subject, be subject to, in subjection to

Facts:

The term “subject” refers to being under the authority of someone. The phrase “be subject to” is a command that means “obey” or “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit, in submission](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means to “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as, “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-13] God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- [38-12] Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- [42-03] He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- [42-07] He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- [44-05] “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- [46-04] God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

teach, teaching, teacher, taught**Definition:**

The terms “teach” and “teaching” refer to telling other people information they didn’t know before. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [teacher](#), [Teacher](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God. It does not refer to a school teacher.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- [28-01] One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- [37-02] After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- [38-14] Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- [49-03] Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

terror, terrify**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” (or “terrors”) is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as, “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include, “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

test

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to keep disobeying him, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thief, thieves, robber**Facts:**

The terms “thief” and “thieves” refer in general to people who steal money or property from other people. The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him, stealing from them the good things God has planned for them to experience.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thorn, thistle**Facts:**

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [to crown](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

threshold

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as, “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [gate bar](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

time

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the word for a tomb or a grave can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include, “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [buried](#), [burial](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[32-04]** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **[37-06]** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **[37-07]** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **[40-09]** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **[41-04]** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **[41-05]** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression, “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongues” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as, “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as, “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as, “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as, “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [joy](#), [joyful](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The terms “transgress” and “transgression” refer to breaking a command, rule, or moral code.

- Figuratively, “transgression” can also be described as “crossing a line,” that is, going beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression”, “sin”, “iniquity”, and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance. (See: [parallelism](#))

(See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trial

Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Other words for this are “testing” or “temptation.”
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: [tempt](#), [temptation](#), [test](#), [innocent](#), [guilt](#), [guilty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as, “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as, “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as, “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression, “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as, “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as, “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as, “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be, “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [godliness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unjust, unjustly, injustice

Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

upright, uprightness

Definition:

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “upright” could include, “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as, “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [integrity](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vain, vanity**Definition:**

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as, “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as, “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worthy](#), [worth](#), [unworthy](#), [worthless](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vision**Facts:**

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

voice**Definition:**

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as, “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

VOW**Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- This word should be translated differently than "oath."

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

walk

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [\[:en:obe:other:obey\]](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

watchtower, tower**Definition:**

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as, “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as, “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

well, cistern

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

winnow, sift**Definition:**

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words are also used in a figurative sense to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be, “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include, “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See: [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-05] She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- [18-01] When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- [23-09] Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- [45-01] He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

witness, eyewitness

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression, “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person-seeing-it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as, “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as, “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as, “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.

- [39-04] The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- [42-08]"It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- [43-07]"We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says, “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression, “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “(The people in) that city will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression, “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

Waiting

womb**Definition:**

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

Waiting

word

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, ”The seed is the **word of God**.

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless**Definition:**

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as, “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase, “is worth more than” could be translated as, “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as, “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See: [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wrong, mistreat, hurt

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means “to cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as, “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

translationAcademy

First, Second or Third Person

This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

Description

Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
”... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

Abstract Nouns

This answers the question: What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its *weight*?" could be expressed as "How much does it *weigh*?" or "How *heavy* is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **ABSTRACT NOUNS** are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Abstract nouns allow us to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if we did not have those nouns. For example, we can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if English did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then we would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. We would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned."

Abstract nouns also allow us to refer to a situation without telling more details about it than we want to tell. For example, we can say "I got here late because there was an accident on the highway." "Accident" is an abstract noun. If it does not matter whose accident it was, or what kind of accident it was, then it can be better if I do not have to say these things about it.

Reason this is a translation issue: The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will have other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs, that express some of the meaning in the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But *godliness* with *contentment* is great *gain*. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun.

- **from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - “Ever since *you were a child* you have known the sacred writings.”
- **But *godliness with contentment* is great *gain*.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - “But *being godly* and *content* is very *beneficial*.”
 - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *are godly* and *content*.”
 - “But we *benefit* greatly when we *honor and obey God* and when we are *happy with what we have*.”
- **Today *salvation* has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - “Today the people in this house *have been saved*...”
 - “Today God *has saved* the people in this house...”
- **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *slowness* to be** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- "The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider *moving slowly* to be"
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the *purposes* of the heart.**
(1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - "He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal *the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.*"

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Double Negatives

This answers the question: What are double negatives?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21)

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Most languages express the negative near the verb or at the beginning or end of the sentence. Some languages also have prefixes or suffixes that express the negative as in “*unhappy*,” “*impossible*,” and “*useless*.” Some languages can also express the negative with pronouns like “none,” “nothing,” and “no one,” with adverbs like “nowhere,” and with prepositions like “without.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that express the meaning of “not.”

It is *not* that we do *not* have authority (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did *not* happen *without* the taking of an oath, (Hebrews 7:20 ULB)

Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished* (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” It emphasizes the negative, and means “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages a double negative simply means a positive. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is attractive.”
- In some language the double negative weakens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is a little bit attractive.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative often strengthens the adjective. So “She is not unattractive” means “She is very attractive.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the double negative simply expresses the positive, remove the two negatives.
 - **For we do *not* have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses”
 - **so that they may *not* be *unfruitful*** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “so that they may be fruitful”
2. If the double negative emphasizes the positive, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “certainly.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will *not* go *unpunished*** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will *certainly* be punished”
 - **All things were made through him and *without* him there was *not* one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)

- "All things were made through him. He made *absolutely* everything that has been made."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Verbs*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Exclamations

This answers the question: What are ways of translating exclamations?

In order to understand this, it would be good to read

- [Sentence Types](#)

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue: Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence shows strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use a word word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

- **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

- ”You *are* such a worthless person!”

- **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)

- ”Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God *are* so deep!”

2. Use an exclamation word from from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

- **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)

- “They were absolutely astonished, saying, ”*Wow!* He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”

- **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)

- ”*Oh no*, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

- **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)

- Lord Yahweh, *what will happen to me?* For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
- *Help*, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

- **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)

- ”His judgements are *so* unsearchable and his ways are *far* beyond discovering!”

4. Tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. *He was terrified* and said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

When Masculine Words Include Women

This answers the question: How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Generic Noun Phrases*

In some parts of the Bible, the words “men,” “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can be used to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or women. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes *his* father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to *his* mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that.

Examples from the Bible

The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)

This verse does not contrast men and women. What it says is true of both men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, *he* must deny *himself*, take up *his* cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not talking about only men. What he said was true of both men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, 'If a *man* dies, having no children, *his brother* must marry *his* wife and have a child for *his brother*.' (Matthew 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **The wise *man* dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
 - "The wise *person* dies just like the fool dies."
 - "Wise *people* die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- **For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers*, about the troubles we had in Asia** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
 - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, *brothers and sisters*, about the troubles we had in Asia" (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the singular pronouns “he” “himself” and “his” to plural pronouns “they” “themselves” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
 - "If people want to follow me, *they* must deny *themselves*, take up *their* cross, and follow me."

Go and Come

This answers the question: What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come.” For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming”, while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring.” For example when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming”, while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.”

Reason this is a translation issue: If the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving in.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away and he wanted his servant to go to them.

When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses and the people were in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet and implored him to *come* to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Use the word “go”, “come”, “take” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the words that would be natural in your language.

- **But you will be free from my oath if you *come* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
 - But you will be free from my oath if you *go* to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

- **When you have *come* to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
 - “When you have *arrived* in the land that Yahweh your God gives you possess it and live in it,”
- **Yahweh said to Noah, “*Come*, you and all your household, into the ark** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
 - “Yahweh said to Noah, “*Enter*, you and all your household, into the ark”

Hendiadys

This answers the question: What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Parts of Speech*

Hendiadys is when a speaker makes a single idea more forceful by connecting two nouns or adjectives with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

Description

Hendiadys is when a speaker expresses a single idea by connecting two words with “and” when one of the words actually describes the other.

his own *kingdom and glory* (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a kingdom of glory or a glorious kingdom.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys has an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Some languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that one word describes the other.

Examples from the Bible

for I will give you *words and wisdom* (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

if you are willing and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute one noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *wise words*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*."

2. Substitute one noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

- **for I will give you *words and wisdom*** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - "For I will give you *words of wisdom*"
- **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom and glory***. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - "that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*."

3. Substitute one adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - "if you are *willingly obedient*"

4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

- **if you are *willing and obedient*** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
 - "if you *obey willingly*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Doublet*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Hypothetical Situations

This answers the question: What is a hypothetical situation?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Writing Styles*

“If the sun stopped shining...” “What if the sun stopped shining...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...” “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they’ll understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situation in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent.

2. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that people do not mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, *if* he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

3. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

4. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, “*If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.* For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus' wished that the people were either hot or cold. He was rebuking them.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

Also watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/GfFX1wWjJhA>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/jlbY2ikNtHU>).

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Imperatives - Other Uses

This answers the question: What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?

In order to understand this, it would be good to read

- [Sentence Types](#)

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 2, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULB)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. ("Be clean" means "Be healed.")

"I am willing. *Be clean.*" Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULB)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist.

God said, "*Let there be light,*" and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULB)

Imperatives that Function as Conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the *condition* under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen *if* they love wisdom.

do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you;
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULB)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen *if* they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence to cause something to happen, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the word “if.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence to cause something to happen, try using a statement instead.

- **Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3 ULB)
 - “You are now clean.”
 - “I now cleanse you.”
- **God said, “Let there be light,” and there was light.** (Genesis 1:3 ULB)
 - “God said, “There is now light” and there was light.

2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

- **God said, “Let there be light,” and there was light.** (Genesis 1:3 ULB)
 - “God said, ‘Let there be light,’ so there was light.”

3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the word “if.”

**Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.** (Proverbs 22:6 ULB)

”If you teach a child the way he should go,
when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

Inclusive “We”

This answers the question: What is inclusive “we”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let *us* now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to *us*.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let *us* go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/PrMC2jdqY0A>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/2K2gFIPMFVk>).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Exclusive “We”*

Irony

This answers the question: What is irony and how can I translate it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which a person pretends to say what he really believes, when in fact he is saying what someone else believes, and he does it in a way that shows that other belief is wrong. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief is foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous. He was speaking to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous and who were criticizing him for welcoming sinners. Jesus implied that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will not realize that the speaker is ridiculing the idea.

Examples from the Bible

After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "*Prophecy! Who is the one who hit you?*" (Luke 22:64ULB)

The fact that the soldiers were beating Jesus shows us that they did not believe that he was a prophet. They knew that other people thought that Jesus was a prophet, and they may have also thought that Jesus himself claimed to be a prophet. When they told him to prophecy, they were using irony. They were mocking him and implying that if he really was a prophet, then he should be able to tell who hit him without seeing them.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had any knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not even speak, but he did this to mock the idols and rebuke the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
"the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrase above emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many many years later.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here is another strategy.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is *not* found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)
 - "After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "You call yourself a prophet. Then prophesy! Who hit you?"
 - "After blindfolding him, they said to him, "Prophesy! If you were really a prophet, you would be able to tell us who hit you."
- **I did not come to call *righteous people* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - "I did not come to call *people who think that they are righteous* to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance."

2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **After blindfolding him, they asked him, saying, "Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you?"** (Luke 22:64 ULB)

- “After blindfolding him, they said to him, *”You are not a prophet because you cannot even tell us who struck you!”* ”
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)
 - ” ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols *cannot bring us their own arguments or even come forward to declare to us what will happen*. We cannot hear them because *they cannot speak* to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.”

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

- ”Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? *You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation!*”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Litotes*

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Nominal Adjectives

This answers the question: How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*

Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds, (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last; (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and *the poor* must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use adjectives this way.
- Readers may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about many people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are *the meek* (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *the righteous*.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - "The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of *righteous people*."
 - **Blessed are *the meek*** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - "Blessed are *people who are meek*"

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- ”sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Possession

This answers the question: What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Description

In common English, “possession” refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In grammar, **possession** refers to a grammatical relationship between two nouns. In English that grammatical relationship is shown with “of,” or an apostrophe and the letter “s,” or a possessive pronoun.

- the house *of* my grandfather
- my grandfather’s house
- *his* house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
 - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
 - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
 - a bag of potatoes - a bag that has potatoes in it, or a bag that is full of potatoes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head - the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

... the younger son ... wasted *his money* with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then *the disciples of John* came to him ..., (Matthew 9:14 ULB)

Material - In the example below, the material used for make the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like *crowns of gold* (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you *a cup of water* to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULB)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at *the door of the king's palace* (2 Samuel 11:9 ULB)

Part of a group - In the example below, the whole group is “us” and “each one” refers to the individual members.

To *each one of us* has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULB)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, John baptized people.

The **baptism** of John, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, Christ loves us.

Who will separate us from *the love of Christ*? (Romans 8:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, people love money.

For *the love of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULB)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords.

then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings *the punishment of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULB)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their baptism represented their repentance.

As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching a **baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULB)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UDB. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

- **On their heads were something like crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)
 - "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

2. Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

- **Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink ... will not lose his reward.** (Mark 9:41 ULB)
 - "Whoever gives you a cup that **has** water in it to drink ... will not lose his reward.
- **Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath** (Proverbs 11:4 ULB)
 - Wealth is worthless on *the day when God **shows** his wrath*"
 - Wealth is worthless on the day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath.

3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

- **Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God,** (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULB)

- "Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen *how Yahweh your God **punished** the people of Egypt.*"
- **You will only observe and see the *punishment of the wicked.*** (Psalms 91:8 ULB)
 - You will only observe and see the *how Yahweh **punishes** the wicked.*
- **you will receive the *gift of the Holy Spirit.*** (Acts 2:38 ULB)
 - "you will receive *the Holy Spirit, whom God will **give** to you.*"

Direct and Indirect Quotations

This answers the question: What are direct and indirect quotations?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Verbs*
- *Quotations and Quote Margins*

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

- Direct Quotation: John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”
- Indirect Quotation: John said that he did not know what time he would arrive.

When translating a quotation, translators need to decide whether to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Watch the video for computer (see <http://youtu.be/oe9Pbk8pFTw>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/9ZKDMCWuCiw>).

Description

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by direct or indirect quotations.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker’s exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is telling about John John saying this, uses the word in the quotation “I” to refer to John.

- John said, “*I* do not know at what time *I* will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person’s point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would,” which is the past tense of “will.”

- John said that *he* did not know what time *he* would arrive.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below have both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him *to tell no one*,
- Direct quote: but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...”*

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees *when the kingdom of God would come*,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *”The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.”*
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, *’Look here!’* or, *’Look there!’*

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

- **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, *”Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He instructed him to tell no one, but *to go on his way, and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

- **He instructed him *to tell no one*, but told him, *“Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He told him *”Tell no one. But go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”*

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Quotes within Quotes*

Reflexive Pronouns

This answers the question: What are reflexive pronouns?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Pronouns*
- *Sentences*

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. This page will help you understand how English shows this and will help you to see how your language handles this.

Description

Reflexive pronouns are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of referring to someone or something more than once in a sentence.
- The reflexive pronouns in English have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- to show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- to show that someone did something alone
- to show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

1. Reflexive pronouns used to that show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence

If *I* should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and *many* went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify *themselves*. (John 11:55 ULB)

2. Reflexive pronouns used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking *Jesus* with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But *Jesus himself* was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

3. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone did something alone

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain *by himself*. (John 6:15 ULB)

4. Reflexive pronouns used to show that someone or something was alone

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. *It* was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place *by itself*. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- **If I should testify about *myself* alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should *self-testify* alone, my testimony would not be true.”
- **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *purify themselves*.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to *self-purify*.”

2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)

- "It was *he who* took our sickness and bore our diseases."

- **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)

- "It was *not Jesus who* was baptizing, but his disciples were."

3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)

4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)

- "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again *alone* up the mountain."

5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)

- "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying *in a different place*."

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!”*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹]

[¹] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

- ^[1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly *ravenous wolves*.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals*."
- **We have here only five *loaves of bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Connecting Words

This answers the question: What are connecting words for, and how do I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Parts of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Connecting words show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. They are also called **conjunctions**. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

Description

Connecting words show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples of connecting words are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

- It was raining, *so* I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, *but* I did not have an umbrella. *So* I got very wet.

Sometimes people do not use a connecting word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context.

- It was raining. I didn't have an umbrella. I got very wet.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the meaning of a connecting word in the Bible and the relationship between the thoughts it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- Translators need to know how to help their readers understand the relationship between the thoughts.

Translation Principles

- Translators need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

Examples from the Bible

And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. *And* she gave some also to her husband who was with her, *and* he ate it. (Genesis 3:6 ULB)

The word “and” can connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. The underlined examples above show where it connects clauses and sentences. In this verse, the event that follows “and” happened after the event before “and”.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, *but* instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. *Then* after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do with what he did do. Here the word “then” introduces something Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. *But* whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULB)

Here the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

Translation Strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
 - **Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULB) - They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this with “so.”
 - “Jesus said to them, ”Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” So immediately they left the nets and went after him.”

2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

- **And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. And she gave some also to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.** (Genesis 3:6 ULB) - The word “and” here simply shows that something else happened. Some languages would not need to start the sentence with “and.”
 - “And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable to make one wise, she took some of its fruit, and ate it. She also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.” (Genesis 3:6 ULB)
- **I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.** (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB) Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here.
 - “I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

3. Use a different connecting word.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) - The word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages.
 - “Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.”
- **Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.** (Acts 21:34 ULB) - Instead of starting the first part of the sentence with “since”, some translators might prefer to start the second part of the sentence with “so”.
 - “The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, so he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.”

Poetry

This answers the question: What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Writing Styles*

Poetry combines figures of speech with pleasant sounds and deep feelings to make a passage both beautiful and easier to remember.

Description

Poetry is one of various way in which to use words to make the writing more beautiful and to show the feeling. It is used to express a stronger emotional feeling than simple non-poetic forms would express. Poetry is easier to remember and tends to last longer than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as **Metaphor**, **Simile**, **Metonymy**, **Personification**, and **Apostrophe**.
- Parallel lines (See: **Parallelism** and **Parallelism with the Same Meaning**)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
 - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
 - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
 - "Twinkle, twinkle little *star*. How I wonder what you *are*." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
 - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is the probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of **Parallelism with the Same Meaning** has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See: **Parallelism**)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See: **Personification**)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
(The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

”Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin*.
God is his constant *delight*
He does what God says *is right*
He thinks of it all day *and night*”

2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- “This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.”

3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- “The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Symbolic Language*

Proverbs

This answers the question: What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Metaphor*
- *Parallelism*
- *Writing Styles*

People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. When you follow your language's ways of saying proverbs, you will make your translation sparkle.

Description

Proverbs are a sentence or a few sentences that give wisdom or teach a truth. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism.

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULB)

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue:

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in a way for people to recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULB)

This means that if a person is lazy and does do what he was sent to do, he will be very annoying to those who send.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULB)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.
□

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways. Here are some ideas for ways people might say a proverb in their language.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULB)

- “It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.”
- “Wise people choose a good name over great riches and favor over silver and gold.”
- “Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.”
- “Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.”

2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

**Like *snow in summer* or *rain in harvest*,
so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULB)

- “It is not natural for *a cold wind to blow in the hot season* or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.”

3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULB)

- “Do not count your chickens before they hatch.”

4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULB)

- “People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.”